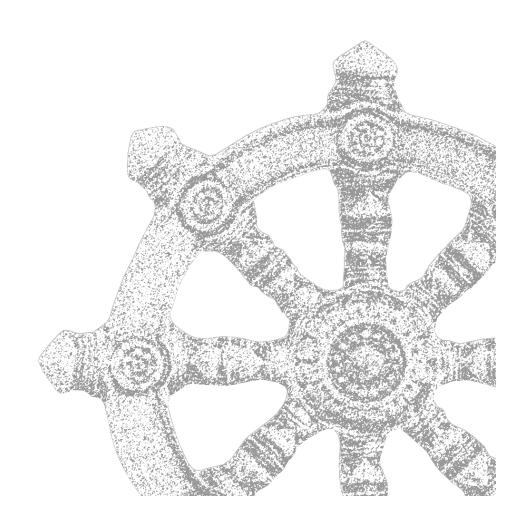
THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 3

COURSE

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 11-15



Thank you for your interest in the Asian Classics Institute's Correspondence Courses. A complete Formal Study Course consists of audio recordings from the original class series in New York, along with the supporting text materials from each class. The text and audio may be downloaded (see www.world-view.org in the on-line teachings section), or ordered by mail (see the Courses by mail section of the web site).

This Course consists of eleven classes, each of which has approximately one hour of audio, along with corresponding written materials. The audio can be ordered by mail, listened to on-line as streaming Real Audio, or downloaded onto your computer in mp3 or RA format for playback later. The written materials for this Course are contained in eight on-line files which can be downloaded, printed and assembled into a three-ring binder.

A complete Course binder contains the following sections in this order: a binder cover and spine, an overview of the teacher training program, prayers, a course syllabus, readings, homework, quizzes, a final examination, answer keys and Tibetan study materials. For ease of binder assembly, be sure to print the files on three hole paper.

Please note that Geshe Michael taught the first half of each class in this Course. The second half of each class was conducted in smaller study groups, and was led by a student teacher. The second half of each class was not recorded.

Each class lecture has a corresponding reading, homework, quiz, and meditation. After listening to the audio from a class, the reading, homework, quiz and meditation should be completed for that class before continuing on to the next class. The homework can be completed open book style. The quizzes should be completed from memory only, without the aid of notes or other materials. (A good approach is to look at an answer key *after* you have finished that homework, and to use that answer key to study for that quiz.) A final exam is given at the end of the Course.

You may grade your own papers using the supplied answer keys if you wish to do so. All of the quiz questions come from the homework, and the homework answer keys are also used to grade the quizzes and the final exam.

This review Course 18 is **not** available to be graded by the Institute as a correspondence course. *Please do not mail in any of the homework or quizes for grading.* To receive credit and a certificate of completion for a review Course, it must be taken in person with a teacher approved by the Institue.

We would like to emphasize that, although recordings and written materials can be extremely helpful, it is essential for serious Buddhist practitioners to meet and study directly with a qualified Teacher who can give the necessary guidance and personal instructions of the lineage.

In these teachings the wisdom of Enlightened Beings has been passed down in an unbroken lineage to you. May you take these teachings and put them into practice in your life to benefit all. May every goodness grow and spread in all directions right now!

Overview of the Formal Study Course Teacher Training Program

The Six Great Books of Buddhism outlined below are the subject of a geshe's eighteen year program of monastic study. The Asian Classics Institute condenses these Six Great Books of Buddhism into a series of 15 Formal Study Courses.

Book One

Geshe Study Subject: The Perfection of Wisdom (Prajnya Paramita)

School of Buddhism Studied: Beginning Middle-Way (Madhyamika Svatrantika);

also includes some material from Mind-Only (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Text: The Jewel of Realization (Abhisamaya Alamkara)

Written by: Maitreya (the Future Buddha) as related to Master Asanga, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Six years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, Overview of the Art of Interpretation, Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, Overview of Dependent Origination, Overview of the Form and Formless

Written by: Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (fl. 1850) Typical Subjects: The three kinds of refuge; The wish for enlightenment; What is nirvana?; The proofs for emptiness; Who is Maitreya?; The twelve links of dependent origination in the Wheel of Life; Deep levels of meditation; How do we know when the Buddha was speaking figuratively?; A flow-chart for liberation.

Book Two

Geshe Study Subject: The Middle Way (Madhyamika)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika); also includes some material from the Mind-Only School (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Texts: Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamaka Avatara) and A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattva Charya Avatara)

Written by: The first by Master Chandrakirti, circa 650 AD in explanation of Master Nagarjuna, about 200 AD; and the second by Master Shantideva, circa 700 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Four years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra

Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva

Courses X, XI, XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Overview of the Middle Way; A Commentary on the Diamond-Cutter Sutra; The String of Shining Jewels, on the Three Sets of Vows; The Point of Entry for Bodhisattvas, a Commentary to the "Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life"

Written by: Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1830)

Typical Subjects: Emptiness and the Wish for enlightenment; Emptiness and the bodies of a Buddha; The future of the Buddha's teaching; Emptiness and karma; The direct perception of emptiness; Emptiness and paradise; How empty things still work; The root and secondary vows of a bodhisattva; How to keep the vows; How to purify bad deeds; Taking joy; How to fight mental afflictions; The perfection of giving; How anger destroys good karma; The nature of anger; Where bad things really come from; Dealing with jealousy; Quietude; Stopping attachment; On the joys of solitude; Devoting oneself to meditation; On the need to see emptiness; The two realities; The emptiness of feelings; The sliver of Diamond.

Book Three

Geshe Study Subject: Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha)

Written by: Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course V: How Karma Works

Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: *Light on the Path to Freedom, a Commentary to the Treasure House*

Written by: Gyalwa Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474)

Typical Subjects: The nature of karma; The role of motivation; The correlation of deeds and their results; How karma is carried; The relative severity of deeds; The three realms of existence; The nature of the *bardo* (intermediate state between birth and death); A description of time and space; The destruction of the world; How to do death meditation

Book Four

Geshe Study Subject: Vowed Morality (Vinaya) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: A Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra)

Written by: Master Gunaprabha, circa 500 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Course:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Course: *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline; Daymaker--A commentary on the "Essence of the Ocean"*

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) Typical Subjects: The nature of the vows of freedom; Their divisions; The specific vows (note: nuns and monks' vows are presented only to those with ordination); Who can take vows; How vows are lost; The benefits of keeping vows.

Book Five

Geshe Study Subject: Buddhist Logic (Pramana) School of Buddhism Studied: Sutrist (Sautrantika)

Main Root Text: The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika)

Written by: Master Dharmakirti, circa 650 AD, on Master Dignaga, circa 450 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Three months per year for 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: The Four Reasonings; Light on the Path to Freedom, An Explanation of the Commentary on Valid Perception; Jewel of the True Thought; An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning; An Explanation of the Path of Reasoning; The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son; The Collected Topics of Rato; A Clear Exposition upon Mind and Mental Functions

Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); The First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen (1567?-1662); Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997); Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901); Master Ngawang Trashi (c. 1700); Master Chok-hla U-ser (c. 1500)

Typical Subjects: The meaning of valid perception; The nature of omniscience; Proofs for past and future lives; The qualities of a Buddha; Why study the art of reasoning?; The definition of a reason; How to do Buddhist debate; The parts of a logical statement; Cause and effect; The nature of the subject mind; The concept of negatives and positives; The nature of definitions; The concept of time.

Book Six

Geshe Study Subject: The Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika)

Main Root Text: The Great Book on the Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim Chenmo)

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419)

Traditional period to cover this subject: Intermittently over a period of 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** A Gift of Liberation, Thrust into Our Hands; The Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Commentary on the Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama); Preparing for Tantra (The "Source of All My Good" and its Commentary); A Collection of Lojong Texts; Offering of the Mandala; How to Offer the Mandala in Thirty-Seven Parts
- **Written by:** Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941); Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The Meaning of Rennciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and correct world view; How to do a daily practice; How to meditate; What to meditate on; How to practice at work and other everyday situations; How to offer the mandala; How to practice love and compassion; Brief presentations of the entire path to Enlightenment; How to prepare for the secret teachings.

ञ्जा |सङ्ग्रा | mandel

୲ଽୖ୵ୣ୷ୢୠ୵୕୵ୠୖୄୠୢଌ୶୵ୣ୷୶୵୳୕ୡୄ୵୲

rirab lingshi nyinde gyenpa di,

sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

|त्र्ज्ञेंगुर्द्रस्य द्या हिर्प्य हेर्नि । | drokun namdak shingla chupar shok.

ाक्षे दे त्यु दु र इ अड़ य मै के हु ह प्य की ।

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

ञ्चा । भुनवायम् अध्ययः नभुत्। । kyabdro semkye

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

|ธุร:สูธ:จราวราราชาสิ:สูธจะสู:มะติจา jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

| กรุกาทิสาลิสาลักลากฏิสานนิ กลัร สุมสาฏิสา dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

प्रज्ञां ता प्रवास्त्र स्थित अद्यास्त्र स्था विष्या प्रवास्त्र स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था वि

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



| इस्में प्रति प्

ารณ์รุ:สุมพาพิ:ผิพ:ชั้มพาษักพาผิรา sunam yeshe tsok-dzok shing,

รunam yeshe lejung way,

| द्रमः सः भुः महिषा वर्षेतः धरः विम । । । dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.



| क्रेंब:य:ब्रु: ब्रेंड: ब्राट्य:क्रुब: देव: क्रेंड

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

ब्रिंच यः त्वः येऽ : ५ यः कें यः रे दः यें के ।

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,

विदेशमास्यासेनान्यो वित्तर्भने संस्कृ

drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,

भिन्न नामक्र निर्माद सके वा नासुक्र ता सके निर्माद नुषा

kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this
To the guides
Higher than any other,
The precious Sangha.

I offer this To the places of refuge, To the Three Jewels, Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Class Syllabus

Reading One

Subject: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Third of Six Parts

This and the next reading represent Level Four of the tradition

of the Middle Way, or Madhyamika.

Reading: Selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life by Master

Shantideva (circa 700 AD), with excerpts from a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for*

Children of the Victorious Buddhas.

Reading Two

Subject: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Fourth of Six Parts

Reading: Further selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

and Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas.

Reading Three

Subject: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Fifth of Six Parts

This and the next reading represent Level Five of the tradition

of the Middle Way, or Madhyamika.

Reading: Further selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life and

Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas.

Reading Four

Subject: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Sixth of Six Parts

Reading: Further selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life and

Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas.

Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three Course Syllabus

Reading Five

Subject: The Art of Reasoning, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Two of Buddhist

Logic and Perception, or Pramana.

Reading: Selections on the collected topics from *An Explanation of the Science*

of Logic, including a section from the Key to the Logic Machine—a Presentation of the Collected Topics which Clarifies the Meaning of the Great Scriptures on Valid Perception (Rik-lam Trul-gyi Deamik) by

Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901).

Reading Six

Subject: The Art of Reasoning, Part Two

Reading: Selections from The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son (Sras bsdus-

grva), by Master Ngawang Trashi, the spiritual son of the great

Jamyang Shepa (1648-1721).

Reading Seven

Subject: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Three of the Steps to

Buddhahood, or Lam Rim.

Reading: Selections from A Compendium of Texts on Developing the Good

Heart (Lojong Gyatsa), by Munchen Konchok Gyeltsen (1300 AD), including Eight Verses for Developing the Good Heart, written

by the Kadampa Geshe named Diamond Lion.

Reading Eight

Subject: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from A Compendium of Texts on Developing

the Good Heart (Lojong Gyatsa), by Munchen Konchok Gyeltsen (1300 AD), including Freedom From the Four Attachments (Shenpa

Shi-drel) by Sachen Kenga Nyinpo (1092-1158).

Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three Course Syllabus

Reading Nine

Subject: What the Buddha Really Meant, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Two of the Perfection

of Wisdom, or Prajna Paramita.

Reading: Selections from the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical Commentary on

Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal (Drange Lekshe

Nyingpo), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

Reading Ten

Subject: What the Buddha Really Meant, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical

Commentary on Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal

(Drange Lekshe Nyingpo), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading One: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Third of Six Parts

The following contemplations are based on the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattvacharyavatara; Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa)* of the Buddhist master Shantideva (circa 700 AD), and the commentary upon it by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*.

The content of the contemplations is translated directly from the root text and commentary; the names of the contemplations are not a part of the original text, but are based on the divisions of Gyaltsab Je's commentary and have been supplied for reference.

Contemplations on the Perfection of Patience

Contemplation One Anger destroys good karma

विद्वात्त्रियाक्षेत्रः त्राच्याक्षः सः स्वीत्। विद्वाकाः स्वीतः व्यादः स्वीत् । विद्वाकाः स्वीतः व्यादः स्वीत् । विद्वाकाः स्वीतः विद्याकाः स्वीतः स्वीतः । विद्वाक्षः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः । विद्वाक्षः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः । विद्वाक्षः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः ।

A single instance of anger Destroys whatever good deeds You may have amassed in thousands Of eons spent in practices Like giving, or making offerings To Those Who have Gone to Bliss.

बि:र्स्ट स्युद्ध र्स्य प्रायः स्त्री । ने निका नर्से द्वि रित्य स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः । ने निका नर्से द्वि रित्य स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः । स्वरं स्वरः स्

There is no kind of deed As evil as the act of anger; There is no spiritual hardship Like patience. Practice it then, Concentrate on patience, In many different ways.

We must contemplate upon the problems that anger causes, and upon the benefits that come from patience. The problems we will cover in three steps: those that we cannot see, those that we can see, and then a summary of the problems. The problems that we cannot see will be presented in two parts: how anger destroys our store of good karma, and advice to make efforts in the practice of patience, once we have learned well the problems of anger and the corresponding benefits of patience. Here is the first.

देवा,चयु.क्र्याक्ष्माक्ष्माक्षाक्षात्र व्याचानात्व व्याच्याक्ष्मा चन्नेतात्व व्याच्याक्ष्मा चन्नेतात्व व्याच्य व्याचयु.क्र्याक्ष्माक्ष्माक्ष्माच्याच्याक्षात्व व्याच्याक्ष्माच्याक्ष्माच्याक्ष्माच्याक्ष्माच्याक्ष्माच्याक्ष

Anger is the ultimate obstacle that prevents the initial growth and then continuation of every virtuous thing. As such we should contemplate upon the problems it brings to us, and then make great efforts to stop it. This is because of its effects on whatever good deeds you may have amassed in hundreds or thousands of eons spent in practices like giving, or making offerings to Those Who have Gone to Bliss (or to any of the other members of the Three Jewels), or meditating, or maintaining an ethical way of life. A single instance of anger focused upon a bodhisattva destroys all this virtue, from the root.

Beyond all this is a quotation found in the *Compendium of the Trainings*, one which is recited by the Buddhist group known as "Those Who Profess Them All":

Suppose a monk, heart filled with devotion, prostrates himself before an offering shrine containing the holy hair or fingernails of One Who has Gone Thus. Imagine the number of atoms contained in the ground which his body covers, going all the way down into the planet up to the point where it touches the disk of gold. Then imagine that each of these atoms represents the amount of good karma required to attain a birth as the Emperor

of the Wheel, the King of the World. Now multiply all that by a thousand. This is the amount of good karma which you destroy by speaking badly of one of those persons who is maintaining the pure way of life—that is, an ordained person.

It is stated, by the way, that for an instance of anger to destroy the store of good karma that one has amassed over hundreds or thousands of eons, it must be anger which is focused at a particular object: that is, at a bodhisattva. This same point is described in *Entering the Middle Way*.

विद्रां क्रियाका प्रश्नीत्र त्या त्यत्र प्रमान्त्र क्रिया प्रमान्त्र क्रिया व्यव्य प्रमान्त्र क्रिया व्यव्य प्रमान्त्र विद्रा क्रिया व्यव्य प्रमान्त्र विद्रा क्रिया व्यव्य प्रमान्त्र विद्रा क्रिया विद्रा क्रिया व्यव्य प्रमान्त्र विद्रा क्रिया विद्रा विद्रा क्रिया विद्रा विद

In the opening section of the *Monastic Practices relating to Arrangements for Housing* there is also a discussion of the statement in the *Extensive Commentary on Vowed Morality* where it says that anger can destroy your vows. This discussion clarifies the fact that the statement refers to the destruction of stores of good karma by anger of tremendous intensity. It is moreover stated in the *Blaze of Reasoning* that one's store of good karma can be destroyed by wrong view and by malice. Given all this, we must make great efforts to shield our minds from anger and the rest.

बिद्री प्रश्नात्में अभ्यान्त्रीयश्चित्रात्में प्रश्नात्में स्वान्त्रात्में स्वान्त्यान्त्यात्में स्वान्त्यात्में स्वान्त्यात्में स्वान्त्यात्में स्वान्त्यात्

Here next is the advice. There is no kind of deed as evil as the act of anger for the way in which it acts as an obstacle to prevent the growth of the spiritual path within us, and destroys our good karma. Nor is there any spiritual hardship like patience for breaking the relentless heat of the mental afflictions. You should practice it then, concentrate on the practice of patience, and use the method of finding many different ways, an entire variety of techniques, to do so.

Contemplation Two
Anger begins with being upset, and it is useless ever to be upset

|धेर्-भेर्-नर्भन्ते: नर्भक्तिन्त्रः । |के:सूर-नह्रुक्ष-हे:नर्मावर्धेस्रुक्ष-सें।

Anger feeds on the food Of feeling upset, then strengthened Turns to smash me.

And so then I will smash The sustenance that feeds This enemy of mine.

।दर्ने :सूर :चर्मा :यःमोर्केर :यःयश। ।रम् : यरे :यः वे :यश मित्र : से रा

My foe knows no other Kind of work at all Except to cause me pain.

१३.ज.चच.मेर.चचम.च्रीश.द्री १४.ट्याट.चेश.मेर.द्रेट्यमश्ची १२चट.चेश.मेर.वे.ट्यीचाश्च.मे.ची १२च्य.च्य.चेश.मेर.वर्च्य.चीश.द्री

No matter what happens
I will never allow
My joy to be disturbed.
Feeling upset cannot accomplish
My hopes, and only makes me lose
The goodness that I have.

বিষ্টেই বিষ্ট্ৰেই বিষ্টের্বির বিষ্টারিক বিষ্টার বিষ্

पर्रश्रे में प्रमास्था में अर्था प्रमास्था प्रमास्था प्रमास्था प्रमास्था में प्रमास्था प्रमास्थ प्रमास्थ प्रमास्था प्रमास्थ प्रमा

Here is the first point, on the nature of the causes of anger, and the problems they bring. "Just how is it," one may ask, "that anger leads me to suffering?" Consider the emotion of becoming upset, when something you don't want to happen does happen, either to you, or to someone or something you consider yours. Consider this same emotion when something happens to prevent you from getting what you do want. This *feeling upset* is a kind of *food* that *anger feeds upon*. When anger finds this food, its body is *strengthened*—fortified—and *then* it *turns to smash me*, in both this and my future lives.

द्रै त्यश्चाल्य से निष्म न्या दे न्या की न्या के निष्म न्या के स्था न्या की न

Here next is the point about making efforts in the methods of stopping anger. *And so then I will smash* the emotion of feeling upset, *the sustenance that feeds this enemy of mine*, this anger. I will put all my effort into destroying *my* anger, who is worst of *foes*, for he *knows no other kind of work at all except to cause me pain*.

त्त्रभानुः त्वीतः भ्रां यदे निवान्त्रभान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्वान्तः त्व त्वान्तः त्वीतः त्वान्तः त्व

The third point, on the actual methods for stopping anger, has two parts: a description of how very wrong it is to become upset, and then the reasons why it is so wrong. Here is the first.

"How can I get rid of the emotion of being upset?" you may ask. You should first contemplate the benefits of learning to accept suffering gladly. Then you must learn to think to yourself, clearly, "No matter what happens, I will never allow my joy to be disturbed." Joy is the antidote for feeling upset; and no matter what happens that you don't like, doing something which is non-virtuous in return cannot accomplish your hopes, and only makes you lose the goodness that you do have, the goodness that can in fact produce the result you are hoping for. If this happens, then every other sort of suffering will come as well.

मिर्यक्षित्राचार्ये। योद्यात्मिर्यक्षेत्राच्ये स्त्रीचिर्यक्ष्यात्मिर्यक्षयात्मिर्यक्ष्यात्मिर्यक्षयम्

Let us consider any of the objects over which we feel upset. If there is something you can do about it, then why should you ever feel upset at all? You could take the necessary action to fix it immediately, and never need to feel upset. If on the other hand there is nothing you can do about it, then what is the use of being upset? It would be as useless as getting upset at empty space, at a place where nothing was.

Contemplation Three Perfect patience is like any other habit, and can be developed with practice

विविध्याने स्थाप्तर से त्युर प्रदेश दिस्य ने वाद प्यद प्येत स्थापित। दिस्य विदेत प्यक्त स्थापित। विदेत प्रक्ति स्थापित। विदेत प्रक्ति स्थापित।

There is nothing in the world Which does not come easily If you make a habit of it; Make then a habit Of bearing the small pains, And thus endure the greater.

ग्रीःक्र्याम् प्रम्यान्त्र्यान्त्र्यान्यस्यान्यस्यान्त्र्यान्यस्यान्त्र्यान्यस्यान्त्र्यान्त्रः स्वत्यान्त्रस्य प्रम्यान्त्रस्य स्वत्यान्त्रस्य स्वत्य स्

Here is the first point, which is establishing that patience is easy to rely upon once you have accustomed yourself to it. If you make a habit of patience, then you will be able to endure any kind of suffering. The way we think of anything is based primarily on how we have become accustomed to think, on our mental habits. As such there is nothing in the world—that is, no quality of the mind—which does not come easily if you make a habit of it.

त्यर प्रमुर्ग प्रमुर् इ. २८ - दे. ब्रुट्ग प्रमुर्ग प्रम्ग प्रमुर्ग प्रमुर्

For this reason *then you should* learn to think this way: "Suppose I can *bear*, and learn to accept gladly, *the small pains*—things like feeling too hot or too cold, or else situations like having someone say something unpleasant to me. If I *make a habit* of this, I will *thus* be able to *endure the greater* pains as well: things like the fire of the hell-worlds, and so on.

Contemplation Four Patience is a decision, a state of mind

|च्या.कुट.चक्कैज.चर.उर्चेर.च.लूर्। |ज.ज.च/बर.कुं.चिया.श्रुट्.४। |रत्य.चस्र.कैया.तर.श्रे.उर्चेर.लूर्। |ज.ज.चर्या.यू.चिया.श्रुट्.४।

Some when they catch sight Of their own blood Rise to a higher ferocity. Some when they see Another person's blood Faint and fall unconscious.

ૺ૱ૺૹૢ૽૱ૹઌૺૺૺ૾૽ૡ૱ૹ૿ૢ૱ૡઌૺ૱ ૡ૽ૺ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡ૽૽ૺ૱૱૱૱૱

All of this derives From either steadfastness Or cowardice, in the mind.

Learn then to disregard
Harms, and never allow
Any pain to touch you.
Hurt may come; but the wise
Never let suffering cloud
Their clarity of mind.

Contemplation Five Learn to disregard wounds in battle

न्ध्रियाः सः संस्थाः न्द्रा न्द्रियाः सः संस्थाः न्द्राः सः स्थाः न्द्रियाः यद्येतः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः न्द्रियाः यद्येतः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः न्द्रियाः संस्थाः स्थाः स

We are locked in combat
With mental affliction, and in war
Many wounds are sustained.
Ignore then any pains
That might come; smash
The foes of anger and such.

Conquering these is the thing That makes a warrior; the rest Are killing only corpses.

Contemplation Six Who really made the things that make us angry?

বির্থিত বিরাধি they believe Called the "primal One,"
Or the supposed "Self-Existent Being,"

Never came about by thinking For a purpose to themselves, "Now I should occur."

वियानायर विद्वासी । वियानायर विद्वासी । वियानायर विद्वासी । विद्व

If it cannot be with a thing That never grew itself, then what Do you think can grow then? It must forever shift its focus To its object, a thing that never Did come to an end.

। वे. ह्रे. यदया दे. ह्या व. वे। । स्मायवः यत्ने व. ये दे दे प्रायः यत्ने व. ये । स्मायवः यत्ने व. ये दे प्रायः स्मारं व। । स्मायवः यत्ने व. ये दे प्रायः स्मायः स

Isn't it obvious, that if this Self Were unchanging, then like empty space It could never act to do something? And even if it happened due to Other influences, how could they Act on something changeless?

वित्रेयःसरःवशुरःयःयदःविताःस्त्रा वित्रःसरःदेःयःवदेःस्येदःवित्रा वित्रःसरःदेःयःवदेःस्येदःवित्रा वित्रःसरःदेःस्यदःवित्रःसा वित्रःसरःवशुरःयःयदःविताःस्त्रा

When they did then it would stay Existing as it was before, So doing would do nothing. Where is something you can say It does that has at all any kind Of relationship with it?

And so it is that everything Depends on other influences, They on other, inevitably. Understand this, feel no anger Towards any of these things Like pictures of illusion.

यश्रश्राद्धीर वर्ष्याच्या स्थान स्य

Here is the first point, a refutation of the idea that the primal One could produce all the expressions of the world on its own accord. Consider now *this thing that they believe* in *called the "primal One,"* which is supposed to be made of equal parts of Particle, Darkness, and Courage, and is supposed to have five different qualities. They say it does, on its own accord, create harms and other such things, all included into what are considered its "expressions."

Or consider the supposed "Self-Existent Being," otherwise known as the "Original Mental Being," which is said to experience its objects on its own accord.

Neither of these though could be real, for the "Self-Existent Being" and the "primal One" *never came about by thinking to themselves*, all by themselves, "Now I should occur, for a specific purpose—so that I can experience objects, or create my expressions." But in fact they could never make anything occur, they could never actually do anything, no more than the horns on a rabbit's head could.

Let's consider what it is that you think can grow then, at the point when the primal One is supposed to produce some result. It would be completely mistaken to believe that the One could produce any result, at all, since this One itself never grew from anything in the first place. And this must absolutely be the case, because it is logically impossible for anything to produce a result, it cannot be, if that thing—that is, because that thing—was such that it never grew itself.

मृत्रियात्तर्। भ्रेत्रायाञ्चेत्रायाञ्चेत्रायाञ्चात्वर्। । प्रित्रायाञ्चात्वर्। । प्रित्रायाञ्चात्वर्। । प्रित्रायाञ्चात्वर्। । प्रित्रायाञ्चात्वर्। । प्रित्रायाः विवार्गायाः विवार्गायः विवार्यः विवार्यः विवार्गायः विवार्यः विवार्यः विवार्यः विवार्यः विवार्यः विवार्यः वि

Here is the second point, a refutation of the idea that the Original Mental Being could experience objects on its own accord. Let us consider this Original Mental Being. Isn't it true then that it would be a thing that could never have a time when it was not experiencing its object, that never did come to an end—that is, never could come to an end with each experience? This is because (1) you believe it to be an unchanging but functional thing which experiences its objects; and (2) if it were such a thing, then it must forever shift its focus to its object. And if this were the case, then it would be impossible for there to ever be a time when it were not holding to its object.

The second point here is a refutation of the idea that the self-existent being accepted by the Logicalists could ever exist of its own accord. Here there are three separate steps: a demonstration that it is incorrect to think that an unchanging thing could ever produce a result; a demonstration that it is incorrect to think that this same thing could rely upon some other influence; a demonstration that this same thing could never share a relationship with some influence. Here is the first.

र्मे प्रत्यक्षः त्राच्युत्रेत्। विश्वे प्रत्या दे स्वा प्रत्या स्वा क्षेत्रः व्यव्य क्षेत्रः व्यव्य क्षेत्रः व विषेत्रः प्रत्य प्रत्य विश्वे प्रत्या दे स्वा प्रत्य क्षेत्रः विष्य विषयः विषयः

The Logicalists believe in a self-existent being that is both something physical and also an unchanging thing that can perform a function. They say then that it creates those things that do us harm. But *isn't it obvious*, isn't it very clear, that if this Self were an unchanging thing which could perform a function, then it would be like empty space, and could never act to do something like producing an effect?

याक्ष्याची याक्ष्याची विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्रीत् । विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्रीत् । विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्रीत् । विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्रीत् । विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्राची । विद्रायम् द्वीत् । विद्रायम् द्वीताचन्त्राची । विद्रायम् द्वीत् । विद्रायम् व

Here is the second step. One may respond with the following: "Although this Self is by its nature unchanging, it produces results when it encounters certain influences." And yet it is impossible for an unchanging thing to encounter an influence; and even if it did happen due to its encountering some other influences, such as the will that something happen or the like, then how could these things, these influences, act on something changeless? It could never have any effect upon it at all, because this Self is changeless.

This logic is inescapable, because when they—any particular influences—did affect this Self in any way, then the Self would never budge, it would never

change to have any other nature than it already had: it would stay exactly as it was before. And if the Self never changed, then doing something to it would do nothing; there wouldn't be the slightest difference between the way it was and the way it is.

यम्यायान्यान्यान्याः प्रदेश्वरः यद्येषः यद्यायाः विष्याः प्रदेशः याव्यतः यद्येषः यद्यायाः विष्यः यद्याः विष्यः यद्याः विष्यः यद्याः विष्यः यद्याः यद्याः विष्यः यद्याः यद

Here is the third step. Someone may respond again, with the following: "Even though the Self doesn't affect anything else in a way that alters its basic nature, it does affect things in a way that is peripheral to itself." This too though is completely incorrect. Where is something you can point to at all and say that this is the peripheral effect, this is what the Self does in creating its result, that could have any kind of relationship with it? No relationship is possible, for there is neither the relationship of identity, nor the relationship of origination.

Here is the third point from before, which is an explanation of why it is improper to feel anger once you have understood that all beings are like a magical show. And so it is that everything in the production of a result depends on other influences, while these influences depend themselves on other, previous causes and influences, they on theirs, and so on. In a sense then it is inevitable whether a particular result will come out or not, it is all up to the causes, and so these things are like a magical show, like pictures of illusion. You must understand this fact, that each and everything which does something is empty of any nature of its own, and yet still functions perfectly well. If you do so, then you will feel no anger towards any of these things that are like pictures of

illusion. Thus you must train yourself in the realization of the fact that dependent origination has no nature of its own, for it is this realization which destroys the very seeds of mental affliction.

Contemplation Seven
People do so much harm to themselves
that it is no surprise if they hurt us

| स्यः विदः अरु न्यः विदः यो व्याः स्रोतः । स्यः विदः अरु न्यः स्रोत्याः स्रोतः स्रोतः स्रोतः । स्यः विदः स्यः विदः स्रोतः । स्यः विदः । स्यः ।

There are those who, having lost
Their senses, hurt themselves
By themselves with thorns and such.
To get a woman or the like,
They become obsessed, and then do things
Like refusing to eat food.

|त्रःश्चेत्राःत्वात्राःश्वेदःत्राध्यदःश्वरःश्चेदः। |तृत्राःतदःशेःवर्धेदः = तःत्दः। |तशेदः दशशःशःधेदःश्चेदःयःधेश। |त्रदःवःत्राद्येदःयःधेदः।

Some go and hang themselves, Leap from cliffs, and swallow poison Or other harmful things. Others go and hurt themselves By living in a way Against the virtuous life.

|ग्रदःक्रेंक्रेंब्रःक्षेद्रशः द्वदः शुरुः ध्रश

|यद्याःश्रुवाःक्षेदःग्रादःवाश्चेदःग्रीदःया |देःकेंदेःद्याःवालकःखुशःव्या |वार्केदःश्चेःग्रीदःयरःहेःसूरःवश्चुरः।

If people driven to it because Of their mental afflictions even kill Their own dear selves, then what Surprise could it ever be to see That they also act in ways that harm The bodies of other people?

वित्रः त्य्युरः तः के श्वः के याः त्रः वे। श्वेदः हे : कुः त्यः का श्वेकः व। वित्रा या के दिः तः के या का ल्याकः यः त्य। वित्रा या के दिः या का श्वेकः व।

Thus do people live, Committing acts like suicide, Driven by their own bad thoughts. If by some chance you cannot Feel some pity for them, At the least withhold your anger.

Contemplation Eight

If people are harmful by nature, it is no surprise when they hurt us;

if they are only harmful at moments, we should bear with them

|यायाः हें याब्रुषः याः वर्षः द्वीदः या |द्वीषः याः इस्रुषः ग्वीः स्टः यब्रुषः स्। |देः याः व्रिंग्यः से स्मृषः हो।

।श्रेया'यदे'रूट'यहोद'र्रो'यर्गेद'वर्

If it is the very nature
Of those who are children
To do harm to others,
Then being angry with them
Is wrong, as wrong as hating
Fire for the fact it burns.

|स्रायदःयः त्र्रः त्र्र्यः यः या |स्रेस्रसः उदः रहायः विदः रहायः द्रदः । |स्रेस्रसः उदः रहायः रहायः हो। |स्रोयदः यः त्र्रः त्र्र्यः योज्ञः ।

And if the nature of living beings
Is to be thoughtful, then all their faults
Are occasional, and being angry with them
Is wrong too, wrong as hating
A puff of smoke in the sky.

Contemplation Nine Should we be angry at sticks?

| त्रुवाःयः यः श्रेवाशः दर्दशः वर्गेयः है।
| वायः हेः ययेषः यः यः श्विः द्वा
| देः प्यदः लेः श्वदः योशः श्वदः यशा
| हेशः दः लेः श्वदः यः श्विः देवाशा

It's the stick or whatever
That delivers directly; if you're angry
At what impels it,
Then get mad if you really must
At anger itself, since it's the force
That sets the other into motion.

त्र क्षेत्र व क

"But it is right for me to be angry," one may insist, "because the other person has hurt me." Now if you are going to be angry at what hurt you directly, then you should feel anger for *the stick* or the weapon *or whatever* it was that *delivered* the injury *directly*, since they are what caused the pain. Or suppose you say that you're not going to get *angry* at the stick or whatever, since it didn't act on its own accord, but rather *at what* made it move: at the person who *impelled* the stick. This *other* person though is not acting on his own accord either; rather, he himself is *set into motion* by the *force* of anger. So *if you really must* be angry—if you have no choice, if you cannot help yourself—*then* you should *get mad at anger itself*.

Contemplation Ten Who it is that actually created the objects that bring us anger

| यद्याः योशः श्रेंद्रः कदः श्रेश्रशः उदः त्या | यदेः यदः यः प्येः योदेंद्रः यः युश् | वद्याः योश्यश्यः उदः यदेः युदः यो | यद्याः योदेंद्रः यः यदेः युद्रः देयाश्|

I myself in days gone by Perpetuated this very harm On other living beings, And so it's right that now the one Who did the harm, myself, Should have this hurt come to him.

|ने'स्ने'सर्केन'न्द्रम्पन्न'में'सुर्ग

|गरिःवास्याःयस्यःकुःधेरःह। |देशःसर्केदःयद्याःयोःसुशःसुदःद। |गरःवियाःयःदेशेव्यःचुःधेरःद।

Their weapons and this body of mine Both of them provide the causes For the pain to come.
They produced the weapons,
And I produced the body—
At which should I be angry?

|दे.ज.घोर्ट्र.च.बी.जांच्या |इंट्र.कार्ट्रक.घट्या.घोष्ट्र.ची |दे.ज.घोर्ट्रक.घट्या.घोष्ट्र.ची |दे.ज.घोर्ट्रक.घट्या.घोष्ट्र.ची

This blister in the shape of a man, Unbearable if someone touches it, Filled with suffering—
It's me who driven by blind desire Grasps to it, so who deserves
My anger when someone harms it?

| म्वालक्ष्याः स्वाः म्वाः यहेतः स्वेदः ।
| स्वाः म्वाः म्वाः यहाः याः म्वाः यहाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः यहाः स्वाः यहाः स्वाः यहाः स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वा

Children want no suffering
But at the same time then they thirst
For the things that bring them pain.
If suffering comes to you because
Of some fault of your own,
Why feel hate for others?

|द्येर-व-द्युत्य-वदि-बुद-अ-द्र-। |रत्य-वी-व्य-अदि-व्याब-क्त्य-सूर-। |र्र-वी-व्यब-ग्रीब-वर्द-वर्मुद्-व। |व्य-विवा-व्य-वे-व्यक्ति-वर-व्य

Take for example the guards of hell And forests filled of trees with leaves Made of blades of swords. Every one of them was created By the deeds you did yourself; Who then deserves your anger?

Contemplation Eleven What harm can words really do us?

The mind is not a thing
With a body, so couldn't be overcome
By anyone at any point at all.
It's due to the fact we grasp to it
That all these many pains
Can do harm to the body.

विष्यः या मेर्ने न्यः स्वास्त्रः विष्यः व्याप्तः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्य विष्यः विष्य

|श्रेश्रश्चित्रहें सुर-रयः हुः ह्वि

When someone criticizes me
Or says some harsh things to me,
Their words with their unpleasant sound
Can do no physical harm to me.
Why is it then my mind
That you feel such fury?

Contemplation Twelve
What to do if someone tries to hurt
the teaching or a teacher

|श्रु:ग्राञ्चनाशः अर्केन:हेन:न्यः केंशःय।
|यद्वायः विदः यद्देवाः यदः ग्रीनः यः यदः।
|यद्वाः वीशः विः श्रूदः श्रे:देवाशः हे।
|श्रु:ग्राञ्च शः विश्वः श्रे:देवाशः विदः श्रे:श्रेः श्रेः श्र

It's completely wrong for me to feel Anger even at those Who speak against or try to destroy Sacred images, shrines, or else The holy Dharma, since the Buddhas And such cannot be hurt.

विद्यीर यर शहर वेश मिर्याय स्था मिर्येश या मेर्ट्य या स्था निर्वेश या मेर्ट्य या स्था मिर्वेश या मेर्ट्य या स्था मिर्वेश या मेर्ट्य या स्था

And even too when harm is done
To Lamas or relatives or the like,
And those who are our friends,
Turn back your anger by seeing the fact
That, as the way before,
It all comes from causes.

मुन्यस्त्री र दक्षित्यावर्त्त्वित्यस्त्रित्यस्त्रित्यस्त्रीत्तरः स्त्रीत्रस्त्रीत्तरः स्त्रीत्तरः स्त्रीत्तरः स्त्रीत्तरः स्तर्वेत्तरः स्त्रीत्तरः स्त्रीत्तिः स्त्रीत्त्तत्तिः स्त्रीत्तत्ते स्त्रीत्

Here is the first point, which covers the reasons why it is wrong to feel anger at those who are doing harm to holy images and the like. Someone may make the following argument: "I can admit that it is wrong to feel anger for someone who has hurt me personally. But there is nothing wrong with getting angry at those who have harmed the Three Jewels." Suppose though that someone expresses themselves, speaking against sacred images of the Buddhas, the shrines of great bodhisattvas and the like, or else the holy Dharma. Or suppose that they even act bodily to try to destroy these things. It's completely wrong for me to feel anger even at these kinds of people, since the Buddhas and such, the Three Jewels, cannot be hurt. In fact, the one who attempts to harm them is someone who deserves our pity, and so it is more appropriate to feel love for them. The point here is that the Three Jewels are incapable of sustaining any kind of injury brought about by mental discomfort due to feeling upset.

श्रव्यात्रक्षात्र स्टार्थ क्ष्यात्र स्ट्रियाय स्ट्रियाय

Here is the second point, which is why it is appropriate to practice, in the same way, patience for those who do harm to those who are close to us. *Even too* when you see someone hurting another, when persons do harm to the Lamas that are teaching you the Dharma; or else to the relatives or the like with whom you

share a family relationship [reading *rus* for *dus* in the commentary]; *and* to *those who are your friends*, it is wrong to feel anger. This is because of the fact *that*, in the *way* that was explained *before*, what is happening to them has *all come* about *through* certain *causes*: that is, through their own past karma—the injuries are dictated by the karma come from the wrongs that these relatives and so on committed themselves before. And you should *turn back your* own *anger by seeing this fact*.

Contemplation Thirteen
On not being able to bear the happiness of others

वित्रः श्रीकार्धेद्रः प्रदेशः स्वर्धेदः द्रका वित्रः श्रितः श्रीदः द्रितः द्रवितः द्रो वित्रः श्रितः श्रीदः द्रोतः द्रोतः द्रो वित्रः श्रीदः द्रोतः द्रोतः द्रोतः द्रोतः व्या वित्रः श्रीदः द्रोतः द्रोतः द्रोतः व्या

Suppose that any person derives Some kind of joy from praising The qualities of another. Why my mind then don't you sing The praises of this person yourself, And find the very same joy?

|यालकः सूर्यः यो स्मर्केषाः ग्राटः यो का |यो त्या त्या त्या स्मर्थः स्मर्थः ग्रीकः या करः । |यो त्या त्या त्या सम्मर्थः स्मर्थः ग्रीकः या करः । |यो लकः सूर्यः यो सम्मर्थः यो स्मर्थः यो स्मर्थः ।

The happiness of taking this joy Has been admitted by all of those Who possess high qualities to provide An irreproachable source of happiness. It's also best for gathering others.

|यावन:लट.टु.क्रंर.घटु.वर्ग्वीर.बुर्ग

। মার্স্র-রেন্ট্র্র-মের্স্র-রেন্ট্র-। । মার্স্র-রেন্ট্র্র-র্ম্মমার্ম-র্ম্র-রা । মার্ম-রেন্ট্র্র-মের্মার্ম-রেন্ট্র-।

If instead you say to yourself,
"But now he'll be as happy,"
And hope against this happiness,
Then you should deny any wages earned
And all the like; you'll come to fail
In both the seen and unseen.

| र्राया स्थाय | याल्य स्थाय स्थाय

When someone praises my own good qualities, It's my hope that this other person Finds some happiness too. But I have no hope that I myself Should ever find the happiness That comes from praising others.

विस्त्रात्ते के स्ट्रीस्टर्स्य विस्त्र विस्त्

By my hope that every living being Should come to experience happiness, I've developed the wish for enlightenment. Why on earth does it make you angry When one of these living beings Finds some happiness by himself?

Contemplation Fourteen
On taking joy in the misfortunes of those you dislike

वित्रः मित्रः वित्रः स्वीतः स्वरः । वित्रः मित्रः स्वीतः स्वरः । वित्रः मित्रः स्वीतः स्वरः । वित्रः स्वीतः स्वरः स्वातः स्वरः । वित्रः स्वातं स्वरः स्वरः स्वीतः स्वरः । वित्रः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः ।

And even should your enemy Become upset, how then could You feel glad about it? It's not that some kind of harm Has come to him or her All caused by your hopes and wishes.

वित्रग्रीः वर्देत्रस्य सुवा वस्यः दे। वित्रग्रीः वर्देत्स्य स्वा स्व व्या स्वितः विवा स्वरः वित्रा स्वा स्व व्या स्वितः विवा स्वरः वित्रा स्व व्या स्व विवा स्व

Even should the suffering You wished on them come to pass, What's there to be glad at? And if you say, "It satisfies Me when I see it," what Could better ruin you?

The iron hook that's jabbed in us By the fisherman of affliction Is merciless, unbearable; Should it catch me it's a certainty That hellguards keep me captive In their hell-realm cauldrons.

Contemplation Fifteen
How those we dislike help us in our practice

विष्टियाःहेवःवःवेःश्चेंदःयःश्चेंद्रा विष्टेदःयःचेदःयःदर्गोवःयःश्चे। विद्देःश्वरःयरःयोर्वेदःयःचेश्वःव। विवादःयदःयदंदःयःश्चेदःदे

The world may be full of beggars, But finding someone to do me harm Is truly a rare occurrence, Since there could never be a person Who hurt me any way at all If I did not them first.

Suppose that without an ounce Of effort you came across A treasure chest hidden in your house; You should thus feel grateful for Your enemies, who aid you in Your bodhisattva practice.

प्तिः द्वार्यायोश्यायञ्जूत्र्यः यश्यायः विष्टे द्वार्यः विष्टे द्वार्यः विष्टे द्वार्यः विष्टे द्वार्यः विष्टे विष्टे द्वार्यः विष्टे द्वार्य

Since he and I both bring it about, It's fitting that from the outset itself I devote to him the final result That comes from being patient: He has in the way described provided Something for me to be patient about.

Contemplation Sixteen
Serve living beings as you do the Enlightened Ones

|देन्द्वीर-श्रेश्वश्यश्वर-विदःत्तः द्वीत |द्वितः त्वरः विदः विशः श्वरः त्वरः व्यास्त्रः वयस्त्रः व्यास्त्रः व्यास्त

This is why the Able One
Described the field of living beings
And the field of the Victorious.
Many who succeeded in pleasing them
Were able in this way to reach
The perfection of the ultimate.

बिश्रबाक्ष्यायाः मुद्धाः स्वा बिद्धाः ताः नुष्धः नुः निष्ठे नुः नु बिद्धाः सुष्धः स्वा त्यु नः त्या बिद्धाः सुष्धः स्वा त्यु नः त्या बिद्धाः सुष्धः स्व व्य नुष्यः नः त्या

The qualities of an Enlightened One Are attained by means of living beings And the Victorious Buddhas alike. Why then do you act this way, Refusing to honor other beings In the way you do the Victors?

Here is the first point, which covers how scripture itself states that living beings and Buddhas are equivalent as objects towards which to perform merit. It is absolutely necessary that we honor living beings; and *this is why* the sutra entitled *The Excellent Collection of Dharma Teachings* states that—

The field of living beings is the field of the Buddhas; and it is from this field of the Buddhas that all the high qualities of the Buddhas are attained. To attempt the opposite is completely wrong.

The Able One is here describing how the field of living beings is a place to plant vast seeds of merit: he is calling this the "field of the Victorious Buddhas," in the sense that sentient beings are similar to the Teacher himself in how they provide a field for collecting great merit.

तत्। विश्वामात्वान्त्रम् अरम्भूषान्द्रम् अर्थान्त्रम् अर्थः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः

This brings us to the second part, where we establish this point with logic as well. Here there are two steps: how, by having faith in both the Buddhas and all living beings, we can reach our ultimate dreams; and why it is wrong to

discriminate between them, since they are equivalent from the point of view that, by having faith in both, we can reach enlightenment. Here is the first.

तयुःसःर्याः भृष्टीवःतयुः सीरः न्याः सरः र्याकाः भी सरकाः सीकाः प्रदेशः सीकाः सीकाः

It is right to pay honor to every living being, because *many* persons who felt faith towards *them*—towards both Buddhas and living beings—and *who* succeeded in pleasing both were able in this way to reach the perfection of the *ultimate*: that is, the culmination of both their own needs and those of others.

तबर्त्तवुःक्षेरःर्

Here is the second step. For the reasons just stated, the qualities of an Enlightened One—that is, the powers of a Buddha and so on, the final result of our practice—are attained by means of both fields: that of living beings and of the Victorious Buddhas, alike. Why then do you act this way, in this manner, saying "I refuse to honor other beings in the way that I do the Victors." It is completely wrong.

Contemplation Seventeen
To serve living beings is to please the Enlightened Ones

|मालक्षःयादः लेगाः मीर्थः याक्षेत्रः याद्वाः । |स्रोक्षः याद्वः स्रम्यः याद्वाः स्रोक्षः याद्वः स्रम्यः या |स्रोक्षः यादः स्रम्यः स्रोक्षः याद्वः स्रम्यः या |मालक्षः यादः लेगाः मीर्थः याद्वः स्रोक्षः याद्वः ।

Moreover what better method could there Be to repay the kindness of those Who act unimpelled as closest friends And help to an infinite degree, Than to please all living beings?

Contemplations on the Perfection of Patience

Contemplation One What moves the flame?

|ने'सूर'वर्डेन्'यश्वर्ष्ठ्व'वर्त्तुश'वर्ष्ठश| |त्दे'सूर'वर्ष्ठ्व'व्यंच्चर'क्व्यव्यक्ष| |त्रुट'शेद'वार्थे'व'शेद'यःविक्व| |वर्शेद्'व्यथ्यंचर्ष्ठ्व'वर्त्तुश'शेद'शे'वर्जुट'।

Once you have practiced patience, begin Your practice of effort, for enlightenment lies In making these kinds of effort. Without a breeze they never flicker, And just so in the absence of effort Merit can never occur.

यक्षिराग्री:मी विशायत्रिरास्य स्वाधार्म् वात्र्यां विद्या प्रस्ति स्वाधार्म स्वाधारम् स्वाधारम्य स्वाधारम् स्वाधारम्

Once you have practiced patience as described above—that is, once you have learned to maintain your patience with various spiritual hardships, and with the harms that others do to you—then you must, if you hope to achieve enlightenment quickly, begin your practice of effort. This is because enlightenment lies in making these kinds of effort in the different perfections. Butter lamps and other such flames never flicker without a breeze, and just so—in the absence of effort—it can never occur that one manages to complete the collections of merit and wisdom. As such, the matchless state of enlightenment itself is something that all depends upon effort, and so we must make great efforts in practicing it. Entering the Middle Way makes this same point when it states,

All good qualities are things that follow In the wake of the perfection of effort. It is the one cause that brings about both The collections of merit and knowledge.

Contemplation Two Effort is joy

|वर्सेंब'ग्राट'न्यो'त्य'र्सेंचर्दे।

What is effort? It is joy In doing good.

ब्रेट.शु.विधिश्वात्त्र.चर्स्त्यतीश्वाट्टा क्र्याश्चात्रस्य वर्धा । त्रात्यात्रस्य वर्धा । त्रात्यात्रस्य वर्धा । त्रात्यात्रस्य वर्धा । त्रात्यात्रस्य वर्षा । त्रात्या । त्र

"If laziness is defined as joy in mental affliction, then *what is effort?"* one may ask. Effort *is* a feeling of *joy* focused upon *doing* something *good*.

Effort can be divided into four different types: effort which is like armor; applied effort; effort where you never feel discouraged or upset; and effort where you are never satisfied.

Contemplation Three What stops effort?

|ह्यु-त्युन्नान्त्रन्नाःकृत्रःस्व्रा |त्येःत्यःस्वःत्यःलेबःसःत्रः। |ह्यु-त्युन्नाःन्वनःस्वा

Here I will explain the things
That work against it: these are
Laziness, an attraction to what is bad,
And the feeling of being discouraged—
Belittling yourself.

Here next I will explain the things that work against "it"—meaning effort. What exactly are they? First there is laziness, which is feeling attracted to the pleasant feeling of sloth, a condition where the mind and body become unfit to function well. Next there is an attraction to actions which are bad, and then finally the feeling of being discouraged when you try to accomplish some virtuous act—where you belittle yourself by saying, "This is something I could never accomplish."

Contemplation Four What causes laziness?

वित्ति स्वतः क्षेत्राच्यः स्वीर् वित्ति स्वतः क्षेत्राचक्रतः क्षेत्रः व्या वित्ति स्वतः क्षेत्राचक्रतः क्षेत्रः व्या वित्ति स्वतः क्षेत्राचक्रतः क्षेत्रः व्या वित्ति स्वतः व्या वित्ति स्वतः स्वतः

What promotes the feeling of laziness Is sloth—the sweet enjoyment of Some pleasure—as well as a craving For time spent sleeping, all leading to A failure to feel a sense of disgust For the pain of the circle of life.

Contemplation Five Lambs to the slaughter

| यह स्थानिया स्था स्थानिया स

Haven't you even got eyes to see How those in the world with you Have gone steadily to the slaughter? To sit here still and enjoy your sleep Is just the same as the oxen Waiting for the butcher.

म्बर्गिक्त्रं प्रत्याक्ष्यं प्रत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्याक्ष्यं प्रत्याक्षेत्यं प्रत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्याक्षेत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्याक्षेत्रं प्रत्ये प्र

Those in the world with you—whether old, young, inbetween, or anything else—have gone steadily to the slaughter, killed by the Lord of Death. Haven't you even got eyes to see what's going on? If you do see it, then just sitting here still and enjoying your sleep is something very wrong. You are for example just the same as the oxen waiting for the butcher; that is, you are like an ox who can see that the other oxen are being steadily slaughtered by a butcher, and yet still feels no fear, and simply relaxes where he is.

Contemplation Six "I still have time"

|रुष:या:भेर:रु:वक्रे:वशुर:प्या |हे:ब्रेर:रु:वे:क्रॅग्रय:प्यया:यु। |रे:क्रे:वो:वें:ब्रुट्य:गुर:वे। |रुष:या:योद:यर:वें:ब्रेग:यु।

Death is coming to take you, moving At incredible speed; in the time You have left, try to amass good karma. When the moment arrives it's true you may Give up your laziness, but what good Can it do at a time so wrong?

जि.सेर.पश्चाकायस्त्रम्यात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्रम्यात्त्रात्त्रम्यस्यम्यात्त्रम्यस्यम्यस्यम्यस्य

You haven't got to this just yet,
The other's just started, and yet another
Has half still left to do.
Suddenly then does the Lord of Death
Make his arrival, and in your mind
You can only cry, "He kills me!"

Contemplation Seven What it feels to die

|८१९७। यदुः श्रुः दे स्थायः ध्येष।

म्भियात्तरः दश्चिरः क्र्.कु.ब्रेयाः श्वी म्भियाः तथः भ्रःयाद्दः त्येशः स्थायः विदः।

What is it that you imagined you'd do
At that moment, tormented by the memory
Of the wrongs you've done, and with the roar
Of the hell realms in your ears bringing
Such terror that you cover your body in shit,
And reach the depths of insanity?

Contemplation Eight Examine your expectations

। मुर्डे ब्रस्ट स्वान्य । प्रकेष्ट स्वान्य स्

You set your hopes on results, unwilling To make any effort; sufferings shower Down on those least able to bear them. Already in the embrace of death, you imagine Yourself an immortal, cry out When sufferings come to destroy you.

मिंद्यायात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्या मुंत्रायम्याक्राक्षेत्रात्र्याक्ष्या मुंत्रायम्याक्ष्याक्षेत्रात्रात्र्या मिंद्र्यायम्याक्ष्याक्षेत्राया

You must make use of this boat, The human life you have, to cross over The great river of suffering. The boat is hard to find again later; Do not sit then, ignorant one, At this moment there asleep.

|र्म्यायस्यःमुःकेःस्वरःध्यायः। |स्यायस्यःमुःध्यायःयदेःसर्क्याःस्ट्राः |स्यायस्यःमुःध्यायःयदेःसर्क्याःस्ट्राः |र्म्यायस्यःमुःकेःस्वरःध्याःस्ट्राः

You give up the highest kind of pleasure, The holy Dharma, infinite numbers Of causes that bring you pleasure. Why is it you are attracted so much To being distracted by causes for pain, To busyness and the like?

Contemplation Nine On feeling discouraged

|यद्याःयोश्चरःक्ष्यःयाःवःबेश |श्चेदःत्युयाःयरःकेःश्चेःयुव्यश्चःयःके। |यदेवःयःयाश्चरःयश्चेयाश्चःयःके। |यदेवःयःयाश्चरःयश्चरःयाःवःवे

Never allow yourself the feeling Of being discouraged, of having the thought "How could I ever become enlightened?" About this Those Who have Gone Thus, The Ones who speak the truth, have spoken The following words of truth:

। त्रेशःगुरः वर्क्ष्वः यदः व्यून्यः वर्क्षुः य। । त्रेशःगुरः वर्क्ष्वः यदः व्यून्यः वर्क्षुः य। । त्रेशःगुरः वर्क्ष्वः यदः व्यून्यः वर्क्षुः वशः

|तुर-कुवःर्वेव:दगवःत्वःश्चेदःवर्वेव।

Those beings who are flies and gnats, Or bees, and even those Who live as worms as well Can reach unmatched enlightenment, So difficult to reach, If they develop the force of effort.

|यद्याःभ्रःस्याशःग्रीशःश्चेरःश्चेशःशा |यदःद्वःश्चेदःयःशःदःदिशःयशा |यद्यःश्चेदःयःश्चरःद्वशःशःवश्च |यद्याःभ्रेशःयुदःश्चयःश्चेशःशःवर्ष्वा

Someone like me, someone born As a member of human kind, Can tell what helps or hurts. Assuming then that I never give up The bodhisattva's way of life, Why shouldn't I reach enlightenment?

> Contemplation Ten The courage of no choice

वित्रः हे : म्रान्यवाः व्याः श्रें व्यायः या वित्र हित्रं व्यायः व्याः वे : व्यव्यायः वे : व्यायः वित्रः व वित्रे : हित्यः व्यायः वित्रः व्यायः वित्रः वित्रः व्यायः वित्रः वित्रः व्यायः वित्रः वित्रः व्यायः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः व्यायः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रं वित्रः वित्रः वित्रं वित्रः वित्रं वित्र

Now suppose you say, "But I feel a fear For the act of having to give away My arms and legs and such," But it's nothing more than ignorance, A failure to judge what's really heavy Or light that makes you afraid.

चिरःक्ष्यःब्र्यःतरःश्चःवर्धःरः ।रचियःर्यःयःश्वाःर्यःय्वेयाशःवर्धःश्चीः ।त्रम्भवःयःश्वःयःय्यःय्वःयः ।व्यभ्नवःयःव्यःयःय्वः ।व्यभ्नवःयःव्यः

Over countless millions of eons
Infinite times your body's been sliced,
Or stabbed or scorched with fire,
Or chopped up into pieces;
Yet still you were not able then
To reach to enlightenment.

Contemplation Eleven
The lesser pains of the Physician's treatment

विश्वास्य में श्वास्य स्था में स्था मे

The sufferings now that I must bear To reach enlightenment Are something that has a limit. They are like the pain that one endures When a cut is made to stop Some agony spreading inside the chest.

।श्चनःयाुनःग्यनःयार्वःन्धनःग्री। ।श्चे प्रदे प्राप्येशः वर्षःश्चेतः। ।दे प्रवशःश्च्याः प्रश्चेतः व्या

|गर्लेंब्रासुर-भ्रेपनेरकुर-वर्धेर-ग्रा

Every doctor as well makes use
Of treatments that cause discomfort
To cure some greater illness.
I should then learn to bear some minor
Hurt for the sake of bringing destruction
Upon a multitude of pains.

Contemplation Twelve A blissful path to bliss

|मार्के:न्सुन:स्वयःसःवदे:वर्:च।
|श्चर:सःसर्केम:मीर्थःसःसर्हन:दे।
|र्के:माःविदःहु:वहसःर्यःधेरू।
|वर:केद:न्यम:सेर्माकेर:मार्के:चर:सर्हा

The Supreme Physician does not perform His treatments in a way that's like Those other, ordinary ones. He cures the massive and infinite ills Using a particular kind of technique That's gentle in the extreme.

विद्वात्याः श्रेष्याः श्रेष्ठ्यः यात्यवदः। विद्वेषः यात्रः श्रेष्ठ्याः यात्रः याद्वदः। विद्वेषः यात्राः श्रेष्ठ्यः यात्रः याद्वदः। विद्वेषः यात्रां यात्रः यात्रेषः। विद्वेषः यात्रां यात्रः यात्रेषः।

At the beginning the Guide directs us
To acts of charity such as giving
Vegetables and the like.
Once we have grown accustomed to these,
Then gradually, in good time, we find
We can offer even our flesh.

|ग्राट.कॅ:र्य्याय:यी:खुश्य:यादी| |कॅंद्र:ब्रियाय:स्युःसुद्ध:क्र्रें:श्रुव्य:या |दे:कॅ:व्याय:संग्रयाय:प्रेंट्:या |दे:ख:दग्रव:य:कें:ब्रिया:खेंद्र|

There comes a point when we reach a state Of mind where we can view Our bodies just like the vegetables. At that stage then why is it we Would feel it difficult at all To offer our flesh or the rest?

यरः योश्वरक्षः यक्षः द्रगादः यः क्षेत्रः यक्षः वोर्षः स्थाः विकायार्षे स्थाः यक्षः यो स्थाः यो स्थाः

The third part concerns why it is right to bear gladly with any pain required, given the fact that the King of Physicians cures the great illness with a technique which is very gentle. Here there are three different topics: how the Teacher shows us a method to cure the great illness which does not require us to experience the slightest bit of pain during the treatment; how the Teacher has prohibited us from giving away our body so long as we perceive it as something difficult to do; and how it will come to be nothing difficult to give away our own body, since the Teacher has instructed us to do so only when we have become so accustomed to giving away things that we view it as something similar to giving away vegetables.

भवतः यक्ष्रिशःश्वरश्चाः श्रीयः प्रवेदः स्वरः यद्विशः द्वीकः द्वीकः प्रवेः यक्षः श्वरः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः यक्षः य यवदः श्वरः प्रवेदः प्रवदः श्वरः श्वरः प्रवेदः अर्क्ष्यः योक्षः श्वरः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः यक्षः युः यदेः यवदः श्वरः प्रवेदः यवकः क्षेर्यः श्वरः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः प्रवेदः यक्षः युः यदेः प्रवेदः यक्षः युः यदेः यक्षः यविकः य

न्यम्'सेन्'मार्के'चर'सर्न्'प्रस्न्यान्गवःश्चन्यःव्यद्भम्यायःस्मायाः

Here is the first. Consider the hardships that one must undertake to achieve enlightenment. The Supreme Physician, the Lord of the Able Ones, does not perform these treatments of his in a way that's like those other, ordinary ones that are used to cure some illness. Rather he uses a particular kind of technique or method that's gentle in the extreme, a blissful path to reach a blissful goal. It is a path which avoids both extremes: it neither leaves one spent and exhausted, nor leads to the thoughtless consumption of resources. He uses it to cure the massive and infinite ills of the mental afflictions, which force us to continue wandering in the circle of suffering. It could never be right then for you to fear these spiritual hardships.

Here is the second. At the beginning—meaning until such time as we become more familiar with the perfection of giving—the Guide directs us to begin our acts of charity with deeds such as giving away pressed scraps of dough, or vegetables, and anything of the like. Once we have grown accustomed to these and thus overcome our tendency to think of such acts as something difficult, then gradually, in good time, we find that we can offer even our flesh. This is another reason.

विश्वयायते देख्याविष्ययाययायायायायाय्याय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्याय्यायाय्या

Here is the third. There comes a point when, because we have accustomed ourselves to these acts as just described, we reach a state of mind where we can view giving away our bodies just like we view giving away the vegetables and such. At that stage then why is it we would feel it difficult at all to offer our flesh or the rest? We wouldn't feel the least difficulty at all. And so it is wrong for you to feel any kind of fear for undertaking the hardships of a bodhisattva.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Two: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Fourth of Six Parts

The following contemplations are based on the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattvacharyavatara; Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa)* of the Buddhist master Shantideva (circa 700 AD), and the commentary upon it by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*. The relevant sections are found at folios 21A-23A and 81A-87B, respectively, in the ACIP electronic editions TD3871 and S5436.

The content of the contemplations is translated directly from the root text and commentary; the names of the contemplations are not a part of the original text, but are based on the divisions of Gyaltsab Je's commentary and have been supplied for reference.

Further Contemplations on the Perfection of Effort

Contemplation Thirteen The joyful gift of life

|श्रेया:यःश्वरःश्वेरःश्वयःयश्वःश्वर।
|यदेःश्वरःयंया:यरःश्वरःयःयःश्वर।
|यदेःश्वरःयंया:यरःश्वरःयःयःदरः।
|श्वेया:यशःशेश्वशःयःदरःयुशःयःयार्वेद।

Since they have stopped bad deeds, They feel no pain; and because They are wise, there's no dislike. This is due to the fact that thinking of things The wrong way, and doing negative deeds, Harm the body and mind.

त्रक्षां श्रम्भान्त्राचे स्वर्णान्त्राचे स्वर्णान्य स्वर्या स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर्णान्य स्वर

Bodhisattvas who have reached the point where their thoughts of compassion are completely pure *feel no pain* in their bodies when they give them away. This is the case *since they have stopped* each and every kind of *bad deed*. *Neither* when they give their bodies away *is there* any kind of *dislike* for the act, *because they are wise* in knowing when it is right for them to do so.

This is due to the fact—this is caused by the reason—that thinking of things the wrong way (believing that a person or the things which belong to a person could ever have any self-nature), along with doing negative deeds such as taking life and the rest, harm the body and mind; and great bodhisattvas have managed to stop these sources of harm.

Contemplation Fourteen *The use of power*

|श्रेश्रयः उत्रः र्वेतः त्युयः त्यः श्वेरः त्यः ध्येतः । |श्रेश्रः यः स्वाः तस्यः यः दियाशः यः दृदः । |श्रेशः यः स्वाः तस्यः यः दियाशः यः दृदः । |रे. ध्येः यद्यः यश्रयः यश्चेतः ।

The armies used for achieving the goals Of living kind are will, steadfastness, Joy, and finally leaving off. Will is developed by fearing pain, And engaging in the contemplation Of the benefits that it gives.

। त्रें दः त्यीका श्रीता त्रीरः त्यरः यह। । श्रीरः त्रोदः र्यादः र्यादः र्यादः र्यादः र्याः । श्रीरः त्रोदः र्यादः यश्चीरः श्रीयका ग्रीकः दे। । त्रें दः त्यादा श्रीयका श्रीरका ग्रीकः दे।

Eliminate then what acts against us; Work hard to use the various forces Of will, confidence, joy, and also Leaving off, and being engaged, and the Feeling of self-command, in order To increase your capacity for effort.

There are certain *armies* that we must assemble and *use* to smash the things that work against our practice of effort *for achieving the goals of living kind*. A king uses his four armed forces to destroy those who oppose him; just so, we must make use of four forces that provide support for our practice of effort.

The first of these is the force of *will*, where first we contemplate the laws of actions and their consequences, which helps us then to develop a strong aspiration to give up the things that we should give up, and take up those which we should take up.

सदः क्रॅ्च्यूयम् । प्रतः क्रें त्र ए तु ए तु त्रिया त्या यह या मान वा मान वा मान वा मान वा मान वा मान वा मान व

Next is the force of *steadfastness*. Here we learn not to engage unexamined in just any activity that presents itself, but rather to analyze the activity first, then engage in it, and finally to bring it to a successful conclusion.

योश्रामाञ्चर्याः भ्रियायाः देरायदे भ्रियायाः स्ट्रामाञ्चर्याः स्ट्रामाञ्य

Third is the force of *joy*, where we put forth a kind of effort which never takes a break, and is never satisfied; where we act like a child playing a game.

Finally there is the force of *leaving off*, where we apply effort until our body or mind becomes tired; then we rest and refresh ourselves, and rise to make efforts again as soon as we have recovered.

विष्यायतः भूत्रयायाः अर्क्ष्यः ने प्रविद्यः व्यव्यायतः भूत्यः विष्यः प्रविद्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष

We will explain these forces in more detail by taking the force of *will* as a model. It should be *developed by* learning to *fear* the *pain* of the circle of suffering, *and* by *engaging in the contemplation of the benefits that* this same will *gives* to us.

त्यीक्ष.म्ट्रिस्प्रम्म् मूर्ट्टा हिक्ष.जीक्ष.क्षेत्रम्भ मुक्ष्यः त्यीक्ष.म्ट्रिस्प्रम्भ मुक्ष्यः निक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्ष्यः मुक्षः मुक्

We must *eliminate then what acts against us:* one tendency of not engaging in some good activity even when we see that we are capable of accomplishing it, and another tendency of feeling incapable, of thinking to ourselves, "How could I ever do that?" We must *work hard* to cultivate the qualities that support effort—*to use the* four, the *various forces of will, confidence* (which refers to being steadfast), *joy, and also leaving off.*

As we actually perform our good deeds we must *be engaged* in our effort, in the sense of utilizing recollection. After this we must try hard to use the force of a *feeling of self-command*, control of our body and mind, *in order to increase our capacity for effort* to increasingly higher levels.

Contemplation Fifteen On being unstoppable

Utilize the technique described In the *Diamond Victory Banner* to practice The confidence once one has begun.

At the very beginning appraise yourself To see if you have the resources needed, And then decide to act or not. The very highest thing to do Would be not even to start a thing; But once you have begun then never Allow yourself to stop.

तकर चालट श्रुश्रश्च कर्ष ची क्षेश्व प्रश्च श्रुश्च श्रुश्च श्रु श्रुश्च श्रु श्रुष्ट । व्रास्तु चीर प्रवेश स्थ श्रु चीर प्रवेश प्रवेश

The sixth chapter of the sutra known as *the <u>Victory Banner of Diamond</u>*, which belongs to the "majority" section of scripture, includes the following passage:

We can give, oh son of the gods, the example of the rising sun. Its shining is in no way stopped by the fact that some people might be blind, or that a line of mountain tops might be uneven, or any other such problem. It simply lights up any area which is ready to receive the light. Just so do bodhisattvas shine, for the sake of others, and their shining is in no way stopped by the various problems that individual living beings might have. They simply act to ripen, and to liberate, any disciple who is ready to receive their light.

We must *utilize the technique described* here *to practice the* kind of *confidence* that is required to bring to a successful conclusion any particular virtuous activity, *once one has begun* it.

चित्। यश्चम्यायः केत् स्मर्थायः सम्मर्थायः सम्मर्थायः

At the very beginning, as you first engage in any particular action, you must appraise yourself well, to see if you have the mental resources, or ability, that will be needed. If you find that you do have the ability, then should you decide to act; but if you find that you do not possess this ability, then you should decide not to act. The very highest thing to do would be not even to start a thing; but once you have begun, then you should never allow yourself to stop until you have brought the activity to a successful conclusion.

Contemplation Sixteen Alone, by myself, if need be

|यर्गःकेरःयाड्याःस्यान्त्रेत्।

The confidence of accomplishment Is when you say, "I am willing to do This thing all by myself."

किंत्र सेंद्र स्वाप्त स्वाप्त सेंद्र प्रदेश किंत्र सेंद्र स्वाप्त सेंद्र सेंद्र स्वाप्त सेंद्र सेंद

The entire world lives at the mercy
Of their mental afflictions; they're incapable
Of helping themselves at all.
Beings can't do what I can do;
And thus I'll be the one
To do what must be done.

|८८.सू.यू. येष्वर.मु.स.यू.त्र.त्र.त्र.त्र.त्र.त्र.त्र.त्र.यू.स्य.यू.त्र.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू.यू

Here is the first point, which is identifying the confidence of accomplishment. Suppose you see someone else undertaking some worthy activity. *The confidence of accomplishment is when you* raise the mental power to *say* to yourself, "I am willing to do this thing all by myself."

Next is the second point, which is the reason why we should feel this confidence. You must undertake deeds for the benefit of living beings without depending on others to help you. This is because the inhabitants of the entire world live at the mercy of their mental afflictions, and are therefore incapable of

helping even themselves at all. Given this fact, beings can't do what I can do, in making efforts at good deeds for the sake of others. Even if I did try to rely on them for help then it would be useless, and thus you must think to yourself, "I'll be the one to do what must be done for the sake of others."

Contemplation Seventeen Child's play

Like those who seek a feeling of fun From playing a game, these ones as well Should cultivate a craving for This work, all those that work for them, And come to be insatiable In seeking it, and taking joy.

Think about children playing a game, from which they seek a feeling of fun. These ones as well, these bodhisattvas, should cultivate a craving for—that is, come to feel excited about doing—all those kinds of activities where they work for the sake of others: this work of studying and contemplating, and then meditating upon the wish for enlightenment. We should try to reach a point where we become insatiable in seeking this work; and where we want do it continuously, without a break; in short, we should take great joy in it.

Contemplation Eighteen The razor and the honey

| निर्वेश्वेर्द्र्यः दुः त्यश्चात्र्यः यादः विद्यात्रः स्थाः त्यात्रः स्थाः त्यात्रः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स | निर्वेश्वेष्ट्रः स्थाः त्यात्रः स्थाः स्था

People work for happiness, But there's no certainty that what They do will make them happy. How can you ever be happy if You fail to do that single work, Their own, which makes you happy?

|सुःग्वेदेःर्स्र-क्रम्थःसुरःसुःस्दे। |दर्दर्यः इस्रशःग्रीश्वःसःदेस्यः द्वा |दर्भः सुदः पदेः तः विः प्रः प्यो |प्रस्तु दः दस्या

You never feel satisfied
With objects of desire, honey
Smeared on a razor blade;
Why at the same time are you always
Content with the sum of merit you have
For the happiness of the fruits, and peace?

People in the world spend their time with farming and other kinds of work for the sake of finding some physical and mental happiness. But there is absolutely no certainty that what they do will ever end up making them happy; there is no guarantee that by doing these things they will reach any kind of happiness. There does though exist a single kind of work, the activities of bodhisattvas, "their own," which invariably makes you happy, in both a temporal and an ultimate way. How can you ever be happy if you fail to do this particular kind of work? It will never happen.

ततुः चीं स्त्रीयः स्त्र्याका तस्त्रं विष्ठा को कार्यः स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्र

Consider the various *objects of desire:* visual objects, sounds, and so on. They are just like *honey smeared on a razor blade*—if you lick the blade you might experience a hint of good taste, but then you suffer as it slices open your tongue. No matter how much you have of these sense objects here in the circle of suffering, *you* can *never feel satisfied*.

Now consider the various deeds of merit: giving and the rest. They are happiness in that they allow you to reach short-term types of karmic fruits or results—an exceptional type of birth in the higher realms, life as a worldly pleasure being or human. And ultimately they allow you to achieve as well the happiness of peace, of having put to rest each and every suffering that there is. Why is it that, at the same time as you are never satisfied with sense objects, you are always content with the sum of the merit you have for reaching these other kinds of happiness?

Contemplation Nineteen The bowl and the sword

। दे. युष्यः स्वयाः यः युष्यः यः युष्यः यः या । द्याः वे : युष्यः यः स्वियः यशुः यः या । दे. युष्यः स्वयाः यः युष्यः यः या

विष्याप्रयाश्रेस्रयातावियापराद्यीर।

Poison makes its way throughout The entire body, riding upon The coursing of the blood. Just so, should they find an opening, Then negativities make their way Throughout the entire mind.

বিদ্বান্ত্র্বাম্যত্র শ্রীমার্বির প্রাম্যত্রা বিশ্ব নার্মির নার্ম্বান্তর শ্রীমার ইবান্তর শ্রীমা বিদ্বান্ত্র্বান্তর শ্রীমার ইবান্তর শ্রীমা

Suppose a person handed you A bowl completely full of oil, Then stood before you with a sword, Threatening to take your life Should a drop spill. You ascetics Must concentrate like this.

Here is the third point, which is how recollection and awareness leave no opening for problems to arise. Imagine now that someone has shot you with a poison arrow, and that the *poison* is *making its way throughout* your *entire body, riding upon the blood* as it *courses* through your veins. *Just so* do the various mental afflictions, such as losing your recollection, act *should they find any opening* to do so. And when they do find an opening, *then* the different *negativities* of anger and the rest *make their way throughout the entire mind.* For this reason you must try to stop even the slightest mental affliction whenever it should arise.

"How can I learn to concentrate on this?" you may ask. Suppose a person handed you a bowl completely full of oil, and made you walk down a slippery path. Suppose then that they stood before you holding a sword, threatening to take your life should you spill even a single drop. Out of complete fear, you would try your utmost to concentrate. Those of you who are ascetics in the sense of attempting to follow the life of a bodhisattva must be like this; you must concentrate by keeping tight hold on your recollection, aimed at the various antidotes such as the wish for enlightenment, and the like.

Contemplations on the Perfection of Meditation

Contemplation One Quietude

निःसूरः पर्से बः वयुश्यास्त्रीत् वश्यो। । धोदः वे : हेटः दे : व्यद्दे बः व्यः चल्या । शेस्रकः वे : इस्यः चरः याः धोटकः चवे : स्रो। । वे द्रार्थेट्यः स्रके : चवे : स्वाः वः व्यवे : स्रो।

Once you've developed your practice of effort In the way described above, then place Your mind in single-pointedness. A person whose mind is in a state Of constantly wandering lives his life In the jaws of mental affliction.

|सुस्र:पर:बोक्तर:व:सुर:ट्री |सुस्र:धर:बोक्तर:व:स्रे:ववुट:ट्री

This constant wandering never occurs With those who remain in isolation Of body and the mind.

याच्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्याः स्वीत्याः याद्याः याद्य

Now once you've developed your practice of effort—your joy over doing good things—in the way it was described in the explanation above, then you must learn to place your mind in single-pointed meditation. A person whose mind is in a state of constantly wandering, due to mental dullness or restlessness, lives his life in the jaws of mental affliction, which is so much like a great and dangerous wild beast. The point is that such a person is very close to being destroyed completely.

ग्रीशन्त्रेत्रम्भः श्रूमः श्रूमः श्रिमः श्रूमः श्रिमः श्रूष्यः त्रुमः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रू श्रीश्रान्त्रेत्रमः श्रीमः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्रूष्यः श्

"How is it," one may ask, "that I can learn to eliminate this wandering state of mind?" The answer is that this constant wandering—the enemy of single-pointed concentration— never occurs with those who remain in isolation of body and mind; meaning with those who are able to keep themselves from the hustle and bustle of life physically, as well as from thoughts of desire and the like.

Contemplation Two Stopping attachment

वि:वादश्यः प्रवाद्यः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः विश्वः व्यव्यः विश्वः विश्वः व्यव्यः विश्वः विश्वः व्यव्यः विश्वः विश्वः व्यव्यः विश्वः विश्

Understand first the fact that vision Married close to quietude Destroys the mental afflictions. Begin then by seeking quietude; It in turn is achieved by the bliss Of losing attachment for the world.

You should *understand first the* following *fact*. Meditative quietude consists of practicing a state of single-pointedness upon some virtuous object until one has been able to eliminate mental restlessness and dullness from the mind; this then brings on a kind of bliss caused by the extreme manageability of the body and mind. This *quietude* is like a horse *married to* its rider, which is the special *vision* of realizing emptiness. The combination of the two then is able to *destroy* completely every *mental affliction* of the three realms, along with the seeds for these afflictions. Since this is the case, you must seek to achieve a special vision which brings on the state of manageability, which itself occurs through being able to analyze the true nature of existence. To achieve this vision though you must first *begin by seeking meditative quietude*, for it is impossible to develop special vision without first achieving this quietude.

चवुः द्वीरः र्रा प्रमासम्बद्धाः प्रमादा प्

It—this quietude—*is in turn achieved by* a feeling of *bliss*, which is caused by *losing one's attachment to the world*, in both the inner and the outer sense; that is, attachment to the body, to possessions, and so on. The reason for this is that attachment to these things makes us slaves of mental restlessness and dullness.

Contemplation Three Don't be with children

विशासाम्बेदासका से विद्यान्त्र।
विशासका स्वर्धिका स्वर्यका स्वर्धिका स्वर्धिका स्वर्धिका स्वर्धिका स्वर्ध

Those fleeting friends and relatives
Can bring to destruction even the Dharma,
That indestructible sphere.
If I spend my time with children
On my same level, then I will go
With certainty to the lower realms.
If being with them leads me down
To a different level, then why is it
I choose to stay with children?

Contemplation Four
On seeking to please the world

Not even the victorious Buddhas possess The ability to please all beings, So different in their wishes. Needless to say then someone as low As me could never do so; thus Give up all thought of the world.

|द्यायःयःहःसूरःसूर्यःस्रेरःयःक्ष्र्र| |हेरःयःउदःयःसःस्रदःयहर्। |रूरःयद्वेदःयर्थ्यासःरगायःरेःद्याःयोस। |द्यायःयःहःसूरःस्रोःयरःयशुर।

People put down those who have No money, and say bad things about Those who do have money. If their very nature is that they are So difficult to be with, how then Could I ever make them happy?

Contemplation Five On the joys of solitude

|वयाश्वयाःस्वरः द्वयाः यत्याः यावसः वयाः र |विदः इस्रश्वः से स्वरः हे त्रः से स्वरः द्वाः त्वाः |विदः इस्रश्वः से स्वरः हे त्याः त्वः । |वयाश्वः वः प्रयोशः स्वरः हे त्याः यावस्यः वयाः र

When you live in the forest, neither the wild Animals, nor the birds, nor trees, Ever say something unpleasant.

May there come a day when I may stay Living together with these new friends, So very easy to live with.

विष्यः विष्यः क्षीतः सुरः स्वेदः । विष्यः विदः दुदः दुः चाविष्यः चरुषः हो। विष्याः चाषाः सुः विदः सेदः यवस्या

|क्यान्नास्त्रोदासरावर्षीराख्यासी।

May I come to live in a cave somewhere, Or in some abandoned temple, or else At the foot of a forest tree. May the day never come that I look back At all, may I reach a place Where I've finished with every attachment.

|अःर्सुवाशःयन्वाःवीःयावशःयः स्याः । | ४८: नविवः श्रीकः वेः प्यत्यः स्याः स्थाः | ४८: नविवः श्रीकः वेः प्यत्यः स्याः स्थाः | ४८: नविवः श्रीकः वेः प्यत्यः स्याः स्थाः | ४४: विवाशः यन्वाः वेः याव्यः यावः स्थाः ।

May I one day live on land that no one Thinks is something they own, By nature open and wide. May I stay there living free to do Whatever I please, and totally free Of feelings of attachment.

Contemplation Six Die before death

विष्टियाः हेवः गुवः ववः यातुरः यत्तेवः तु।
विष्टियाः हेवः गुवः यत्तेः ध्येश्वः दे।
विष्यश्चः देः देः स्वायः सुः स्वरः ।
विष्यश्चः देः देः स्वयाशः सुः स्वरः।

May I come to pass all of my days
Deep in the woods, from this moment till
The hour comes when those of the world
Are wrapped in grief, and four strong men
Come to lift me up and lead me
Forward from that place.

वित्वत्रः श्रु-दर्शेत्रः यत्रः श्रेत्रः स्था वित्रव्यः वित्तरः वित्वः यत्रः यहेशः द्रशा वित्ववरः श्री-त्राः वित्वः यत्रः यहेशः द्रशा वित्ववरः श्रु-दर्शेतः यद्भाः वित्ववरः श्री

You reach a place where there's no friend Nor anyone for your suspicions; Your body lives in isolation, alone. There comes a day when you consider Yourself already dead, and there's no Grief when death arrives.

> Contemplation Seven The living cemetery

वित्वायः द्वीत्यः प्रवादः द्वा वित्वायः द्वीतः वित्वः द्वा वित्वायः द्वीतः वित्वः द्वा वित्वायः द्वादः विवायः विवायः विवायः वित्वायः द्वादः विवायः विवायः विवायः विवायः वित्वायः द्वादः विवायः विवायः

Our entire planet is chaos, and filled With madmen created by the struggle Of ignorance with a "self." Your heart fails whenever you go To a burial ground and see nothing there But stacks of sun-dried bones; Why then is it you take such pleasure Here in the city, a cemetery Covered with bones in motion?

Contemplation Eight Life in the world

विश्वास्त्रेरःश्चित्राःश्चेत्रःस्या १८४:व्याययः वः वःदेःश्चेत्रःयदि। १र्वेरःश्चेत्राश्चार्याश्चेशः व्यक्तित्राश्चाः १र्वेशःवश्चाः व्यव्यक्षःश्चेत्रः विश्वाःश्चा

If children find themselves unable
To build up wealth, then as adults
What will they have to make them happy?
If then they devote their lives to collecting
Money, they'll only get old; so what
Will they do with the thing they wanted?

|दर्नि:ख्र-दर्यायः |क्षेत्र:द्र-द्र-व्यःक्षःक्षःक्षः |क्षेत्र:द्र-व्यःक्षःक्षःक्षःक्षः |द्रेत्र:वृत्तःक्षःक्षःक्षःक्षःक्षः |दर्गिकःदुःव्यःक्षःक्षःक्षःक्षःक्षः

Some poor souls who live for things
Go and exhaust themselves completely
Laboring till the day is done;
They come back home and throw their bodies
Dissipated, just like corpses,
On their beds and sleep.

विटे. उप्त्र. ज्रूच क्रियं श्री क्रियं श्री क्रियं क्रियं

Some distressed are sent on missions, And go through different sufferings Far away from home; They have a craving for a woman, But in the course of an entire year Can't even lay their eyes on one.

|मालकः मुं त्यारा स्त्री स्त्रुट्ट में अरम्बर्धा । मालकः मुं त्यारा स्त्रुट स्त्रा स्त्रुट स्त्रा स्त्रुट स्त्रा स्त्रुट स्त्रा स्त्रुट स्त्र स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट स्त्रुट

There are ignorant ones who, hoping
To bring some good to themselves,
Sell themselves for some purpose;
Then without attaining the thing
They wanted, they're driven on by the wind
Of meaningless work for others.

Contemplation Nine Where to devote yourself to meditation

|स्ट्रिन्द्रः क्रॅन्स्स्यः ग्रीकाः स्ट्रिन्द्रः क्रिन्स्यः ग्रीकाः स्ट्रिन्द्रः क्रिन्स्यः ग्रीकाः स्ट्रिन्द्रः क्रिन्स्यः स्ट्रिन्द्रः क्रिन्स्यः स्ट्रिन्द्रः स्ट्रिन्द्रः

We spend our days in gentle walks and thoughts Of helping others, here in the silent Peace of the forest, flowing in soft breezes;

We live doing as we please in our mansion Of a wide flat rock, cool with the touch Of moonlight and sandalwood scent of the holy, Living deep within the woods Of peacefulness, completely emptied Of conflict and the afflictions.

विद्यायास्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्। विद्यायस्त्रीत्।

We live where we please, as long As we like, in abandoned houses Or caves, or else at the foot of a tree. We have given up the suffering Of owning and protecting things, Carefree we live, relying on nothing.

Contemplation Ten
What to meditate upon: the service of others

विट क्वा शेस्र के प्रश्लेस क्षा विट क्वा शेस्र के प्रतास के प्रता

Think of these considerations And others as well, contemplate The benefits of isolation. Put an end to useless Thoughts, and meditate upon The wish for enlightenment. वित्याः दरः यविषः द्वाः यक्षेत्रः यक्षेत्रः यक्षेत्रः विष्टे विदे दरः स्वाः यस्यः सक्ष्यः सक्षः यक्षः व विदे दरः स्वाः यस्यः सक्ष्यः सक्षः यक्षः व विद्याः दरः यविष्टः सक्ष्यः सक्ष्यः यक्षः व

From the very beginning exert yourself In the practice of treating others And yourself the same. When the happiness and the sufferings Are the same, then you will care for all Just as you do yourself.

यर.खे.य.रट.। येट.क्य.ग्री.श्रेश्वश्चर्यं राष्ट्रेश्वर्यात्र्यं वात्र्यः यात्र्यः व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व यात्रश्चात्रेः त्यात्रं त्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्रं त्याः त्यात्रं व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यात्रः व्यरःखे.य.रट.। येट.क्य.ग्री.श्रेशश्चरं व्यात्रं व्यात्रं व्यात्रं व्यात्रं व्यात्रः व्यात्र

Think of these considerations—the ones presented up to this point—and others as well, in order to contemplate the benefits of living in some faraway place, isolated from the hustle and bustle of life and other such distractions. Put a complete end to all useless thoughts like striving after the objects of the senses, and spend your time meditating upon the wish for enlightenment.

योश्चर्यात्राची हैं त्र्यात्र होता विष्ण विष्ण

"What is the method," you may ask, "which I should use to meditate upon this wish?" You should, from the very beginning, exert yourself in the practice of treating others and yourself the same. "And how do I do that?" you may ask. We spend our time working to achieve happiness for ourselves, and working to stop any suffering for ourselves. We must learn to act just the same way

towards the happiness and the sufferings of others; we should make our attempts to achieve *happiness and* to stop *suffering the same*, for both ourselves and others. When we do so, then we will come to care for and cherish all living beings just as we do ourselves.

Contemplation Eleven They are a part of you too

विषयः स्यान्य स्वान्य स्वान्य

There are many separate parts, the hands
And all the rest, but we dearly care
For them all, as a single body.
Just so shall I work for the happiness of every different being,
Treating all as equal, all as one,
Thinking of their joy and pain as if it were my own.

योशन्तर्भेयःतर्रः स्थान्तर्भात्तत्त्वत्त्वत्तर्भात्तर्भात्तत्त्रत्भात्तर्भात्तर्भात्तत्त्रत्वत्तत्त्वत्त्रत्वत्त्रत्वत्तत्त्वत्

One may make the following objection:

I don't see how it could be the right thing to do to act towards the happiness and the sufferings of others exactly the same as I do towards those of my own; the reason I say this is that the number of living beings is absolutely infinite, and there is no way that I could ever think "me" about every one of them.

Think though about the many *separate parts* of your body: your feet, your *hands, and all the rest*. Even though *there are many* of these parts, we think of them all as "mine," and care dearly for all of them, as the single body of a single person. The various *different* types of *beings*—worldly gods, humans, and the like—are *just so*. Even though they are separate, there is no distinction between their individual *joys and* their individual *pains*: I can learn to view them as indistinguishable, and then conceive of all of them *as if* they *were my own* self, just as I conceive of myself as myself. The point here is that I could learn to think about *every* one of them in the same way, and say to myself, "I *shall work* to achieve this particular *happiness*," and "I shall work to stop this particular suffering."

Contemplation Twelve What makes pain mine?

|यात्यःहेःयद्यायोःश्च्याःयश्च्यःयोश्च| |याव्यदःयोःशुक्षःत्यःश्चेर्याःयश्च्यःदे| |देःश्चेरदःदेःयद्याःश्च्याःयश्च्यःदे| |यद्याःहःवेदःयश्चेर्यःशेर्याव्यदःहेद्।

Suppose you object, and say
That your pain never hurts
The body of another.
Even so your pain is something
You can't bear for just one reason:
Your grasping to yourself.

|चर्या.ज.यचय.त्रमःश्रु.यश्चीमःलटः। |रु.चबुषःयोषषःश्चीःर्झया.चर्झजःरया

|रे.केंदर.रे.चर्या.केंय्यचक्तारी |यर्या.धे.खेब.तका.यज्ञ्स्या.रो

Just so even though it's true
That sufferings others feel
Never come and strike you,
Still it is your suffering,
Since you'll find them hard to bear
Once you grasp to yourself.

One may make yet another objection:

Two facts here are the same: the pain that others have doesn't hurt me; and the pain that I have doesn't hurt others. Therefore you are incorrect when you say that I should make very intentional efforts to remove their pain in exactly the same way that I make efforts to remove my own pain.

Yet there is no such problem in our reasoning. Suppose you do object this way, and say that your pain never hurts the body of another, any more than their pain hurts you. Even so, their pain is your pain. This is because your own pain is something you find unbearable for just one reason: your habit of grasping to yourself as yourself.

Suppose that, *just so*, you become accustomed to considering others yourself as well. *Even though it may be true* then *that* the *sufferings* which *others feel* may *never come and strike you* personally, *still* the suffering that these living beings feel *is your suffering* to work to remove, *since you'll find it hard to bear* it when sufferings come to them, *once you* have learned to *grasp to* them as being *yourself*.

Contemplation Thirteen Logical proofs for compassion and love

I must stop the pain of others, Because it's pain; it's like the pain That I feel myself. I must act to help all others Because they're living beings; it's like The body that I own.

[The following section is presented by Gyaltsab Je as a pair of formal, logical proofs.]

Proof number one:

Consider the pain of other living beings.

It is right that *I must stop* it,

Because it is pain.

It is, for example, like the pain that I feel myself.

Proof number two:

It is something right that *I must act to* achieve whatever *helps* and brings happiness to *all others*,

Because each person out there is a living being.

It's like, for example, the way I work to bring happiness to *the body that* I own.

Contemplation Fourteen The democracy of love

|यारःक्रें:यद्याःदरःयात्वदःयाद्वे:या |यदे:यःवर्देदःदुःसर्द्धरसःयःव्या |यद्याःदरःयुदःयरःद्वेःय्येदःद्वा |यादःस्वेरःयद्याःयाद्वेयाःयदेःयरःयर्द्धद्वा

Given the fact that both myself And others are exactly the same In wanting happiness, What difference could there ever be Between us, what reason that I work Only for happiness for myself?

|यारःकुः यर्याः स्टः याव्यः स्ट्रीरः या |यर्याः प्रद्याः स्टः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः |य्याः प्रद्याः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः |यारः कुः स्ट्राः याव्यः स्ट्राः स्ट्र

Given the fact that both myself And others are exactly the same In not wanting pain, What difference could there ever be Between us, what reason that I protect Myself and not all others?

सर्वेटश्रात्तर वर्ष्मे व्यान्तर व्यान्यान्तर व्यान्तर व्यान्तर व्यान्तर व्यान्तर व्यान्तर व्यान्त्य

It is right that I should act exactly the same towards the happiness and sufferings of others as I do towards those of my own, for the following reasons. Given the fact that both myself and others are exactly the same in how we want happiness, what difference then could there ever be between us—between myself and others? There is no difference at all. And for what reason then do I work only for happiness for myself—what is my justification? Why do I not work the same for the happiness of others? What I'm doing now is not right.

Given the fact that both myself and others are exactly the same in how we do not want any pain, what difference could there ever be between us, between myself and others? There is no difference at all. And for what reason then do I fail to protect the happiness of all others, and concentrate instead on reaching my own happiness, and protecting it from ever being lost? The two happiness are exactly the same, and it is right for me to work to achieve them both.

Contemplation Fifteen Being beyond oneself

|यार्थि: दे: त्यः श्रुवा: तश्रूवः । |यद्वा: त्यः योद्धि: श्रुवः यश्रूदः । |यद्धि: योद्धि: योद्धि: यश्रूदः । |यद्धि: योद्धि: योद्धि: यश्रूदः । |यद्धि: योद्धि: योद्धि: यश्रूदः ।

Suppose you say that the reason why You don't protect them is that their pain Doesn't hurt to you.
Why then do you protect yourself From future pain, since it doesn't Do hurt to you either?

निर्मामिश्वः दे हे हें दि हुस्यः यदि। विद्याः प्रेरः दे निष्यः प्रेरः योव्यः हे दि त्याः विद्यः प्रेरः विष्यद्यः निष्यः हे दि त्याः विद्याः प्रेरः विष्यद्यः निष्यः हे दि त्याः विद्यः विद्याः विद्या

Your idea that you do so because You think to yourself that you will have To experience it is all wrong, because The person who has already died Is one person, and the one who's taken Birth is another altogether.

। तुःसुरः देशः दुः देश्वतुरः द्याः । तुः दुः रुः देशः दुः द्यसुरः याः स्थाः स्थाः । तारः स्वाः स्याः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः । तारः स्वाः स्याः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः । तारः स्वाः स्थाः स्था

And suppose that any particular pain Were only something a particular one Had to care about; if this Were the case, then a pain in the foot Would be nothing for the hand—Why then does it care?

|यात्यःहे:देवाश्वःयःश्चेत्रःधदःवदेर। |यद्याःहुःवहेंत्रःयशःवह्याःदेःत्र। |चन्याःयाल्वदःश्चःर्नेयाशःयादःध्येदःहे। |रेःदुशःयरःदेःश्चदःग्चःहेन।

Suppose you say that, although that's wrong, You engage in this case due to the fact That you hold onto a self.
This "self" and "other" though are very Wrong, and nothing but something you should Reject, with all the strength you have.

चीर-४-८-चीर-र्याका-४४-८-जार्बेया-यर्बेर-यर्बेर-श्र-प्रयाका-त्र-व्या-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्य-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त्र-स्यान्त

Suppose you say the following: "The reason why I don't try to protect all living beings from their suffering is that when this pain comes to them it doesn't hurt to me personally." This though is totally wrong. According to this way of thinking, it must be a mistake for people to try to accumulate money during their younger years out of a concern that they will undergo some kind of suffering during their later years; or for any one of us to try to find some way today, or this morning, to prevent some suffering that we think may come to us tomorrow, or later in the day. Why then do you try to protect yourself from some future pain, from some suffering that you are afraid might come later, since it doesn't do any hurt to you, to the person who exists at the earlier point in time, either? According to your way of thinking, it must be incorrect to do so.

यदयाः योक्षः स्रोत्तः प्राक्षः स्रान्त्रः स्र्याः यक्ष्यः योः स्रोत्तः स्राध्यः स्राधः स्रोत्तः यद्याः योक्षः स्र्याः यक्ष्यः स्रोतः द्यों काः यक्षः देः र्वेषाः यवेः व्यवकाः याः ययदः यक्षः स्राधः कोः स्रोतः विकाः स्रोत् । कें वदेवः योक्षः स्रोत्तः स्रोत्त्रः स्र्याः यक्ष्यः योः स्रोतः स्राधः यक्षः स्रोतः स्रोतः योक्षः विकाः योक्ष

Someone may give the following reply:

If in this life I fail to stop the causes that are going to bring me suffering in my later lives, then I myself will have to experience that suffering in my later life. As such, it is quite appropriate that I make efforts in the various methods of stopping these causes.

Here you have an *idea that you* must *do so because you think to yourself that* the you in this life *will have to experience the pain* in their future lives; but your idea is all wrong. This is because the person who in this case has already died is one person, and the one who's taken birth in the future lives is another altogether; it's completely wrong to say that these two are one and the same.

By the way, the logic presented here is meant to refute the idea that, because two people are separate entities, it is wrong to say that either one of them is obliged to work to remove the suffering of the other. To accomplish this refutation, we present a parallel example involving the two separate versions of one person at successive points in time. It is not though the intent of the root text here to deny the fact that, in an ultimate sense, the successive versions of a person do constitute a single person.

स्रा व्या विषयः स्रा त्या स्रा त्रे अप त्या स्रा क्षेत्रा त्य क्षेत्र स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्रा विषयः स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या त्या क्षेत्र स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्रा त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या त्या क्षेत्र स्र स्र त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या क्षेत्र स्र त्या त्या क्

And suppose further that the pain of any particular part of the body were only something which that one particular part had to care about and try to remove. If this were the case, then a pain caused in the foot when a thorn pierced it would be

nothing for the hand to worry about; why then would the hand care about the suffering that the foot was undergoing? According to you it would be wrong to do so.

Suppose you say now the following:

Although it is wrong to assert that two objects which are unrelated should work to remove each other's suffering, here it's different. In this case we assume that I have become accustomed to holding to a particular self: I consider the bodies of the previous and succeeding lives, and the bodies of the earlier part of the day and the latter part of the day, and so on, to be one person. And it is due to the fact that I have become accustomed to thinking this way that one of these engages in attempting to remove the pain of the other.

It is *very wrong though* to hold to the existence of *this "self" and "other"* which are able to perform some action on their own. They are *nothing but something you should reject, with all the strength you have.* This is because the tendency to hold onto some self-nature of the person is mistaken in what it believes to exist, and is responsible for causing every kind of devastation.

Contemplation Sixteen Are we only what we control?

বিদ্বাদ্য ক্রিন্দ্র বিষ্ণ ক্র

|र्नुया:पर्नृत्य:उद्याप्तः देः स्रेतःय। |र्नुया:पर्नृत्य:उद्याप्तः प्रमुरा

The things we call a "continuum" and A "collection" are unreal; they're like A string of things, or an army. That of one with suffering Doesn't exist at all; so who Is he that could ever control it?

|सूया:यस्य:यद्या:यं:सेद:यद:दे। |स्या:यस्य:यद्या:सेद:यद्या:सेद। |सूया:यस्य:येद:सेद:दे:यस्य:ग्रु। |देस:यस:देद:दे:हे:हेक्या:ग्रु।

Since the one who owns a pain Does not exist, there can be no Distinctions among then any. If something is a kind of pain, Then it's something to remove; what use Is saying that it's fixed here?

|उ.द्येर.प्रांच.की.क्रंचा.चर्चा.क्रंच |पांच.पे.पर्च्चा.चर्चर.वश्चा |पर्च्चा.तर.वी.ब्रंचा.चर्चर.वर्च्चा |प्रे.श्चर.चर्चा.क्रंचा.चर्चर.वर्च्चा |रे.श्चर.चर्चा.क्रंचा.चर्चा.क्रंच

You can't continue your argument Of asking why the pains of all Are something you must stop. If you're going to stop it, then You must stop all of it; if not, Then mine's like other beings'.

त्रीत्र।

यश्चित्रक्षत्रभ्रत्याः क्रियाः श्वाहित्राः क्रियाः स्वाहित्रः स्वाहित्यः स्वाहित्रः स्वाहित्यः स्वा

Here is the third point, which is disproving the objection of thinking that it is wrong to engage in the practice of treating myself and others the same. Someone may make the following objection:

The two cases are not the same; [in the former case, of myself and others,] the two beings involved are separate and have no connection. The feet and hands of any one person though are one collection of parts, and the person in his younger and older years, or else in his previous and succeeding lives, is one continuum. Therefore in this latter case it is logical that one of the members should undertake to remove the suffering of the other, whereas in the former case it is not logical.

Isn't it true though that there <u>is</u> no collection, and no continuum either, which can act on its own accord? Because isn't it the case that *the things we call a "continuum" and a "collection" are* simply *unreal*, in being concepts applied to multiple parts—just *like* the concepts of *a string of things* [such as a rosary of beads, or a garland of flowers], *or an army*, or anything similar? Isn't a continuum simply a concept applied to the combination of what came before and what came later, and isn't a collection simply a concept applied to the components that make it up? Aren't they both therefore unreal?

तर्ने सु'बेग'र्नर'नर'त्युर'सुते थर'र्न्न सुर'नु'स'थेर'पर'सुर्द्र राज्ये

All those things which can be considered one of the things that any one person possesses are things which that person controls, and therefore the suffering of any one member is something that another member must try to remove, even though these members may be separate in either location or time.

That so-called "self" of any one person who has suffering though is something which doesn't exist at all. So who is he then, this person who supposedly acts on his own accord, that could ever control "it," meaning their own happiness and pain? And how could these ever be anything that he controlled? The two are completely equal in being neither.

Since this is true—that is, for the reason that the one who supposedly owns a pain does not exist anyway—there can be no distinctions at all among then any of the sufferings which myself and others experience. In a nominal sense though, in a relative sense, we can speak of the sufferings of "myself" and "others," and so we can say that it is "right to make efforts to remove the sufferings of others, just as we strive to remove our own sufferings."

त्र प्रत्या क्रिया प्रकृता प्रकृता प्रदेत् प्राप्त प्राप्त प्रत्य प्राप्त प्रकृता प्रकृत प्र

क्रेन्यः स्ट्रिन् यात्र क्रिन् प्राप्त विष्यं मुक्षः यात्र यात्र स्वाप्त स्वा

Here is the second more general point: a brief summary. Therefore, the pain that someone else is feeling *is something* that I must rightly work *to remove*, for the simple reason that it *is a kind of pain*. What use *is* it so *say here* that the distinction between myself and others *is* something that is *fixed?* We must undertake to eliminate each and every pain of every other person; *you can't* therefore *continue* this *argument* of *yours*, where you keep *asking why the pains of all* other beings *are something you must stop*, even though they don't do any hurt to you. Your own pain is not something that you ever wanted; so *if you're going to stop it, then* it is right that *you must stop all of the pain* that exists. But *if* the pain of others is *not* something that you should remove, *then your* own pain should *be* just *like* that of all *other beings:* meaning that your own pain then would never be something that you should work to remove either. Given all this, you must learn to cherish others just as you cherish yourself, and make dedicated efforts to remove their suffering.

Contemplation Seventeen The power of habit

वित्वार्वे विकाने विकास स्ता

By accustoming yourself to the idea, You have learned to think of A few drops of semen and blood That belong to other people As being yourself, even though There's no such thing at all.

|दे:चलेब:मालब:मी:खुर्यःयःष्यः। |पदमा:केश:के:धी:धीर:की:मानुदः। |पदमा:मी:खुर्यःके:मालब:दमा:हुव्दः। |पलमा:य:दे:खुर:दगव:प्यःकोद्।

Why then do you say you cannot Think of the bodies of other people As being yourself as well? There isn't any difficulty In deciding that the bodies of others Are your own body too.

यात्वन्यन्त्रम् नुर्वे।

यावन्यन्यन्त्रम् नुर्वे।

One may continue with the following objection:

I could never come to think of another's body as "me," or of the eye that belonged to another as being "my eye." How then could I ever reach the state of mind where I learn to act towards other people's happiness and suffering in exactly the same way that I do towards my own?

If in saying this you assume that you have not yet accustomed yourself to the idea, then we can agree that you never could reach this state of mind. *By accustoming yourself to the idea* though, *you have learned to think of,* to grasp to,

a few drops of semen and blood that belong to other people—to your father and mother—as being "me," yourself, even though there's no such thing as your "self" at all. This is all done through the power of getting used to something. Why then do you say that you cannot think of the bodies of other people as being yourself as well? You should learn to think this way; if you get used to the idea, then you will be able to reach that state of mind where you think of their bodies as your own. Thus it is that we should contemplate carefully upon the great benefits that come from cherishing other people, and strive as best we can to remove their sufferings.

विर्मुर्वायक्षेत्रात्वर्षात्वर्षात्वर्षात्वेत्रात्वरम् स्वर्षात्वर्षेत्रात्वर्षेत्वर्षात्वर्षेत्वर्षात्वर्षेत्

Incidentally the part of the verse that reads, "Even though there's no such thing at all" is not found in some translations of the root text.

रिश्वर में अर्था तर्गाय प्राचेत्र प

Thus it is that we should first resolve to stop our habit of cherishing our *own* body, and come to decide that the bodies of others can be the object of this cherishing too; if we get used to thinking this way, there's isn't any difficulty to it, for it's just like the way that we have already gotten accustomed to cherishing ourselves.

Contemplation Eighteen How far can we go?

डि.सेर.जयात्त्रःश्याश्चाश्चा ।री.चलुर.जर्या.चयु.लर्यःत्य्या.धे। ।री.चलुर.जर्या.चयु.लर्यःत्यया.धे। ।शुक्षःग्री.लर्यःत्यया.ल्यं

When you think of your hands and such You do consider them all a part Of your body; so why then don't you Consider every creature that has A body as being one of the parts Of the body of all living kind?

स्रम्याद्यस्य प्रस्ति प्रत्यात् प्रस्ति प्रस्

One may make yet another objection: "Living beings are infinite; I could never manage to think of them all as being myself." Your own hands and such are separate things; yet when you think of them you do consider them all something you must care for, since they are all a part of your body. The different kinds of living beings, even though they are many, are still something that you can get used to cherishing; and if you do so, then you will come to cherish them as you do your own body. So why then don't you consider every creature that has a body as being one of the parts of the body of all living kind? The right thing to do would be to consider them this way.

Contemplation Nineteen
On the definition of "myself"

विभिन्नः यद्याः स्त्रीः स्त्री विभिन्नः स्त्रीयः स्त्रीः स्त

Because you've gotten used to it, You're able to think "it's mine" of this body, Which actually has no self. Why do you say then you could never Learn to think of others as "me" If you got used to it?

Contemplation Twenty No many words are needed

विष्टिमान्तेन निर्मानिस्ति । स्थिति ।

The total amount of happiness
That exists in the world has come from
Wanting to make others happy.
The total amount of suffering
That exists in the world has come from
Wanting to make yourself happy.

What need is there for many words? The children of the world Work for their own sake; The able Buddhas do their labor For the sake of others—
Come and see the difference.

Contemplation Twenty-One Bodhisattva talking to yourself

१८२:वे:पगुर:वुरु:पर्माके:सेदा १८२:पत्रेक्षःपरमामीर्थःसःह्रेर:हेटः। |यद्गे:बे:बर्बूद:बुश:बद्या:वःर्बूद। |यद्गे:बद्गे:बद्या:बे:सूया:बर्ब्य:वा।

This one should receive the honor, But not us; we should never get The things he always does. He should bask in praise, and we Should be belittled; he should have All happiness, and we the suffering.

|यद्याः वै:य्यशः इस्रशः होदः यः दृदः ।
|यदेः वै:यदेः यः केदः दुः यावस्य।
|यदेः वै:यदेयाः हेवः यः केः दृदः ।
|यद्याः दस्य स्थाः विद्याः दस्य स्थाः

We should be the ones who have
To do all of the work, and he
Should sit in perfect leisure.
Throughout the world he should become
A great man; we should stay inferior,
And known as knowing nothing.

|ॲ॔॔॔॔रफ्त्रसेन्द्रस्यः के लियाः व्या |यद्याः ग्युत्रः ॲ॔त्रफ्त्रस्य स्वरः सः केत्। |यद्याः ग्युत्रः ॲंत्रस्य देः ॲंत्रः केटः । |यदः यसः यद्याः सर्क्याः देः स्थरः स्वरं ।

What's the use of having No good qualities? We'll all strive That they have them all. There do exist those compared to whom This one is inferior; there are also those Compared to whom we're highest.

वित्यान्त्रिस्यास्त्रित्याग्तीसः स्वीयः स्वीयः

The state of our morality, views, Troubles, and the rest is forced By affliction, and not by choice.

When the bodhisattva named "John" engages in the practice of exchanging himself and others, he should think to himself, "This one, John, should receive the honor of others." Then he should think of other living beings as himself and say, "But since we are inferior in the good qualities that we possess, it should not be us who gets the honor." We should furthermore never get the things that make us happy in that way that he, this John, always does. He, the bodhisattva John, should bask in praise, and we, all of us sentient beings, should be belittled.

He should have all happiness, and we should have the suffering. We should be the ones who have to do all of the work—such as carrying heavy loads and the like—and he, John, should sit around in perfect leisure. Throughout the world he, this bodhisattva, should become known as a man who is great in his morality, his learning, and all the rest, whereas we should stay inferior, and known as knowing nothing.

१२.लट. मुंद्र-ग्रीश.ययर.तश्यांत्र. प्रयान्यांत्रयाः स्त्रेयः त्यायर्याः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स् स्त्रेयः स

वन्यम्यम्यून्यरम्

Now you have taken great pains to gain good qualities; what's the use of this condition where we, all of us living beings, have no such good qualities? We'll all strive in order that they, all living beings, have all of these very same qualities.

The fact that he is so superior, and we so inferior, is all established by comparison. Remember then that there do exist those people of exceeding good qualities compared to whom this bodhisattva is himself inferior. There are also those miserable beings compared to whom we are the highest. Therefore there is no need for us, for us living beings, to feel discouraged; with effort, we can achieve enlightenment. Do the practice this way, thinking of others as being yourself.

Suppose someone comes and says, "You are inferior to this bodhisattva John, due to the fact that your morality and your worldviews are degenerate, and the like." But the degenerate *state of our morality* and world*views*, and the fact that we have *troubles* making a living *and* all *the rest*—all this degeneration of both the way we think and the way we act—*is forced* upon us by temporary factors, *by* mental *affliction*. The problem here is *not* that we have *chosen* to be this way, not that we want to be this way. The relevant part of the root text here can also be read as "are rather forced by the temporary factor of affliction."

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Three: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Fifth of Six Parts

The following contemplations are based on the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattvacharyavatara; Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa)* of the Buddhist master Shantideva (circa 700 AD), and the commentary upon it by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*. The relevant sections are found at folios 30B-31A and 114A-117A, respectively, in the ACIP electronic editions TD3871 and S5436.

The content of the contemplations is translated directly from the root text and commentary; the names of the contemplations are not a part of the original text, but are based on the divisions of Gyaltsab Je's commentary and have been supplied for reference.

Contemplations on the Perfection of Wisdom

Contemplation One We need to see emptiness

The fourth principal section, how to train oneself in wisdom, the essence of special insight, has two parts of its own: an explanation of the body of the [ninth] chapter, and an explanation of the chapter's name.

१८८. तुर्थान्य स्त्रीट्रातात्त्र त्यात्र त्यात्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्

The first part has three sections of its own: a demonstration that those who wish to reach freedom must develop the wisdom which realizes thusness; the way to develop wisdom which realizes thusness; and advice that one should, therefore, make great efforts to develop this wisdom.

। १८ में या महिषा हु वि में ४ १८ । यम यम मी में ४ में ।

The first of these sections comes in two steps: the general point, and secondary points.

त्रा श्री चित्र क्षेत्र क्षेत

Here is the first section. One might have the following thought:

It's true that, in order to help put an end to the entire amount of suffering that exists in other people, we must achieve matchless enlightenment. And for this reason we must realize thusness. How could it be though that, in order to put an end only to that suffering which exists in ourselves, we would also have to realize thusness?

Remember though that our Protector, Nagarjuna, has said the following:

As long as a person possesses the habit Of grasping to the heaps as true, For just this long will they also grasp To the thought that these are "me."

He is saying here that, as long as we still possess the habit of grasping to our heaps as true, then for just this long will we find ourselves unable to reverse our "view of destruction": our tendency to view these heaps as being "me" or "mine," in a way where they exist through some nature of their own. To do this though, one must finish off one's tendency to grasp to the heaps as existing in truth.

Now there is no one at all who would claim that enemy destroyers of the Listener or Self-Made Buddha types have not yet eliminated their "view of destruction" in its entirety. As such, the Protector is here stating the position that realized beings of these two types as well have realized that the heaps have no true existence. And in keeping with this position, the present master [Shantideva] also holds the position that—even just to put an end to the sufferings of the cycle of life—one must still realize thusness. This point will also be discussed further on.

Contemplation Two What goes first for wisdom

।প্রব:একা:৫ই:২কা:ছমম:ড২:র)। ।প্রব:একা:৫ই:২কা:ছমম:ড২:র)।

All of these branches then were stated By the Able Ones to be Something for the purpose of wisdom.

There are two different ways of explaining the phrase "these branches" in the root text at this point. Sometimes it is explained as referring only to the practice of quietude which was covered in the eighth chapter. But it is also explained as referring to all of the remaining perfections, of giving and the rest. If we restrict ourselves only to the relation between the present and the preceding chapters, then the former method of explaining the phrase is also admittedly appropriate. Here though it would be better if we commented upon the phrase in its latter sense.

व्यान्यक्षान्त्रीक्षान्त्राक्ष्यात्वेषाः व्यान्त्राक्ष्याः विष्यान्त्राक्ष्याः विष्यान्त्राक्ष्याः विष्यान्त्र चत्रः चिरः कृतः क्षेत्रः कृतः क्षेत्रः कृतः कृतः व्यान्त्रः कृतः च्याः विष्यः च्याः विष्यः व्यान्त्रः कृतः कृतः विष्यः व्यान्त्रः विष्यः व्यान्त्रः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष

The full phrase here in the root text says that the branches of giving and the rest were stated to be for the purpose of wisdom. There are a number of questions raised by this statement which bear examination.

It is not the case that, to realize thusness through the processes of learning and contemplation, giving and the rest must come before. Although it is true that one must accumulate great merit in order to realize emptiness, it is not necessary that the kinds of bodhisattva activities described here come first. We could for example mention the two methods of coming to an understanding of emptiness, through learning and contemplation, as described by Master Shantarakshita.

मर्ब्द्र अन्ता स्वीत्र प्रविद्या स्वीत्र स्वी

Neither is it the case that, in order to have an experience of emptiness that would lead to a deep conviction in it, these other perfections would have to come first. If this were so, then they would also have to come first in order for a person to have a deep experience of something like the realization of impermanence—the two causes would be just the same.

क्षेत्रकृत्रहेवाश्वर्यक्षेत्रश्चर प्रवित्यायिक्षेत्रक्षे प्राप्त होत्त्र क्षेत्रक्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्

It is not even the case that these have to come before one is able to develop the kind of special insight which realizes emptiness and which comes through the process of meditation. This is true because, as we have just mentioned, persons of the Listener and Self-Made Buddha types are able to realize thusness without the activities of a bodhisattva having come before.

रय-दे-देया-यी-द्र्-देयाश्वर-श्र-श्रेश्क्र-श्र-श्रेश्च्या-श्र-श्रेश्च्या-श्र-श्रेश्च्या-श्र-श्रेश-श्र्या-श्रेश-श्र्या-श्रेश-श्रेया-श्रेय-श्रेया-श्रेय-श्रेया-श्रेय-श्रेय-श्रेय-श्रेय-श्रेया-श्रेय-श्

One may assert the following:

The wisdom wherein one realizes emptiness provides the material cause for the dharma body, and the perfections which relate to "method"—that is, giving and the like—provide the contributing factors for this body. Therefore giving and the others must make their contribution in order for wisdom to help us to attain this goal. And this is why the text says that "they were stated to be for the purpose of wisdom."

If this were true though, we could just as well reverse the statement, and say that "wisdom was stated to be for the purpose of them."

द्वार् लोब सबालब लचा उर् रचा लेब स्चीच चित्र स्वार लोब स्वार स्वा

The real point then is as follows. Without the wisdom which realizes emptiness, you could never finish off the seeds of any one of the two obstacles; and it is not necessary that one be enriched with limitless masses of merit in order to finish off just the seed of those obstacles which relate to the mental afflictions. In order to finish off the seed of those obstacles which relate to seeing all existing objects, however, it is necessary to be enriched in this way. And since our work here is concerned primarily with finishing off the obstacles to seeing all objects, then we can say that "these branches were stated to be something for the purpose of wisdom."

Contemplation Three
The Two Realities

।ग्रुबःह्वः ५८ द्वः देवः ५ सः स्थे। ।यदेः वेः यदेवः यः यावेशः सुः यदेत्।

We accept the truths as being two: The one which is deceptive, And the one which is the ultimate.

त्यः तक्ष्यः त्यं त्यां त्यः तक्ष्यः त्यां विष्णः विष्णः

Here is the first of the three. The following quotation from the *Sutra* on the *Meeting* of the Father and the Son appears in the Compendium of the Trainings:

Thus do Those Who Have Gone That Way fathom the deceptive and the ultimate: and so, knowable objects are either deceptive truth or ultimate truth, and nothing else. So too do the Conquerors see them perfectly as emptiness; know them so, perfectly, and bring them to reality with excellence; and this is why they we call them the All-Knowing.

The fact that all knowable objects are the thing which is divided into two truths is conveyed by the words "...and so, knowable objects." The phrase "and nothing else" expresses the fact that there are exactly two truths, no more and no less. The point too is that, because Those Who Have Gone That Way fathom both the truths completely, they are all-knowing. As such, the explanation that it is the intent of the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* to say that ultimate truth is not a knowable object, or that it cannot be realized by any state of mind at all, is an explanation which is completely wrong.

Contemplation Four Things are Empty and Things Still Work

|याक्षे:या:धर:वे:यर्देर:यवे:द्येश| |यत्रशःसुवे:देव:दुःश:द्युद:सुर।

Through examples accepted By no less than both; and because For the goals they don't examine.

त्र-त्यीर-र्-बु-भ्र।
त्य-त्यीर-र्-बु-भ्र।
त्य-त्यीर-र्-बु-भ्र।
त्य-त्यीर-र-वु-भ्र-भ्र-व्य-भ्र-व्य-भ्र-व्य-भ्र-व्य-भ्र-विभ्र-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प्-वु-भ्र-प-कु-भ्र-प-

Here is the first. One might make the following claim:

It's incorrect to say that the logic used by high practitioners who have realized that things have no nature of their own disproves the school of those known as "common persons." This is because there exists no proof that things have no such nature. And if

nothing has any nature of its own, then it's completely meaningless for a person to train themselves in giving and the rest in order to reach the final goal of Buddhahood.

यायहेब्रक्ष्याम्याविष्ठात्रेत्यात्राधित्यात्राधित्यात्राधित्याः व्या न्युः स्याप्त्राधित्यात्राधिकः याः याविष्ठात्रेत्यात्राधित्यात्रेत्यात्राधिकः व्याप्तिः विष्ठात्यात्रेत्रः व्याप्तिः विष्ठात्यात्रेत्रः विष्ठात्रः विष्रात्रः विष्ठात्रः विष्ठात्

Isn't it though <u>not</u> true that there exists no proof that things have no nature of their own? Because can't we prove that things have no nature by utilizing the examples—that is, *through* the *examples*—of a dream, an illusion, or anything of the like; which are *accepted*, agreed upon by convention, as being false, *by no less than both* those of the Middle-Way School and those who assert that things which function exist truly?

द्रेष्यात्रपुरि स्रो विकासी विकास के स्वास के स

And isn't it <u>not</u> the case that, if something has no nature of its own, then training oneself in giving and the rest is meaningless? *Because* isn't it rather true that a person engages in giving and the rest *for* achieving *the goals* of Buddhahood and such, but all along with thoughts imbued by that wisdom which realizes that these practices are false, like an illusion? One thus engages in practices which do not exist in truth, but does so *without* actively considering or *examining* their real nature. The fact is that, unless they are imbued with the wisdom which realizes that things have no nature of their own, the remaining perfections don't even deserve to be called "perfections." And it is only when they are guided by the eyes of wisdom that the other five perfections are able to make the journey to the city of all-knowingness.

Contemplation Five What it Means When We Say Things Work

विष्टियाः हेत्रः साध्येशः निर्देशः स्रार्थेदः विष्टः। ।ध्यदः नयाः केनः नुत्रदः हेयाः चेनः ग्री। ।क्षुः साः सुः नुत्रः स्रोतः स्वर्धः विष्टेनः। ।क्ष्यः वर्षेत्रः सान्दः विष्टियाः हेतः सेन्।

Those in the world can see
Things that function;
They also imagine them pure,
But not as being just like
An illusion; thus practitioners
And those in the world do argue.

स्र त्यीर हुं श्री । वि. त्र त्यात है । वि. त्र त्यात है । वि. त्

Someone may assert the following:

You do accept, as well as we do, the fact that we can see with our own eyes objects such as a fire which has the ability to perform a function such as cooking food or the like. Since this is what it means for us when we say that something exists in truth, you and we have nothing to argue about. If on the other hand you refuse that these objects exist, then you are disproved in a great many ways—including the way you would then contradict what we can all see with our own eyes.

यन्नीत्राक्षेत्रयां स्टान्तिक्ष्यां स्टान्तिक्ष्यां स्टान्तिक्ष्यां स्टान्तिक्ष्यां स्टान्तिक्ष्यां स्टान्तिक् स्टान्तिक्षां क्ष्रस्रायाः यन्ते क्षात्रक्षेत्रयात्रायाः यस्ति स्टान्ति स्टान्ति । प्रयुः स्टान्तिक्षाः स्टान् स्टान्तिक्षाः क्ष्रस्रायाः यन्ते क्षात्रक्षेत्रयात्रायाः स्टान्तिक्षः स्टान्तिक्षः स्टान्तिक्षाः स्टान्तिक्षः स्टान्तिकः स्

लिट प्रमास्त्रिया स्वाप्त स्व स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

Your argument though is one based on the idea that the two truths cannot coexist: you think that if functional things have no nature of their own, then they must not exist at all; and that if these things do exist, then they must exist with some nature of their own. It is true that those in the world who are of the Middle-Way school and those who are members of the group which asserts that functional things must exist truly can both see things that function, such as fire, with valid perception, and both therefore accept the existence of these objects. Those who believe that functional things exist truly though *imagine* or believe that these things exist purely; they cannot grasp the fact that they are void of any true existence, that they are just like an illusion. Those of the Middle-Way school though do grasp this fact, and thus there really is an argument here between the "high practitioners," those of the Middle-Way school, and those in the world who assert that things which perform a function exist truly. By the way, you can also interpret the first reference to "those in the world" here as applying only to those who assert that functional things exist truly.

> Contemplation Six Empty Virtues Do Work Perfectly

म्भुःदर्द्वःमुयःयश्चःयश्च्रंदःद्वश्चा मुभुःदर्द्वःमुयःयश्चरःयःहःयव्वद्वा

The merit that comes from victorious Buddhas is like an illusion; Just as things that existed.

यंत्राचर्र्यत्रम्भावत्तुद्वायः वर्द्द्वायाः वेद्वायः विद्वायः विद

Here is the second point, [a refutation of the idea that you could never accumulate the collections needed to produce the body and mind of a Buddha]. One might continue with yet another objection:

Isn't it contradictory to say that things have no nature of their own, and at the same time to state that a person can gain meritorious karma from acts such as making offerings to the victorious Buddhas?

And yet it is no contradiction. It is in fact true that one obtains *merit*orious karma *from* making offerings to *victorious Buddhas* who are themselves void of any true existence—who are just *like an illusion*. Think of the way in which you believe that meritorious karma comes relative to victorious Buddhas that you think to exist as *things* which perform a function and *which exist* in truth. This kind of karma actually does come from functional things *just as* you thought, in exact accord with what they are, regardless of whether they are true or not in the sense you take it.

Contemplation Seven
The Difference between Good and Bad is Empty and Perfectly True

|સું'અઉ:સુંચાનુ'નચ5:સેંગ્રચાયા |સું'અઉ:સેઅઅ:55:સ્ગ્રેન્ય |સું'અઉ:સેઅઅ:55:સ્ગ્રેન્ય |સું'અઉ:સેઅઅ:55:સ્ગ્રેન્ય |સું'અઉ:સેઅઅ:55:સેંગ્રન્ય

When you kill an illusory being Or such there's no bad deed, Since it has no mind; Merit and bad deeds do occur Towards those who possess a mind Which is an illusory one.

শ্বিদ্যাম মিলাম কুমম যে কুম মিন শ্বিদ্যা শ্বিদ্যাম মিলাম কি বিদ্যাম কি আ Since incantations and so on Have no such power, no mind Happens with an illusion.

|मूर्-र्क्रवाशक्तित्रः यश्यानुदः त्रःधी |क्रुक्रावादेवा वीशक्तित्रात्रः क्रित्। |मूक्त्रः वादेवा वीशक्तित्रः त्रुश्या |मूक्त्रः वादेवा वीशक्तित्रः स्था

Even illusions which occur Through a variety of conditions Can be various themselves. It is never the case At all that a single Condition can create them all.

याब्रेट्र-ताःचिश्वःतशः क्रीयोःताःवचिंद्रः यः त्रावेद्रः व्यात्त्रवेद्रः यः त्रावेशः याक्ष्रः याक्षः याक्ष्रः याक्ष्रः याक्ष्रः याक्षः य

Here is the fourth point, [a refutation of the idea that there would be no distinction between good deeds and bad deeds]. One might return with yet another objection:

When you say that living beings have no nature of their own, and that they are like an illusion, don't you contradict the explanation that a person who kills such a being collects a bad deed?

Remember though that, even if you attempt to *kill or* do any *such* act towards *a being* who turns out to be only an *illusion* created by some magic, you still strike with your weapon or whatever desiring to kill them, and conceiving of them as an actual human being. And then you still collect the bad deed of undertaking to kill someone, even though—*since it had no mind*—*there is no bad deed* in the sense of the actual event. Suppose on the other hand that you act *towards* a human or the like, *those* beings *who* do *possess a mind which is* itself *an illusory one*. It <u>is</u> then the case that there *do occur merit*orious deeds when you do something to help them, and *bad deeds* when you do something to hurt them.

One may continue with this question:

If they are all exactly the same in having no nature of their own, then why is it that some of these objects occur with a mind, and others occur without a mind?

The different things used to create an illusion, whether they be magic powders or special *incantations*, *have no power* to create an illusion which also possesses a mind. *Therefore* a *mind* can *never happen with a* horse or cow which is a magical *illusion*. *Even* magical *illusions* though can *occur in a* great *variety* of forms, coming as they do *through a* great *variety of conditions*. The word "even," by the way, is meant to indicate that this fact is not restricted to actual living beings. The point is that there is *never* any *case* at *all* where *a single condition can* create *all* the different kinds of results: for a variety of results to occur, there must occur a variety of causes.

Contemplation Eight
The Difference between Freedom and the Circle of Suffering
is Empty and Perfectly True

विट्ट क्रियं क्रेंट्र प्रश्ना श्री त्र क्रियं क्रि

Suppose the ultimate were nirvana, And this of the deceptive cycle Of suffering; in this case then Buddhas too would be circling. What would the use be then Of bodhisattva activities?

|भीयःह्त्यःधःलटःशुःववीटःट्रः। |भीयःह्यःधःकीयःवरःशुःववीरःशी। |भीयःवरःर्ज्याःवरःशुःववीरःशी।

Unless you cut off the stream Of conditions, not even illusions Can ever come to a stop. If one cut off the stream Of conditions, it couldn't happen, Even deceptively.

चल्निक् च्रीःश्राद्ध स्वर्धः स्वरः क्षात्र व्याः व त्याः व्याः व त्याः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्याः

Here is the fifth point, [a refutation of the idea that there would be no fixed distinction between the cycle of suffering and transcending this cycle]. Those of the Middle-Way school say that there is no birth or aging or anything of the like which exists in an ultimate way. They also assert that the fact that all objects are void of any nature of their own is necessarily a natural state of nirvana. They assert finally that the cycle of suffering consists of the events of birth, aging, and the rest, all occurring through the power of karma and mental afflictions. To these points the Sutrists make the following objection:

Suppose that if something is a kind of nirvana which exists ultimately, or which comes by nature, then it is necessarily a kind of nirvana. Suppose further that the fact that the cycle of suffering is void of any nature of its own is itself this ultimate kind of nirvana; but that a person circles around in this circle of suffering, in a stream of births and deaths, all as a kind of deceptive reality. If this were true then there would have to exist a thing which was, simultaneously, both the cycle of suffering and nirvana. And in this case then Buddhas themselves would too be circling around in the cycle of suffering. What then would the use be for bodhisattvas to engage in the activities of a bodhisattva, in order to achieve the state of Buddhahood? It would be totally pointless.

And yet there is no such problem, for there exists a distinction between the natural state of nirvana and that nirvana which consists of a state of purity which occurs through circumstances.

तक्रद्रः क्रियः क्रीश्राः वित्तः त्रायः त्रियः त्रायः क्रियः त्रायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः वित्रः व्यायः व्यः व्यायः व्यः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः

रचीर.र्। रुचा.त.ज.श्चाश.तदु.भुष.४शश.चैष.१९.कर.त.ष.उष्ट्र.च.लट.भी४.ह्च.८.लट.शु. लट.भुष.४शश.चैष.१८.भाकर.व.उष्ट्र.चर.श.चर.श्ची.शवट.र्ज्या.तर.शु.वचीर.ची। श.

The nirvana which comes by nature is not something which depends upon one's practice of the path; this is because it is, rather, the very nature of everything, whether they involve any practice of the path or not. The nirvana which occurs through circumstances, and consists of becoming free of all impurity, must be achieved through cutting off the process through which, in a stream of births and deaths, a person circles around in the cycle of suffering. And even though these things may have no nature of their own, it is still the case that, unless you cut off the stream of conditions that bring them about, you would find it impossible not only to end the cycle of suffering, but ever to bring even simple illusions to a stop. On the other hand, it would be impossible for the cycle of suffering to happen even in a deceptive way, if one were able to cut off the stream of the conditions which bring it about: conditions such as ignorance and the like.

मूंयालट तर्र्नायार्थ। १इम्म्यी द्वीयार्थन्य के विषया है स्वर्थन के स्वर्य के स्वर्थन के स्वर्थन के स्वर्य के स्वर्य के स

Incidentally, in the argument that came before, one should answer in terms of distinguishing between an ultimate nirvana and nirvana, but not with any other reply. This is because the opponent in this case also accepts the principle that Buddhas do not circle around in the cycle of suffering, whereas living beings do.

Contemplation Nine How Do We See the Illusion?

|याक्षेत्रायाक्षेत्रात्रावहेत्याची प्रवासायायाक्षेत्रायाहित्यात् हेत्। विक्षेत्रायाक्ष

Here is the second part: a more particular refutation, of the position of the Mind-Only School. Here we will proceed in two steps: stating their position, and then refuting it.

Here is the first of the two. One may begin with the following objection:

If there is no object at all that has any nature of its own, then the mistaken state of mind which perceives the illusion cannot exist either. If this were so, then there would be no state of mind that could ever take the illusion as its object. And if this were the case, then the illusion itself could not exist either.

This argument too is another version of the idea that, if something exists, it must have a nature of its own.

याक्षेत्रायात्याः स्ट्रिन्यास्य स्ट्रिन्यायान्य रिवे त्यत्रान्याया यावे ।

The second of the two has two sections of its own: a demonstration that the same arguments apply to them instead, and then a refutation of their attempted rebuttal in response to this demonstration.

|म्नदःकें:बिंद्रःयःक्षुःसःकेद। |म्नदःकें:विंद्रःयःकें:कें:बेमाःद्रभेमाया |म्नदःकें:दें:केंद्रःद्रःमालकःय्येद। |क्ष्मःसःदें:कें:बेस्स्यःकेदःयोदा

You would say there'd also Be no illusion itself; On what then would it focus? Suppose those same exist In another way; the forms Consist of the mind itself.

र्त्याचार्याः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः

Here is the first. You of the Mind-Only School would say that, if things grasped by the mind both appear to be outer objects and also actually exist the way that they appear, then there must exist outer objects. In such a case then there would be nothing that was like an illusion, and no state of mind that could focus on it either. You would also say though that, if things that appeared to be outer objects did not actually exist the way that they appear, then they would have no nature; and then, according to you yourselves, these objects could not exist at all. In this case then there would also be no illusion itself—that is, no instance of the thing being grasped by mind appearing to be an outer object. If this were the case, then what would it be that the mind was grasping to—what would it be focusing upon? Because after all, there would also be no state of mind at all that was grasping to visible objects, sounds, and so on.

मानेश्रायात्यात्वेर्तायाचेर्

The second point has two steps of its own: stating the position of the Mind-Only School, and then refuting this position.

न्दर्भित्री विक्रिंत्रे म्यानिक्षिर्भे व्यानिक्ष्य म्यानिक्ष्य म्यानिक्

Here is the first. The opponent may respond as follows:

Suppose it were true that the things which appear as outer objects do not exist at all as *those same* objects, as what they appear to be. Nonetheless they do *exist in another way;* that is, *the forms* that they take, as visible objects and such, *consist of* the very substance of *the mind itself.*

|यादःकें:बोब्यवायादःयोबःबार्चरः। |देःकें:यादःवियाःयादःयोबःबार्चरः।

Suppose the mind itself Had the illusory; what Would then see such?

यक्षित्रायाच्या यक्षित्रास्त्री विद्यायाचाराचीत्राग्राटास्त्रास्त्रीत्याच्याच्यात्रेत्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्र विद्याप्त्राच्या यक्षित्रास्त्रीच्याचाराचीत्राग्राटास्त्रास्त्रेत्राच्याच्याच्या

The second step too has two parts: asking the opponent how the realization that there are no two things could itself ever be perceived by any state of mind; and refuting the self-perception of the mind that they propose in answer to our question.

त्र त्यीर ह्या यार यो क्षेत्र श्रेश्य श्रेत स्थित स्थ

Here is the first. Suppose it were the case that the mind itself was both having the appearance that there was this illusory object, but that there was in fact no outer object. In such a case, then the mind would lack any object. What valid perception then would there be to see just such a state of mind? There could never exist then any state of mind that saw it.

Contemplation Ten How Buddhas Take Offerings

|अर्स्ट्रस्यायाक्षेत्रः द्वीयायस्य |वीटः स्वेरः यव्यव्याव्यः स्वेत्रः य्याः य्याः द्वीयः । |अर्स्ट्रस्यः यव्यव्याव्यः स्वेत्रः य्याः य्याः ।

"How can we gain a result
From making offerings to those
Who possess no state of mind?"
It is because of the explanation
That it's the same with those who are present
And those passed to nirvana.

योश्रेश्रातात्री अव.ह्यूश्राताताञ्चयाच.५.श्रात्राचीश्राता.मूयातवु.श्रुश्रश्राश्रोदाताताश्रकूट्राता

त्रमान्य क्षेत्र प्रकेत् प्रकारणी त्रव्यमानु स्वर्गाय प्रक्षेत्र प्रकेत् प्रकेत् प्रकेत् प्रकेत् प्रकेत् प्रकेत

Here is the second point, [which is refuting attempted argument about the demonstration of how it is correct to say that, even though the Buddhas have no conceptualization, they can still fulfill all the hopes of their disciples].

Now some Listeners have made the following argument:

Buddhas *possess no* conceptual *state of mind*, and so neither do they have that conceptual state of mind in which one accepts an offering. *How* then *can we gain a* meritorious *result from making offerings to them?*

सर्-तम्यायवर-तद्-द्वीर-र्। क्री-भी-यरिट-त्य-सक्र्-ता-योक्ष्म-पश्ट-प्रमम्भान्त्र्य-सम्बद्ध-प्रम्य-स्य-प्रम्य-प्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प

Isn't it though the case that, even though Buddhas have no conceptual state of mind, we can still obtain merit through making offerings to them? You may ask our reason for saying so; it is because of the explanation, found in the <u>Sutra on the Lion's Roar of Loving One</u>, that whether a person makes an offering to a Buddha who is actually present, or else makes the same offering to their tomb after they have passed into nirvana, the merit from the act is exactly the same.

तर.शुरी व्रिश्च पश्चिर्या । श्रिश्च श्वित्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्याप्त व्याप्त । व्याप्त व्यापत व्याप्त व्याप्त व्यापत व्या

The Book on the Benefits of Circling an Offering Shrine states as well that:

There is no difference at all in the merit Of those who with equal thoughts of faith Make offerings to One still living, or to The tomb of One passed to nirvana.

|इ.क्रंट्रत्यकायेट्रक्ष्ट्रा |रेत्र्ट्र्य्यकायेट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रका |रेत्र्ट्रक्ष्ट्रकाययेकालेट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रका |भीषाक्ष्ट्रकायकायेट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रका |भीषाक्ष्ट्रकायकायेट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष्ट्रक्ष

It doesn't matter whether
It's deceptively or ultimate;
The result is in the Word.
It's the same, for example,
As the result you'd obtain
From that to a Buddha in truth.

द्राह्म स्वर्णात्र स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्र स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्वर्णात्य स्

It is stated *in the Word* of the Buddha that *it doesn't matter whether* an act such as making offerings to a Buddha exists *deceptively or* even in an *ultimate* way: *the result* of making the offering still occurs. *It's* just *the same, for example, as the result* that you yourselves believe *would* be *obtained from* making *that* same offering *to a Buddha* who existed *in truth*. The point here is that, suppose we leave for a moment any examination into the real nature of things. What we are trying to say is that, regardless of whether the thing is true or false, we can be satisfied simply with the fact that we obtain a result which corresponds exactly to the object involved.

Contemplation Eleven
On the Need to See Emptiness

| मेर्निस्स्स्य स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्र स्

"One achieves liberation by Seeing the truth; what's though The point of seeing emptiness?" It's because scripture states that, Without this path, There is never enlightenment.

The second part—a proof that, even if all you hope to do is to reach freedom, you must still realize emptiness—will proceed in two steps: the opponent's argument and our own response.

Here is the first. Some people from the Listener group make the following claim:

One achieves liberation—the goal of becoming an enemy destroyer—by habituating oneself to the experience of seeing, directly, the sixteen aspects of the four truths: impermanence and the rest. What though would be the point of seeing that all existing objects were empty of any true existence? There would be no purpose served; it could never be right.

त्रक्षः क्ष्रं त्राचारे व्यास्य स्त्रुवा स्वर्धा विद्या विद्या विद्या विद्या स्तर्धे विद्या स्वर्धे विद्या स्वर्थे विद्या स्वर्धे विद्या स्वर्धे स्वर्धे स्वर्य स्वर्धे स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्थे स्वर्य स्व

There are other Listener groups who say that you don't even need to realize emptiness in order to achieve enlightenment. And not only that; they don't even accept the term "lack of any self-nature to things." Neither do they accept that the sutras of the greater way are the word of the Buddha. These kinds of people are the primary opponent in the present case. We are by the way though also refuting here those people who do consider the sutras of the greater way to be authentic, but who assert that one need not realize the lack of a self-nature to things in order to achieve the goal of becoming an enemy destroyer. The root text at this point is put here with the idea of refuting these parties, and then expressing the position that it is only wisdom which can be proven as the path to liberate oneself from a suffering existence.

The second step has three parts of its own: proving that it is only the wisdom that realizes emptiness which is the path that can liberate one from a suffering existence; proving that it is also only this wisdom which is the path for reaching the nirvana where one no longer remains in the two extremes; and advice to those who seek to attain liberation, that it is therefore very right that they should meditate upon emptiness. The first of these has two sections: proving this fact by using scripture to prove that the scriptures of the greater way are the word of the Buddha; and proving the fact through logic.

त्रः यश्चित्रः तदः श्चेरः र्वे। अवः रटः र्वाः वर्षे अः यदः व्यवः वर्षे वर्षे

Here is the first. It is true though that one must definitely realize emptiness even to achieve the goal of becoming an enemy destroyer. This is *because* of the fact that *scriptural* authority, in the form of the body of sutras devoted to the perfection of wisdom, *states that—without* habituating oneself to *this path*, where you realize emptiness—one can *never* reach the three "states of *enlightenment*."

The *Great Commentary* to the *Guide* quotes the *Sutra of the Mother* as saying that "those who still conceive of [self-existent] things" can never reach freedom; and that reaching total enlightenment—as well as everything from the level of a stream-enterer up to the state of a self-made "Buddha"—all depends upon this one thing: the perfection of wisdom. The intent of the root text at this point is to reflect these statements; it is not meant to indicate that this perfection is needed only for the matchless state of enlightenment.

Contemplation Twelve Destroying Mental Afflictions Forever

वित्र सेंद्र स्मृद्र स्मायसम्बद्धाः वर्षे । १२ सम्बद्धाः हुः देर त्युर सें। १९ वर्षे द्यार सेंद्र स्मायसम्बद्धाः स्मृद्धाः स्मृद्धाः स्मृद्धाः स्मृद्धाः स

વિશ્વામી ત્યાના માર્કેટ વા છેતા

If one were liberated by eliminating Afflictions, then he would become this In the next moment after. They lack any mental afflictions; We can see though they still Possess the karmic power.

यविश्वास्त्री न्यान्त्रिं स्वास्त्राच्छ्यायाः वित्यान्त्रिं स्वास्त्राच्छ्यायाः वित्यान्त्रिं स्वास्त्राच्छ्यायाः वित्यान्त्रिं स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्छा स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच्याच स्वास्त्राच स्वास्त्

Here is the second point, [which is the absurd consequence that, if one could reach the state of an enemy destroyer simply through the path of the sixteen aspects of impermanence and the rest, then one would have to reach it through nothing more than eliminating mental afflictions in their manifest form]. Someone may make the following claim:

It's not necessary that a person realize emptiness in order to achieve the state of an enemy destroyer. It is rather through habituating oneself to the path by which one realizes the sixteen aspects of impermanence and so on that a person finally eliminates all their mental afflictions, and thus attains liberation: the goal of becoming an enemy destroyer.

भ्रम्भ्रद्धाः अर्द्धाः अर्द्धाः विष्णाः स्वाः स्वाः विष्णाः स्वाः स्व

You must be saying *then* that a person who eliminates, temporarily, nothing more than the manifest form of mental afflictions *becomes—in the next moment after* they eliminate such manifest forms—*this* enemy destroyer. Why so? Because, according to you, a person is able to finish off their mental afflictions, and thus attain the state of an enemy destroyer, by habituating themselves to nothing more than the path of the sixteen aspects of impermanence and the rest. The logic is completely the same, in every way.

१२.५र्ट्र.श्र.थंश्वात्तात्त्र.ध्र्य.श्रट्य.श्य.श्रट्य.श्य.श्रट्य.श्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्य.श्रट्

And yet you cannot accept that this could be the case. Consider the kinds of people who, temporarily, *lack any* manifest *mental afflictions*: those who have eliminated no more than the manifest forms. We can see though that they still possess the karmic power that would cause them to cross the border into their next rebirth.

विश्व स्थान्य स्थान्य

The lines in the root text that say "If one were liberated by eliminating afflictions..." are a statement of the opponent's position; their purpose is similar to the lines before that went, "One achieves liberation by seeing the truth." The former lines should be explained as saying, "If a person eliminated their mental afflictions, and thereby attained liberation, by means of meditating upon the path of the sixteen aspects of impermanence and the rest..." This is because the debate at this point is about whether or not one can attain liberation from the mental afflictions solely by using the path of the sixteen aspects of impermanence and the rest. Moreover, the fact that they should be explained this way is totally obvious from the debate about liberation occurring "through seeing the truth," and so on. As such, it is <u>not at all</u> the point of these lines to say that, "Although we accept that the path of the sixteen aspects of impermanence and the rest has the power to eliminate your mental afflictions, this doesn't mean you are liberated then from every kind of suffering."

र्म्यायाध्येत्राच्याः त्रिः व्याः या व्याः व स्वाः विद्यः व्याः विद्यः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः व्याः विद्यः व्याः व्याः विद्यः व्याः व्याः विद्यः व्याः व्याः विद्यः वि

Suppose then that this path functions as follows: when one develops in their mind the path described above, then it affects those thoughts which are accepted by both the two Listener groups and by ourselves as being mental afflictions—it stops them from operating in a manifest manner, temporarily. If one were to posit that this constituted achieving a liberation wherein all mental afflictions were finished off, then one would have to say that a person had achieved a liberation where every impurity was finished off simply by having eliminated, temporarily, the manifest form of the mental afflictions—and this would have to happen in the very next moment after it. The intent of the root text at this point is to refute this idea.

तस्रविक्तः स्वास्त्र स्वा

The fact that one cannot accept the position just stated is indicated in the lines of the root text at this point which say, "They lack any mental afflictions; / We can see though they still / Possess the karmic power." [If what you say is true, then] these lines are saying that "even though a person may, temporarily, not possess the manifest form of mental afflictions, we can see that they will not be able to project him, through the power of karma, into another future life."

मूर्यायात्रात्मेत्रात्ते हे ब्रिकायात्मेराक्षे न्यत्ते क्षेत्रायम्यायात्र विष्यायम्भितायम्भेतायम्भेतायम्भितायम् भेवि देशाश्चायम्यात्रात्त्रात्यकाम्भात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र स्वायात्रात्त्र स्वायात्र स्वायात्र स्वायात्र स्वायात्र भेवि देशाश्चायम्भात्त्र त्यात्र त्यात्र स्वयात्र स्वायायम् स्वायायम् स्वायायम् स्वायात्र स्वायायम् स्वायास्य स्वयात्र स्वायायम् स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयायायम्भित्र स्वयायायस्य स्वयात्र स्वयायस्य स्वयायस्यस्य स्वयायस्य स्वयस्य स्वयायस्य स्वयस्य स्वयस्य

यः सुर्ये, त्रा भी श्री त्रा त्रा प्रति । स्वी स्वा त्रा त्री त्रा त्रा त्री त्रा त्री त्रा त्री त्रा त्री त्र भूषे प्रति । स्वी त्रा त्री त्री स्वा त्री त्रा त्

This is how one should explain the lines of the root text at this point. Some commentaries though, and certain Tibetans, have explained them as saying:

Consider persons like Maudgalyayana and the realized being "String of Fingers," who had no mental afflictions, but who still had karma that they had collected earlier, when they were still ordinary beings. We can see that this karma was still producing a result and giving them suffering, so it is not true that they were liberated right after losing their mental afflictions.

This interpretation of the lines though is not correct. The lines are not referring to the ability of the karma to produce suffering in this present life, but rather to its ability to project the person into another future life. The point is that, because one has not yet stopped their ability to do this, then one has not yet achieved liberation.

Contemplation Thirteen
On Desire and Self-Existence

वियायः वियाः यः वे यात्रसः यः यः वियाः । । द्रस्यायः यः द्रसः यः वे यः यः यः स्रोत्रस्यः । । व्यायः वियाः यः यः यः यः विष्यः ।

They still possess feelings; The mind which tends to look Remains in particular ones.

यीयःत्र-ख्रियःश्रह्म्यान्त्र्यः व्यान्त्र्यः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्यः व्

People who have not yet realized emptiness have failed to eliminate even the slightest bit of that ignorance which consists of grasping to the true existence of their feelings. As such, there will definitely grow within them the kinds of craving brought about by their feelings; that is, the craving not to be separated from feelings of pleasure, and the craving to be separated from feelings of pain. Now those kinds of people that you say are enemy destroyers still though possess the belief that feelings can exist by definition. But the fact is that—so long as there remains in the continuum of any particular person a manifest form of the state of mind which still possesses the tendency to look at things as if they were true—then it is totally impossible that this person could have put a stop to the manifest form of the craving which is instigated by this tendency.

Contemplation Fourteen
On Emptiness and Nirvana Alone

|क्रॅंट-क्रेट-दर-के.च्या-च्ये-क्रेस्या |यद्-वेक-क्रेट-च्ये-च्ये-क्रेस्य-व्ह्या-च्येम |प्यायाक-प्र-च्ये-क्रेस्य-व्ह्या-च्येम |देश-क्रेट-क्रेट-च्ये-च्ये-क्रिस्य-च्या-च्येम

When they stop with the state of mind Which lacks emptiness,
They will still come back again.
It's just like deep meditation
Where distinctions are stopped;
So you must meditate on emptiness.

यद्भात्ताः प्रदेश विकानः व्यापान्तः स्थान्यः विकानः विकान

Here is the fourth point: [a demonstration of why, therefore, even those who wish to achieve no more than freedom must still meditate upon emptiness]. Consider now the state of mind which still lacks the realization that the person and his heaps are empty of any nature where they could exist by definition. Even though people with this state of mind have succeeded temporarily in stopping the manifest form of their mental afflictions, these manifest forms will still come back again. It's just like staying in the deep meditation where you [nearly] stop completely your tendency to draw any kind of distinctions. So therefore one must definitely hold the position that anyone who might hope to achieve the goal of becoming an enemy destroyer—much less an Omniscient One—must still meditate upon the emptiness which refuses the subtle form of the self-existent object, whose existence we deny.

Contemplation Fifteen
On Ending the Two Obstacles

|देंद्र-सेंद्र-प्रक्षेत्रस्य व्या |सुद्र-प्रक्षेत्र-प्रक्षेत्रस्य व्या |देश-द्रक्षेत्र-प्रक्षेत्र-प्रक्षेत्र |सेंद्र-प्रक्षेत्

As such, overthrowing those Who accept the idea of emptiness Is completely incorrect. And so it is that, beyond A shadow of a doubt, they must Meditate upon emptiness.

तात्रात्मेत्र, प्रत्यात्रकात्वर, त्यत्र, स्वार्थ, स्वार्य, स्वार्थ, स्वार्थ, स्वार्थ, स्वार्य, स्वार्थ, स्वार्थ, स्वार्थ, स्वार्य

ब्रेन्यास्त्रम् स्त्रीत्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम्

Here is the third point, [which is advice to those who seek to attain liberation, that it is therefore very right that they should meditate upon emptiness]. As such—that is, as we have just explained—the case is that all these attempts to overthrow those who accept the idea of emptiness are completely incorrect. They will also be disproved by the various kinds of reasoning which we will present later on. And so it is that even those who wish no more than to achieve the "enlightenment" which is the goal of the Listener and "Self-Made Buddha" tracks must still, beyond a shadow of a doubt, meditate upon emptiness, for the following reason. The tendency to hold things as existing truly is that form of ignorance, involved with mental affliction, which is the root of the circle of suffering. And it is completely impossible to attain freedom unless one can overthrow the existence of the object which this ignorance thinks it sees.

वित्रस्थात्यात्र्यात्त्रस्थात्यः स्थितः स्थात्यः स्यात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्य

Emptiness is the antidote For the darkness of the obstacles Of affliction and to omniscience. How could it be that those Who hope for omniscience quickly Would neglect meditating upon it?

क्षेत्र-भ्राम्य भ्रम्य म्यान्त्र-भ्रम्य म्यान्त्र-भ्य

The wisdom which realizes *emptiness* is, moreover, the antidote for the darkness of both the mental-affliction obstacles and the obstacles to knowledge. How could it ever be then that—if you hoped to achieve quickly the state of omniscience, the

state where you end finally both the obstacles—you would neglect to go and meditate upon emptiness? Without this, you would never be able to eliminate even the seeds of the mental-affliction obstacles.

श्चीशः मुद्रः श्चेरः चतिः श्चेरः कः श्चेत्राश्चात्रः च्चाः क्वाश्चात्रः श्चेरः स्वेशः श्चेतः ध्वेरः स्वेरः स्व भिक्षः श्चेतः ग्चेरः चतिः श्चेरः कः श्चेत्राश्चात्रः च्चाः क्वाश्चात्रः स्वरः स्वेशः श्चेतः ध्वेरः स्वरः स्वरः भिक्षः श्चेतः ग्चेः शः चित्रः स्वरः स

The seed for the obstacles to omniscience is the ultimate subtle mental potential for things which involve mental affliction, and their manifest form is the condition of things appearing to exist truly, and so on. It is wrong though to say things like, if something appears to exist truly, it is then necessarily an obstacle to omniscience.

|देखावह्यकायहासुन्ध्री।
|देखावह्यकायहासुन्ध्री।
|देखावह्यकायहासुन्ध्री

If you feel frightened about The thing it is that creates Every kind of pain, Why is it then you feel Any fear for the thing it is That ends all pain?

त्रिं प्रश्चित्रः विकास प्रति स्त्रा क्षेत्रः कष्टे क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः कष्टे क्षेत्रः कष्टे क

We will now summarize our discussion. Someone might come and say, "This thing you call emptiness is something that frightens me; I don't think I can meditate on it." This thing we call the tendency to grasp to things as existing truly though is the thing which we have identified as the main cause that creates every kind of pain in this cycle of suffering. This is the thing you should feel frightened about, this is the thing that should strike terror into your heart. Why is it then that you feel any fear for the wisdom which realizes emptiness, for the thing it is that will put a final end to all the pain of the cycle of suffering? It is wrong for you to feel afraid about that very thing that ends all fear.

|ग्रायानिः प्रमायावयावः स्त्री |
|उ.त्रायान्यावयावः स्त्री |
|उ.त्रायान्यावयावः स्त्री |
|प्रमायान्यावयावः स्त्री |
|प्रमायावयावः स्त्री |
|प्रमायावयः स्त्री |

Of anything, then you could feel Fear towards any object.
But since there is nothing which is Itself at all, how could there be Anyone who's afraid?

यहम्मश्रामाश्रवत्त्वात्मश्राम् विष्णाच्मात्म् विष्णाच्मात्म विष्णाचम विष्

Only if it were true that there were any self-nature of anything at all then would it be right for you to feel fear towards any object at all, since this fear comes from believing in a self-nature. But since it is not the case that anything has any nature at all which exists by nature, how could there be anyone who is afraid in the first place? Take this state of mind where you think that things have any nature of their own, and turn it around: look inside, and think! You will come to comprehend fully what it means when we say that nothing is itself at all, and you will liberate yourself from every fear there could ever be.

Contemplation Sixteen The Two Kinds of Grasping to Self-Existence

त्र्।

श्रितःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्।

क्रिंशःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्।

क्रिंशःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्।

क्रिंशःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्।

क्रिंशःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रेन्द्रम्भायःस्ट्रम्

The third major section is a detailed explanation of the different types of reasoning used to prove emptiness. Here there are two divisions: a detailed presentation of the types of reasoning used to prove that the person has no self-nature; and a detailed presentation of the types of reasoning used to prove that things have no self-nature.

र्यः त्यानास्त्रम् स्वरः श्चेत्रः श्चेत्रः यो विषयः विषयः स्वरः विषयः विषयः विषयः विषयः विषयः विषयः विषयः विषयः

The first of these has two parts of its own: refuting the object believed in by the innate tendency to grasp to some self-nature; refuting the self-nature grasped to by the tendency which is learned; and disproving any attempted argument concerning the refutations.

Here is the first. On this point, the difference between the learned and the innate forms of the tendency to grasp things as true is as follows. What we call the "innate" form of this grasping can focus either on the person or upon the parts of the person. It is a state of mind that everyone has, whether their opinions have been affected by any particular school of philosophy or not. And it holds that things exist through some nature of their own—that they exist by definition. It is not dependent on any logical examination of its object, but rather comes up in the mind automatically.

An intellectual grasping to things as being true is a type of grasping to true existence, but one which does rely on engaging in a logical analysis, and which then concludes that it is correct to say that things do exist in truth, and so believes in this kind of existence.

यदः ब्रियाः यद्भाः श्रीः यद्याः यद्दे व्याः यद्दे व्याः यद्याः व्यवः ब्रियाः यद्वे व्याः यद्वे व्याः

Regarding the tendency to grasp to the person as having some self-nature, there does also exist a type where one holds the person as being self-standing and substantial; this is taken in by the innate type just mentioned. You should understand though that the tendency of looking upon the person and his parts as being like a master and his servants can only be an intellectual type. In the same way, the tendency to hold that there exists an atomic particle which is partless, as well as the tendency to hold that there exists a moment of consciousness which is partless, can both only be an intellectual type of the tendency to hold that objects [meaning the parts of a person] have some self-

त्यम् दिन्द्रा त्यम् स्वत् । विकायम् स्वत् । विकायम् स्वत् । विकायम् स्वत् । विकायम् स्वतः स्वत

In brief, the two forms of the kind of tendency to grasp to things as existing truly which comes in the mind automatically, without relying on analysis according to some philosophical school, are the innate type. All the other tendencies to hold that things have some self-nature are the intellectual kind. It should be understood that the principal object which we deny when we speak of emptiness is the object that the former tendency believes in; disproving the object believed in by the latter tendency is ancillary to disproving that believed in by the former.

Contemplation Seventeen The Person and the Parts

विर्मानिक्षाः स्थानिक्षाः स्थित्। विद्याः विद्याः द्वाः स्थानिक्षः स्थितः विद्याः स्थानिक्षः स्थानिक्यः स्थानिक्षः स्यानिक्षः स्थानिक्षः स्था

Neither my teeth nor hair Nor nails are me; nor am I The bones or blood; Not the snot, and not The phlegm, not the Lymph or pus. Neither is my self the Fat, the particles; nor The lungs or liver me.

र्श्वाचा विकास क्षेत्र स्थान क्षेत्र स्थान क्षेत्र स्थान स्

One may make the following objection:

Here you are attempting to disprove the fact that the teeth and nails and so on could be a self. If you are doing so with the idea that it could liberate someone, then you are mistaken, since living beings tend to hold these things as being "mine," and not as being "me."

বাৰিমান্য-মন্মান্ত্ৰ স্মান্ত বিষ্ণান্ত ক্ষেত্ৰ ক্ষান্ত ক্ষিত্ৰ প্ৰতিমান্ত ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ প্ৰতিমান্ত ক্ষিত্ৰ ক বিষ্ণান্ত ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ স্মান্ত ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত্ৰ ক্ষিত

यदेग्दर्ग र्या प्रमाणिक प्राप्ते प्राप्त के प्रमाणिक प्र

The point here is the same as in places where, for example, it's stated that the physical body is not the self. As such, the things focused upon for the two objects that are pictured in the mind during the innate form of the view of destruction are the simple "me" which serves as the basis for the workings of karma and its consequences, as well as the simple thing which is delineated as "mine." The view of destruction focuses upon these things and believes them to be a "me" and "mine" which exist by definition. Given all this, then if the "me" were to exist by definition, it would also be true that the collection of the heaps, and their continued existence, and all its components and parts, and anything completely separate from these things at all, any of them, would have to constitute what "me" refers to. The fact though is that none of these things constitutes anything of the kind. This is what is being expressed at this point.

श्रेद्र-देवि: आज्ञायान्वत्रान्ते। अर्जद्रान्ति । स्वार्मित्र । स्वार्य । स्वार्मित्र । स्वार्मित्र । स्वार्मित्र

Here is our refutation that the individual members of the various heaps could ever be what "myself" refers to. *Neither my teeth nor nails are myself; the bones and blood are not* what "myself" refers to; neither is the snot, nor the phlegm; all these are, rather, only something which the idea of a "me" is imposed upon, and nothing more. *Nor* is the lymph, nor the pus, what "me" refers to; and the fat and particles of the body are nothing that "myself" refers to either—for the exact same reasons that we mentioned earlier.

। मूर्वे अक्रेन न्या गुर यन्या यो अर्जन या वि अ ध्येन त्या कु अ त्या के या स्वारा यदे न र मूर्व त्या या वन

Neither are the *lungs* or the *liver* what "myself" refers to, nor are any of the other organs, like the intestines, what "myself" refers to either. I am not my feces, nor my urine; I am neither the flesh nor skin; all I am is an idea imposed upon all these, nothing more. Neither the warmth of the body nor the inner winds are myself, and I am not the aperture in me, or anything of the kind—we must decide, finally, that I am none of them.

These points may be summarized as follows. Those who belong to the Functionalist group hold the heaps to be the thing which "person" refers to. The non-Buddhists assert that the person is like the master, and the heaps like the servants; that is, they accept a person which is substantially different from the heaps.

The presentation here is making exactly the same point as the refutation, found in the *String of Precious Jewels for the Middle Way*, where it is denied that the six categories could ever be the person himself. The word "aperture" is used to deny the idea that the category called "space" could be a person either.

चयाः मृत्यत्वयाः मृत्ये द्वार्यः विदेशः क्षेत्रः या विद्यान्यः यात्रः चयाः मृत्यत्वयः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः

Therefore it would be wrong to consider, even nominally, either the whole of the parts of a person, or the stream of the mind, or any of the components or parts of a person to be the thing we refer to as the "person." Neither is there anything that can we decide is the person and which is essentially different from these things. Therefore the simple fact of the matter is that the person is something which is merely imposed upon all these.

सुट नर त्युर नरा है स्वार्थ अप्यार केर भी न्यूर न्यूर केर न्यूर स्वार न्यूर न

Someone may make the following objection:

If that's the case, then we could never find any person at all!

Are you saying then that it's <u>not</u> all right to talk about a "John" or a "Joe" or anything of the like without going into some analysis about their nature? Suppose you do accept the existence of a person who was the object referred to by the term "person," and who also existed by definition. It's important for you to understand that you would then be falling into either the extreme of believing that all things are unchanging, or that they have discontinued completely. As such, there is not a single atom of any such person at all.

Contemplation Eighteen Karma and its Consequences, Despite No Self

यबर्ग्यर बजाय श्रुरावर्षे । प्रार्था याष्ट्रिया स्त्रिया स्

The third part, [disproving any attempted argument concerning the refutations just presented], has two steps of its own: disproving the idea that the principle of karma and its consequences would have to be incorrect, and disproving the idea that it would be incorrect to meditate upon compassion. The first of these itself has two sections: the opponent's argument, and our response to this argument.

|श्रु:ध्रे:यर्ग्,व्र्यूर:ब्रेग्। |यश्र:युश्य:ब्रेश:यर्ग्यशःश्रेवःहे| |यश्र:युश्य:ब्रेश:यंश्यःश्रेवःहे| |याय:हे:यर्ग्य:ब्रेश:यंश्यःब्र्

"Suppose there exists no self;
The relation then between karma
And consequences is wrong.
If they disappeared after they did
Some deed, then whose karma
Would it be?" they object.

श्चर्यात्वः द्वेर। क्रिक्षः श्वाः श्वरः वाः श्व

Here is the first. Someone may make the following objection:

Suppose that there exists no self which is the basis of all things, whether they are part of the condition of bondage or part of the condition of liberation. If it is true that each and every thing that does something goes through a process of appearing and disappearing instant by instant, then it is completely wrong to postulate some relationship between good and bad karma and the corresponding consequences. This is because, if it were true that a person disappeared in the instant after he or she had done some good or bad deed, then later on it would be impossible to say whose karma it would be—what person there was who had committed it. And this is because, when it was time to experience the consequence of the karma, there would be no person left who had committed it. This is why, according to us, there must exist a person who is unchanging.

१८९८ म्य स्वाद्यक्तः व्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तः व्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तिः व्याद्य १८९८ म्य स्वाद्यक्तिः व्याद्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्यव्यक्तिः व्य

The basis at commission and result Is different; also this the self, Who committed, is not. Both of us accept The fact; so isn't your argument Something meaningless?

याका मुद्दारा मुद्दार मुद्दार

Here is the second. Both of us accept the fact that the basis, or the person, at the time of the commission of a karma (meaning, in this context, at the time of the cause) and at the time when the result is experienced is essentially different. We both also accept that—at this time when the result is experienced—the "self," in the sense of the person who committed the karma, is not something that exists any longer. So isn't your argument here, at this point where we are discussing the relationship between karma and its consequences, something which is meaningless? Don't you also accept the fact that, at the time one is committing the karma, the experience of the result does not yet exist, and—at that time that one is experiencing the result—the one who committed the karma no longer exists?

।स्र्रेट्यः यद्यसः तुः द्यः स्यायः । ।स्रुः व्यवः यद्यसः तुः द्यः स्यायः ।

To say you can see that when We have the cause we also have The result is impossible. We point to one as performing And experiencing, all with reference To a single stream.

दन्नश्चित्रात्वात्वर्गात्वेत्रात्वर्गात्वेत्रात्वर्गात्वेत्वर्गात्वरम्भेत्रात्वरम्भेत्वरम्भः विकासम्बद्धात्वरम् तन्नश्चित्रात्वात्वर्गात्वर्गात्वर्गात्वर्गात्वरम्भेत्रात्वरम्भेत्वरम्भः विकासम्बद्धात्वरम्भः विकासम्बद्धात्वर

If there is any problem with this train of thought, then the same problem applies to you. And if you say you can see that, when we have the cause (meaning at the time of the cause or whatever) then we also have the experience of its result, you are talking about something which is completely impossible.

र्याचित्राम् स्वाराच्यात्र्येशाय्याः स्वाराच्याः स्वराच्याः स्वाराच्याः स्वाराच्याः स्वराच्याः स्वराचयः स्वराच्याः स्वराचः स्वराच्याः स्वरयः स्वराच्याः स्वराच्याः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्व

"Well then," you may continue, "what is your own position in this regard?" We can point to someone as—that is, name someone as—"the one who performs the karma" and "the one who experiences the result" all with reference to a single continuous stream of the parts or heaps to a person. The term "continuous stream" here refers to a whole, the person to whom the various parts belong; and these parts are the moments of them that exist earlier, later, and in between, and which belong to the person. To summarize, it is entirely correct to say that any one person has both committed a karma and experienced its consequences; it's not the case though that cause and effect are then simultaneous—no one could ever show that was the case.

A person's mind which is past And future can't be the self; Because they cannot exist. And if that begun were the self, It could never be the self, Because it disappears.

विवान प्यत्रास्त्र संदेश सदि स्वेस सदि स्वेस स्वानित्वा स्वेत्र स्वेस स्वानित्वा स्वेत्र स्वेत्र स्वेत्र स्वेत स्वेत्र स्वेत्

A person's mind which is already past in time, and that which is future, cannot be the self of the person; this is because—since one has disappeared already, and the other is yet to begin—they cannot exist as a self. And if that state of mind which has just begun were the self of the present time, it could never be the kind of self which you assert exists, because it would disappear in the following instant.

|न्धेरःबःकुःविरःश्चेंदःस्र्यःनम |कःवृषःश्चेःबःवम्यःश्चेन्यःप्यश्च| |न्युवःबुकःब्रुःवःवम्यःश्चेन्यःप्यश्च| |नर्वयःबःचनम्गुःगुरःप्यदःनम्बोक्।

When for example you strip Away the stem of a hollow Reed, there's nothing at all. It's the same: you use logic To find it out; and correctly Decide there's not.

त्रमार्ग्यक्तिः स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्र स

Think for example of a hollow reed: when you strip away the stem piece by piece, you find in the end that there is nothing with any nature at all. Here it's exactly the same: you use logic to try to find out whether things have any nature of their own or not, and come to the conclusion that there is no "myself" that you could ever correctly decide existed. The idea that such a self could exist is disproved totally by the various reasonings used, as I will describe below, to establish that nothing has any self-nature at all.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Four: The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Sixth of Six Parts

The following contemplations are based on the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattvacharyavatara; Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa)* of the Buddhist master Shantideva (circa 700 AD), and the commentary upon it by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*. The relevant sections are found at folios 33B-34A and 137B-140B, respectively, in the ACIP electronic editions TD3871 and S5436.

The content of the contemplations is translated directly from the root text and commentary; the names of the contemplations are not a part of the original text, but are based on the divisions of Gyaltsab Je's commentary and have been supplied for reference.

Further Contemplations on the Perfection of Wisdom

Contemplation Twenty-Five Consequences and No-Self

|म्यायाः ने: श्रेस्याः स्वायः स्वयः स्

One might ask, "If there's no Such thing as a living being, then Who do we have compassion for?" It is those projected by dark Ignorance, those asserted For attaining the goal.

Here is the second point, [disproving the idea that it would be incorrect to meditate upon compassion]. *One might* begin by *ask*ing the following question:

If there is no such thing as a living being who has any nature of their own, then who are we supposed to think of when we meditate upon *compassion?* The compassion would have no object upon which to focus.

But there is no such problem: it's not true that compassion would have no object to focus upon if there were no living being who had any nature of their own. This is because it is completely proper, for the purposes of attaining the goal of freedom, to assert the existence of those living beings who exist nominally—that is, living beings who are projected by dark ignorance.

Suppose now that we interpret the words "projected by dark ignorance" as referring to the tendencies to believe that the person and that things have some self-nature. These tendencies project onto living beings a quality of true existence; we deny that they actually exist in the way that they are projected to be, and so we are not denying the idea of a living being itself. Thus too it is that we can establish the existence of a living being, one which is only a projection, one which exists only in name.

हितः नुभेवाका प्युता नुभेव के स्थापति। १ प्यान में स्थापत्र स्थापति स्थापति।

The phrase "projected by dark ignorance" can also be read as referring to ignorance alone, in which case the words are saying, "It is living beings projected by this state of mind which are the object upon which compassion focuses."

|येशकारुवासीनात्त्र्यात्त्राम्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्य

If there is living being Where is the result? It's true, But we say in a way unaware.

यर. ५५५५१। तायदेथ. धे. ५५४ . श्रीट. इ. श्रीट. इ. श्रीट. १५५४ . श्रीट. इ. श्

One may continue with the following question:

If there is no such thing as a living being, then what person is it who could ever consider enlightenment—that is, the result of meditating upon compassion—to be something you could ever achieve? The meditation then would become something pointless.

It's true that this cause and effect have no true existence; but there's no contradiction when we say that one may still meditate upon compassion, and anything of the like, in a nominal way, in a way where one is unaware of the real nature of things.

Contemplation Twenty-Six The Final Defeat of Ignorance

That egotism which is the Cause of pain then feeds it, For it's ignorant about the self. Suppose you object, "That doesn't Mean you could stop it"; meditation On lack of a self is supreme.

त्र विक्रान्यान्त्रेत्वान्त्र्यात्र्यात्रात्वात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्रात्वात्यात्रात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्य

One may ask the following question: "Why is it that you said, before, that both dark ignorance and the object it thinks it sees can be stopped?" There was a section earlier on in the text where we spoke of "that which is the cause of all pain." As we did there, we are here speaking of that "egotism"—meaning the state of ignorance involved with mental affliction—which is the cause of all the pain of this suffering existence. This state of mind is in a condition of dark ignorance about the nature of the self, and this is what allows it to feed our pain in the cycle of suffering. This is the reason why we must stop it, and also the reason why it is no contradiction to say that we can stop it.

वर्षीर त्राच्या मुन्ति । व्हिंया त्राच्या मुन्ति । व्हिंया त्राच्या प्रति । व्हिंया प्रति । व्हिंया प्रति । वहिंया । व

Suppose you make the following objection:

Even if you could stop this kind of dark ignorance, that doesn't mean that you could stop the tendency to see things as existing truly. In fact you couldn't; and even if you did stop it once, it would never be ended forever: the tendency would come back again, the way that the heaps of a person come back in this suffering cycle.

ड्रिया:प्रेंश-सः यात्र शत्र त्यात्र श्री त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात् सक्ष्याः प्रेयाः प्रेयः प्रे

And yet it's not true that you cannot put an end to the tendency of seeing things as existing truly. Remember that this tendency is a misperception of the true nature of things. As such it is weak, and inferior; whereas *meditating upon the lack of a self*-nature to things *is*, by comparison, *supreme*. Since this meditation is a completely unmistaken realization into the true suchness of all things, it has the power to rip the other perception out from the very roots.

Contemplation Twenty-Seven Neither the Parts nor the Whole

यन्याः भेनः मुन्याः भेनः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्य

Here is the second major division of the discussion: a detailed presentation of the types of reasoning used to prove that things [meaning here the parts of a person, as opposed to the person themselves,] have no self-nature. We proceed in three steps: an explanation of the fact that things have no self-nature, utilizing the four different forms of deep awareness; disproving any contention that the two truths would be incorrect; and setting forth logical proofs to demonstrate that there is no self-nature.

न्दर्भेश्वान्त्र्। स्रेश्वान्त्र्याक्षेत्रम्यात्र्व्यात्यः वर्ष्क्ष्यायः वर्षेत्रायः क्षेत्रम्यः क्षेत्रम्यः व विष्यायः न्दरः। श्रेश्वश्चात्रः वर्षेत्रम्यः विषयः यः वर्षेत्रः वर्ते वर्षेत्रः वर्ते वर्ते वर्ते वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्ते वरत्ते वर्ते वर्

The first of these has four parts of its own: meditating on deep awareness of one's body; meditating on deep awareness of one's feelings; meditating on deep awareness of one's mind; and meditating on deep awareness of objects.

त्रांच्यंचि कः उत्यास्य स्टानिक्षेत्रः स्टानिक्षः स्टान्चित्रः स्टानिक्षः स्टान्चित्रः स्टानिक्षः स्टानिकः स्टानिकः स्टानिकः स्टानिकः स्टानिकः स्टानिकः

The first of these as well has four sections: establishing the fact that the body as a whole has no nature; establishing the fact that its parts, its components, have no nature; why it is therefore completely wrong to feel attachment for the body, something which has no nature, and which is like a dream; and how this also proves that the person has no nature either.

Here is the first. It is not the case that the body has any nature of its own. This is because, if it did, then when we looked for the thing we refer to as "the body" we would have to find it to be one of the following: either the individual components of the body, or the sum total of these parts, or something essentially different from these. And yet we cannot find it to be any of these.

न्वींशायर वशुर रें।

One might make the following objection:

We would rather concede that the sum total of all its components is the body. What problem could you ever have about this?

The body is a concept formed upon the basis of the collection of the parts; as such, it would be incorrect to say that this collection of the parts of the body were the body itself. If you say otherwise, then ultimately you would have to accept the idea of an ultimate in the form of atoms that were partless.

विष्ठाः ते स्वाद्याः स्वेषाः स्वेषाः स्वेषाः स्वेषाः स्वाद्याः स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वा

Neither the foot nor the calf
Is the body; nor is the
Thigh or the waist the body.
Neither as well is the front
Or the back, nor the chest
Or the shoulders the body.
Nor are the ribcage or the
Arms; nor is the side
Under the arm, or above.
Nor are the inner organs
The body, nor is the head
Or the neck this body.
Where then would the body
Ever be?

Suppose then that we seek the thing it is that we refer to with the word "body," looking for something which exists from its own side. Neither the foot nor the calf of a person is the body of the person, nor is the thigh or the waist. Neither as well is the front or the back of the body the body, for "body" is a concept applied to these things. The chest and the shoulders are not the body, nor are the ribcage or the arms. The side under the arm is not the body, and the shoulder above the arm is not the body. Nor are the inner organs the person's body. Nor finally is the head or the neck this person's body. Where then in any of these components would the body ever be? It is none of them. Neither is it the sum of these parts, nor is it something which is essentially separate from them. And so therefore the body is nothing that has any nature of its own.

Contemplation Twenty-Eight The Emptiness of the Parts of Parts

विष्यायाम्याद्भारक्षेत्रम्याः ।देःस्यायाम्याद्भारक्षेत्रम्यास्यायम्याद्भारम्भारम्याद्भारम्य

|अययः प्रबेशः देशः वश्वः । |द्वायः देवदः द्वेषाश्चः कवः द्वेषः प्रायः श्वेरः । |द्वेषाशः द्वेषदः कः वशः ददः प्रयः श्वेरः । |श्वायः प्रबेशः देशः स्वः स्वः स्वः स्वः ।

The hand too then is just
The same; a collection of fingers,
So how could it ever be?
Each in turn is a collection
Of joints; and if you divide
The joints into parts, and then
Divide the parts down to atoms,
And then divide these into
Sides in different directions,
Then things are devoid of parts,
And just like empty space;
So even the atoms have none.

यम् प्रतर्भ श्रीश्राचित्रः योश्राचीयः यापः स्त्रीयः प्रत्याः प्रत्यः प्र

Here is the second point, [establishing the fact that the body's parts, the components, have no nature]. Think of the way in which the body of a person is just a concept applied to the collection of its components. *The hand too then is just the same: a* concept applied to the *collection of* its various pieces, to its *fingers. So how* then *could it ever be* something that had some nature of its own? It would be a complete impossibility.

श्रेन्यः श्रेन्यः भ्रेन्यः भ्रे

Each finger, in turn, is a concept applied to the collection of the joints that make it up—and so they too have no nature of their own. And if you examine each of the joints as well, if you divide the joints each into their various parts, you find

they have no nature of their own either. *And then* you can take each of *the parts* of these wholes and *divide* them all the way *down to* their *atoms*, and find that none of them has any nature of its own.

यः यथाः स्वितः त्वितः स्वितः स्वि यथाः प्रतितः स्वितः स्वतः स्वितः स्वतः स्वितः स्वतः स्व

And even these atoms can be divided then into their own parts: into their eastern side, and so on. They too then are a concept applied to the collection of the multiple sides that face in the different directions, and so they have no nature of their own either. You can even divide the directions themselves, which have no nature of their own either. Things then are devoid of any parts that have any nature of their own; and so they are just like, for example, empty space.

And thus it is that atoms themselves have no nature of their own; for if they did, then we would be forced to accept the existence of atoms that were partless. This concept though is disproved by the logic expressed in the lines that begin with "Suppose the six [sides in the six directions] were stuck together."

Contemplation Thirty
The Emptiness of the Mind

|योड्याय:र्स्यय:य:स्रेय:य:स्रेय: |याड्याय:र्स्यय:य:स्रेय:यम्यय:स्रेय:

The mind doesn't reside in the faculties, Nor in the visual or the rest, Nor somewhere in between.

स्रोत्यायस्य स्राप्त स्राप्ते स्रापते स्राप्ते स्रापते स्रापते स्राप्ते स्रापते स्रापते स्रापते स्राप्ते स्रापते स्र

Here is the third section, which is meditating on deep awareness of one's mind. We proceed in two steps: demonstrating the fact that consciousness of the mind cannot exist by nature; and demonstrating the fact that the other five kinds of consciousness cannot exist by nature.

पश्चित्रायाः स्वरः क्रीः विरः हते 'द्युद्दायाः चतुत्रः द्वाद्वां च्याः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः च्याः च्याः

Here is the first. *The mind* is not something which has any nature of its own, and this is because of the following reasons:

- (1) It *does not reside*, through any nature of its own, with*in the* six *faculties*;
- (2) It is *not* something which resides, through any nature of its own, within the six objects of *visual* matter or the rest; and
- (3) It is *not* something which resides "somewhere in between" these two—meaning in the combination of the two.

For this point one should recall the seven points in the analysis of a wagon, as found in <u>Entering the Middle Way.</u> [These are examining a wagon to see whether it is <u>self-existently:</u>

- (1) its parts (in which case it would have to be as many as its parts);
- (2) something unrelated to its parts (in which case it would be some externally existing "self," and no longer be a changing thing);
- (3) something that depends upon its parts (in which case their relationship would have to be that of two completely separate things, like a bowl and the yogurt in the bowl—since the thing dependent was a self-existent other);
- (4) something that its parts depend upon (similar problem);

- (5) something that possesses its parts (again, something completely other than its parts, if it "possesses" them);
- (6) the sum of its parts (independent of our projections, which cannot be); or
- (7) some special visual outline of the wagon (if this were true, then the mental heaps, since they are not physical matter and cannot have shape or color, could not be included in the "person" or his "mind").]

विदः स्पदः श्रेश्रश्च स्त्री श्रेश्व स्त्री स्त्री

The inside is not the mind,
Nor the outside, and neither
Can it be found somewhere else.
There exists none that's neither the body
Nor other; neither mixed nor an isolated,
Independent thing.
Because it lacks even the
Slightest bit, the one with the
Mind is natural nirvana.

श्रुवःया श्रुश्चानः स्वीत्तः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वातः स्वीतः स्वातः स्वीतः स्वातः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वातः स

रदःवित्रः श्रीक्षः युवायाक्षेत्रः यो देशेष्ट्रः वाद्रः भित्रः रद्या वित्रः श्रीक्षः युवायाः भित्रः स्रोत्रः य देवेः स्रोत्रः क्षेत्रक्षायाः यो द्राप्तः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत्रः स्रोत

Consider the so-called "inner agent," the "inner person" that the non-Buddhist schools say exists. *The mind* cannot, through some nature of its own, reside in this sense "inside," nor can it reside somewhere outside—in the hand or the like. *Neither can it be found*, through some nature of its own, to be *somewhere else* than the inside or the outside.

Think of a mind that had some nature of its own: one that was neither the body nor truly something other than the body: think of a mind that was neither mixed with the body nor an independent thing, isolated from the body. No such thing exists. And because it lacks even the slightest bit of any natural way of being, the mind is completely empty of any nature of its own: and this itself is what we refer to as the "natural state of nirvana."

Contemplation Thirty-One The Sliver of Diamond

क्ष्याक्षःस्रा यान्द्रस्रायान्यान्त्रेनःस्त्रुचःस्त्रेचःस्त्रेचान्द्रस्यायान्द्रम्। स्ट्रिस्स्यान्त्रम् हेंहःयानेयायान्द्रस् वित्रस्रायान्त्रम् हेदःदर्भयान्त्रम् स्त्रियान्त्रम् स्त्रायान्त्रस्यायान्त्रस्या

The third part, setting forth logical proofs to demonstrate that there is no selfnature, has three sections of its own: the proof known as the "sliver of diamond"; the proof based on dependent origination; and the proof based on refuting that neither a thing which does not does not exist could ever grow.

पर्यायालक्षात्री कुं स्रोत्रात्रात्रात्री पर्यायायायात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्रात्री कुं स्रोत्यात्री कुं स्र

The first of these has five points of its own: refuting the idea that things could grow without a cause; refuting the idea that things could grow from something other than themselves which was also unchanging; refuting the idea that things could grow from a primal One which was unchanging; a summary of the

refutation of the idea that things could grow without a cause; and a refutation of the idea that things could grow from both themselves and things other than themselves.

ह्यां त्रान्त्री क्षिट्स्वर्स्थ्यां क्ष्यां क्ष्यां क्ष्यां चित्रः क्ष्यां क्

Here is the first. The non-Buddhist school known as "Those who Reject the World," and other such groups as well, note the fact that there are things—like the patterns on a peacock—which don't seem as if anyone at all has made them; they say:

Consider the roughness of a lotus petal, and its texture or other such qualities; think as well of the sharpness of a thorn, or the like. They just happen by their own nature; it's not as if someone made them that way.

Your idea though is incorrect. This is because we can most often see—even with that direct perception which is shared throughout the world—all the causes that create the vast majority of inner and outer working things, such as crops and the like. And the great variety of results—that is, things like the colors of the stem of a lotus, or the number of petals it has—are all caused by a great variety of different causes. If you ask what it is then that causes all the different varieties of causes themselves; the answer is that they come from none other than a previous set of a great variety of causes.

ૹ૾ૺ૱૽ૢ૽ૺૺૡ૽ૺૺૼ૽ઌૢઌૹ૽ૺ૱ૢૺૺૺૺૺૺ૾ઌૹૺ ૹ૽ૺૢ૽ૺ૱૽૽ૼૺ૾ઌૢૹૡૻ૱૱૽ૢ૾ૢૺૺૺૺૺ૾ૡૺૺૺૹૺૺ

How is it the causes can create them? It's precisely due to the power Of causes that came before.

भुःतर-दश्चीश्वाश्वाद्यःश्वीर-र्षा भित्रःश्वीर विश्वाद्यःश्वीर्थः स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वदः स्वादः स

One may ask the following question:

Just how is it that a variety of causes can create a variety of results?

There's no problem though with the idea: it's not as though they have no such power. *It is precisely due to the power of* the *causes that came before* them that a variety of causes is able to create a variety of individual results. This allows us then to state the following proof:

- (1) Consider all these working things.
- (2) It is not the case that they have no causes, because
- (3) We can observe that they grow intermittently, in time and space.

[Please note that the *mi 'dra na* of the Tibetan should almost surely be read as *mi 'dra ba,* although both editions of the text available to us repeat this spelling. The meaning remains the same in either case.]

Contemplation Thirty-Two What Emptiness is Empty Of

। ते. केर. रं. व. केर. या. केर। । क्षेत्र. या. रं. केर. या. केर।

For this very one, after all, The meditation upon Emptiness is wrong.

र्यायाः चितः स्थाः प्रस्ताः प

One may make the following objection:

For this very reason, it is wrong to say that the meditation upon emptiness which you propose is perfectly correct; the valid perception which perceives it is, after all, "deceptive."

We answer with a logical proof—

- (1) Consider the entire body of existing phenomena.
- (2) It is absolutely correct for us to assert both that the valid perception which perceives emptiness is itself deceptive, and that the emptiness which it establishes as existing is also deceptive, because

(3) When you understand, through the process of conceptualization, the refutation wherein we deny the existence of a working thing which exists in truth, you rely upon forming a mental image of the object whose existence we deny.

| नम्मार्थायदे न्द्र्यायाया स्वाधित्र ।

| ने प्ये न्द्र्याये न्द्र्याया स्वाधित्र ।

| ने प्ये न्द्र्यायदे न्द्र्याया स्वाधित्र ।

| ने प्ये न्द्र्याये ने प्याधित्र ।

| ने प्ये ने द्र्याये ने प्याधित्र ।

| ने प्ये ने द्र्याये ने प्याधित्र ।

| ने प्ये ने प्याधित्र ।

| ने प्ये ने प्याधित्र ।

| ने प्याधित्य ।

| न प्याधित्य ।

One would never be able to Grasp how something was Devoid of being a thing Without encountering that Thing it was which one Imagined it to be. For this reason, the fact that the Deceptive thing is not a thing Is something clearly deceptive.

And this really is the case, because one would never be able to grasp, through the process of conceptualization, how something was devoid of being a thing (how it lacked any true existence) unless one was first able to "encounter" (or conceptualize) that thing it was which one "imagined it to be" (meaning true existence); that is, unless one was first able to form a mental picture of what it was like to exist in truth. And for this reason—which means, because of the fact that the "deceptive thing" or object we deny is totally impossible—then the condition that remains when we have denied the existence of this object (meaning the fact that this object is not a thing) is itself something which is clearly deceptive.

दक्र-यायिवेदार्दे। वक्र-यायिवेदार्दे।

Here is an example to illustrate what we have just been talking about. Until such time as you are able to form a mental picture of the child of a barren woman, you can never form a picture of this same child dying.

Consider the condition that remains after you have disproved the object that we deny: that is, the fact that there is no true existence. If this itself existed truly, then the image of the emptiness of true existence which presents itself to the mind working in a logical mode would itself have to exist in truth. It's moreover the case (1) that it is impossible for a collection of parts to be there when any one of its parts has been disproved; and (2) that, since the object we deny appears to exist in truth, this appearance of true existence would itself have to exist truly. And if this were all true, then true existence itself would have to be something that existed. But since it doesn't exist, then the voidness of true existence which remains after it has been disproved is itself something which is deceptive, rather than being something which exists in truth. This is the point being made in lines from <u>Root Wisdom</u> like the one which says, "If there were the least thing that were not empty, then..."

[The full popularized form of the lines being referred to by Gyaltsab Je reads:

If there were the least thing that were not empty, Then how could emptiness itself exist?

The point is that, if emptiness itself were not empty, then nothing else could be either.]

१२८४ व.झे.त्यस्य चु.वे.त्या १२ स्त्रेट झ्रस्य प्यतः इस्य ह्र्याची १२ प्येट इस्य प्यतः ह्र्या प्याप्यी १योगाला प्येव दे. प्यट प्यह्न व.स. प्येवा

Therefore when a child dies In a dream, the state of mind which Imagines that he's gone blocks out The state of mind imagining that He is still there, despite the fact That it's all deceptive.

यवातात्वाच्यात्वयः क्षेत्रः विश्वाच्याः व्यक्तिः विश्वाच्याः व्यक्तिः विष्ठः व्यक्तिः विष्ठः व्यक्तिः विष्ठः विष्वः विष्ठः विष्वः विष्ठः विष्वः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्ठः विष्यः विष्ठः विष्ठः वि

Unless one is able to form a mental image of what it would be like for something to exist in truth, one can never understand the emptiness of this true existence well. Therefore those who hope to understand emptiness must become masters of the art of defining for themselves just what the object we deny is.

Therefore, for this reason, think of the example of a dream in which you see your child die. The state of mind where you imagine that the child is gone blocks out the state of mind where you imagine that the child is still there, despite the fact that the state of mind being eliminated and the state of mind that works against it are both just deceptive, just a dream.

Here our case is the same. It is absolutely no contradiction to say that a corrective state of mind which is deceptive can destroy an undesirable state of mind which is also deceptive, or that a valid perception which is deceptive can perceive an object which is also deceptive.

Those of the non-Buddhist school called the "Numerists," on the other hand, assert that all knowable objects exist in truth; and so they don't understand how to establish the existence of a valid perception which is deceptive. The problems you have raised therefore don't apply equally to us.

Contemplation Thirty-Four The Emptiness of Becoming and Ending

विवासाय। देसास्स्रीत् लेस्स्रियां वीत्याप्त होत् स्वासायां वीत्र स्वासायां स्वस्यायां स्वासायां स्वास्यायां स्वासायां स्वासायां स्वासायां स्वासाय

Here is the third section, the proof based on refuting that neither a thing which does nor does not exist could ever grow. This section itself has three steps: making the proof, and thus refuting the idea that the arising of things could exist by nature; using this same proof to disprove that the ending of things could exist by nature; and showing how this proves that suffering existence and the state of peace have one quality which is totally equivalent.

दर्भात्री दर्शसंस्ट प्रविश्विक्षण्ये प्राप्त प्रविश्व प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्त

Here is the first. Suppose that working things had some nature of their own. What need then would there be for causes? They wouldn't have to make anything grow. And even if these results didn't exist, then what need again would there be for causes? They would never be able to make anything grow either. Incidentally, the fact is that no result at all ever exists at the time that its cause is present, and this is invariably the way that things grow; so this is not what we are denying in the present case. Rather, we are denying that something that could never exist at all could grow.

त्र्।

प्रविश्व श्री श्री स्त्र स्त्र श्री त्र व्यक्ष श्री श्री श्री स्त्र स्

And suppose next that we are denying that a result which did exist could grow. What we deny in this case is the kind of result that the Numerists posit—one that could exist at the time of its cause; as well as the result which the majority of schools accept, which is one that could have any nature of its own. To say though that "Because something has already grown, it is not necessary for the cause to make it grow," would be beyond all logic. The point then is that we are asserting that cause and effect are empty of any nature of their own; that they are like an illusion, or the reflection of an image in the mirror.

|ची-य-यक्की:स्या-कु-धीरा-तु-स्य-स्या-कु-धीरा-त्यक्की:स्या-कु-धीरा-तु-स्य-स्य-स्या-कु-धीरा-तु-स्य-स्य-स्य-स्य-स्य

। ८६५ ४ वर्षे ४ यथिय त्यार व्या त्यार

You could have billions of causes, But still never turn A thing that didn't function. How can the condition become A functioning thing? To become so It could be no other one.

विद्रा अद्मुतः विद्रान्ते प्राप्तः प्राप्तः प्राप्तः विद्रान्ते विद

What follows next is a proof that a thing without any function could never be the object of the functioning of a cause. In this regard, someone might make the following claim:

Since a result that already existed would already have occurred, there would be no need for its cause to produce it. Why though is it that you say a result which does not exist cannot occur?

The fact though is that you could have literally billions of causes involved, but you could still never turn something that was not a functioning thing into something that was: there is nothing at all that could ever make something that was not a functioning thing into something that was.

यव्याः स्वर्ध्यः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वर

And if you say it is possible, then let us ask you a question. When this happens, then which of the following is the case: does the thing which is not functioning <u>not</u> lose its condition of being something which does not function, or <u>does</u> it? If you say it does not, then <u>how can</u> you claim that <u>the condition</u> of not functioning could <u>become a thing that did function?</u> After all, the condition of being able to perform a function is something completely inconsistent with the condition of being unable to perform a function.

लट.चट.खेचे.लुक.स.सं.चट्ट्रा.सूट.सद्.सु.स्.स्.

And suppose you say the latter, [that it <u>does</u> lose its condition, and becomes something else;] this is impossible, because there are only two ways that something could *become a functioning thing:* either from being a functioning thing, or from being a thing which doesn't function. *No other one* is possible.

It's impossible for it to be Functioning while it does not; When could it become functioning? Until such time as the functioning Was produced, it could never Lose its not functioning. Until such time as it did lose Not functioning, the condition Of doing so would be impossible.

मुक्तिः प्रतः भेतः व्याप्तः भेत्रः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्राप्तः भ्र भ्राप्तः भ्रापतः भ्राप्तः भ्रापतः भ

Suppose moreover that the thing which doesn't function <u>does not</u> lose its condition of being a thing which doesn't function when it is the object of a cause. It is completely impossible for anything to be a functioning thing while it is a thing which does not function. When then do you imagine it could be that this became a functioning thing? A functioning thing could never grow so long as the thing was something that didn't function.

Suppose again that it became a functioning thing after it <u>did</u> lose its condition of being a thing which didn't function. *Until such time as the functioning* thing was produced, it could never lose its condition of being a thing which didn't function; but until such time as it did lose the condition of not functioning, it is an impossibility that it could take on the condition of having a function—for the two conditions are mutually exclusive.

।८९५ मुच्यात्रेयायाः स्थाप्त स

A thing that does function could never Be what didn't either: It would have to have two natures.

र्द्शक्षेत्रप्ति स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्

A thing that doesn't function could never become a thing that did; just so, a thing that does function could never become a thing that didn't either. If a thing were half something that functioned and half something that didn't function, then a single thing would have to have two different natures, and this again is impossible.

This same kind of reasoning can be used for disproving both the idea that something which didn't exist at all could grow, and the idea that any of the things which have no function could ever grow.

त्रान्त्र्वेत्रः श्रीत्रः व्याप्त्रः स्त्रोत्रः स्त्रोत्त्रः स्त्रः व्याप्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त व्याप्तः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रे स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त

Consider then a sprout.

It cannot grow through any nature of its own, because

Neither can a thing which exists and which has a nature of its own ever grow, nor can a thing which does not exist and which has a nature of its own ever grow.

It is like, for example, the child of a barren woman.

मुक्षः चुका क्या व्याप्ता प्राप्त क्या वाष्ट्र व्यापा निक्षः व्याप्त क्या क्या विक्षः व्याप्त क्या विक्षः व्याप्त क्या विक्षः व्याप्त क्या विक्षः व्याप्त क्या विक्षः विक्षः व्याप्त क्या विष्यः विक्षः विक्

Disproving the idea that something which does not exist at the time of its cause could ever grow also serves to disprove the idea that something which does not exist at the time of its cause, but which then grows into something which has a nature of its own, could ever grow either. Learn to make the distinction between the two ideas being refuted here.

निःसूरः यम्यासः स्प्रिंत् स्रोतः विद्रा निर्देशः सेंद्रदः स्प्रेत् स्रोतः ने स्प्रेः स्वी निर्देशः सेंद्रदः स्प्रेतः स्रोतः ने स्प्रेः स्वी निर्देशः संदर्भः निर्देशः स्वी निर्देशः स्वास्त्रः स्वास्त्रः स्वी निर्देशः स्वास्त्रः स्वास्त्रः स्वीतः स्वास्त्रः स्वी

It's equally true that the ending Has none, neither does A functioning thing have any. All of the events of the world Are things that have never Begun or ended through any.

यक्षिम् प्रति स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्य

Here is the second point, [which is using this same proof to disprove that the ending of things could exist by nature]. With the foregoing we have explained how the arising of things could never have any nature of its own. It is equally true that the ending of things is not something which has any nature of its own. Neither is any functioning thing anything which has any nature of its own. And for this reason we can say that all of the events of the world are things that have never either begun or ended through any nature of their own; they are nothing but peace—that is, what we call "nirvana by nature."

Events are like a dream; If you analyze them, then They are just like cane.

ब्रीन्यक्ष्यं स्त्रीत् । स्त्रीत

Here is the third point, [which is showing how all this proves that our suffering existence and the state of peace have one quality which is totally equivalent]. The *events* of this suffering life *are like a dream;* this is because they lack the slightest bit of any nature of their own, and yet still exhibit all the workings of actions and the objects of actions, without any confusion of the two. *If you analyze these* events with the logic that examines suchness, then you find that *they are just like* a hollow piece of *cane:* although they appear to have some substantial existence, they lack even the tiniest bit of any essence, any nature of their own.

देश्वर्भः भेत्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्

Here is the milepost for checking whether or not what you are doing qualifies as an examination into suchness. Suppose you decide not to be satisfied just with an object which is no more than something created by concepts, something that exists only nominally. If you resolve then to go and seek the thing which your concept or term applies to, then what you are doing qualifies as an examination into suchness. And suppose that you proceed in the other way—that is, suppose you decide to simply remain satisfied with the fact that something is no more than a creation of terms or projections. If you then proceed to examine how it is that John goes, or stays, or anything of the like, then you are performing what we would call an analysis into terms or projections.

। भेर देश क्षा स्टब्स स्टब्स

From the point of view of suchness, There is no difference between Reaching nirvana and failing to.

Consider now the condition of *reaching nirvana*, where you are freed from the shackles of suffering life—from desire and the rest, *and* the condition of *failing to* reach nirvana—that is, of being thrust into the prison of cyclic existence. From the point of view of their suchness, there is no difference between these two. This is because a suffering existence and peace itself are totally equivalent in being empty of any nature of their own.

विष्यः स्वाका वाक्षीरका साम्भेरः स्वा विषयः स्वाका वाक्षियः स्वाका स्वाका साम्भे साव विषयः स्वाका साम्भे साव स्वाका साम्भे साव स्वाका साम्भे सामे साम्भे सा

This same point is made in lines like the following, from the *King of Concentration:*

Those who live in cyclic existence Are similar to a dream; No one here is ever born, And no one ever dies.

There are also words such as those found in the <u>Sutra Requested by the Realized</u> <u>Being Upali:</u>

For anyone who attempts to judge The various natures of things, There are no goals at all, and neither Achieving any goals.

> Contemplation Thirty-Five The Emptiness of Love and Hate

निःसूरःसूरःयदैःदर्दशः इस्रशःय। वितःयः देः व्येदः विरः देः व्येद।

Consider this way all empty, Working things: how could There be any gain or loss?

या इस्थान्यान्त्रियाः विद्याः विद्या

Here is the first point, [which is a description of the way things really are]. Suppose that you do, in *this way* (meaning in the manner described above), *consider all* these *working things, empty* as they are of any nature of their own. And you judge them to see if they have any nature that comes from their own side. *How* then *could there be any gain* that you would feel attracted to; how could you ever obtain anything? And how too could there ever be any *loss* that would make you feel angry; how could you ever lose anything? Neither one exists in the slightest.

How could anyone ever
Do you any honor then,
Or any insult either?
Where would pleasure or pain
Ever come from? How could
There be what you want or don't?
If you look from this point of view,
Who feels the craving,
And what is it they crave for?

How could anyone ever do you any honor then, or any insult either? How could they ever help you, or hurt you? What would there be to strive to get? What would there be to work to get rid of? Where would pleasure or pain ever come from? What could ever cause them? How could there ever be the things you don't want, or the things you do want? How could there ever be anything with its own nature that made you happy, or made you unhappy?

Use the logic where you examine the true nature of things. *If you look* at it *from this point of view*, you see that none of the three elements in a situation has any

nature of its own: When you crave something, where is the fact of craving? And who is it that is feeling the craving? And what is it that they feel the craving for?

| न्युन्द्रम्यक्ष्यः स्विः व्यक्षेत्रः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व | व्यक्षित्रः व्यक्षितः विष्यः व्यक्षितः विष्यः विषयः विषयः

You should analyze
Those alive in the world;
Who is it that dies here?
Who is it that comes,
And who that went? Who is
The relative, who the friend?

यहैया.हेब.बी.क्ट्र्यायक्ष्यां साह्यायाय्यायय्य स्थाय्याय्य स्थाय्य स्थाय स्थाय

You should in this same way analyze karma, the person collecting the karma, and so on. When you look at all these beings, all those who are alive in the world, who is it then that dies here in this suffering existence? Death itself is nothing that has any nature of its own.

Who is it that is going to come and take the future life? Who is it that went and took the last life? Who is the relative that is helping you so much? Who is the friend you feel so attracted to? None of them has the least nature of their own. You must thus come to comprehend the real nature of things, and make great efforts to neutralize the eight worldly thoughts within you.

[The eight worldly thoughts consist of having the following emotions, <u>based on a misperception of reality:</u>

- 1) Being happy when we acquire some thing,
- 2) And unhappy when we don't.
- 3) Being happy when we feel good,
- 4) And unhappy when we don't.
- 5) Being happy when we become well known,
- 6) And unhappy when we don't.
- 7) Being happy when someone speaks well of us,
- 8) And unhappy when someone speaks ill of us.]

Contemplation Thirty-Six

The Final End

(The following is the last contemplation in the "Chapter on Wisdom")

वि.म्री.त्र.त्र्यात्रम्यः व्याः व्य

When is it then I'll be able
To put an end to suffering
With a rain of every goodness,
Of all that's kept me well,
From clouds of my good deeds to those
Who are caught in the fire of suffering?

यर्या.योश.यो.स्.क्षेय.रं.क्षेट.हं.कुर.त्.यञ्जूत्र.क्षेया.यक्ष्या.याक्षया.याक्षया.याक्षया.याक्षया.याक्षया.याक्षया.याक्षया.याकष्या

Here is the third point, [which is a description of the way in which great compassion thinks of its object]. Consider *then* how, in the way described above, merciless suffering comes to the minds of all these beings; think well upon the way of torment, the way in which they are tortured by pain. Focusing upon *those* beings *who are caught in the fire of* this *suffering*, think to yourself this way:

When is it that I will be able to help put an end to the suffering they all feel in the lower realms? When will the clouds of my good deeds, my acts of giving and the rest, send down upon them a great rain of every goodness: all the things I have that keep me well in life—medicine, food, and all the rest?

[Please note that the texts available to us seem to read here 'tsogs chas kyis, an ancient word for "with the necessities of life," rather than the tsogs char gyis, of the root text, meaning "with the rain of my collection of good karma." The translation reflects both readings.]

Meditate on great compassion, by thinking this way too:

What if it were true that everyone in the lower realms could be freed from all their pain? May they be freed! May I free them myself!

When is it I will, with respect, Accumulate masses of merit With the wisdom that has no focus? When is it I will teach emptiness To all those devastated By their tendency to focus?

क्रम् त्यक्ष्म् स्वतः स्वान्यक्ष्म् स्वतः त्यक्ष्म् स्वतः त्यक्ष्म् स्वयः त्यक्ष्मः स्वयः त्यक्ष्मः स्वयः त्यक्ष्मः स्वयः त्यक्ष्मः स्वयः त्यक्षः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यक्षः स्वयः त्यक्षः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः त्यवः स्वयः त्यवः त्य

Here is a prayer that we become the cause for their liberation from suffering:

When is it that I will come to realize that every single object which exists is completely devoid of any nature of its own? When will I come to have the wisdom that has no focus [towards things as self-existent]? And when will I, with great respect, go about the task of accumulating infinite masses of merit, acts of giving and the rest, using this wisdom as a method to achieve the goals?

Living beings are *all devastated* here in the cycle of suffering *by their tendency to focus* on things and believe that they have some true existence. *When is it that I will* be able to *teach* them the concept of *emptiness*, in order to help them put a stop to all the sufferings of the cycle?

Meditate thus on great compassion, think to yourself:

What if it were true that every living being could be freed from the sufferings of this cycle of life? May I free them myself!

 $2 + \frac{1}{2} +$

For the love and compassion which is a part of the path of the greater way to be complete in every respect, you must have the desire that you could move every living being to the state of enlightenment itself: that you could assure

their coming to possess every kind of happiness, and avoiding every kind of pain.

चित्। नि,चल्रेन,दीस्ट,सूर,सूर,सूर्याम्यस्य अयाम्यस्य अयाम्यस्य अस्त्र न्यास्य स्वर्णा स्वर्णा नि,चल्रेन,दीस्य स्वर्णा स्वर्णा

To summarize, we must undertake to meditate upon the real nature of things, basing this analysis upon the practice of meditative quietude. The "me" you think of when you say "it's mine" is nothing more than a projection that you lay on the heaps or parts that make you up. It has not the slightest bit of any natural existence, of any definitive existence, of any independent way of being.

The existence of a person is something which happens only by virtue of an idea; the person exists only through projections, only in dependence on other things, and nothing more. Practice thinking of things this way: see that they have no nature of their own. Continue in your meditation, applying this same concept to every existing object: to the parts of a person, and everything else as well.

Contemplation Thirty-Seven
Pray They All Be Bodhisattvas
(The following contemplations are all from the "Chapter on Dedication")

स्र त्या मी क्रें र र प्रति स्वावित रें ते र मिल्ट स्वावित स्वावित स्वावित स्वावित स्वावित स्वावित स्वावित स्व

Here is the fourth major section, which is an explanation of how to train oneself in the perfection of giving, where you give away your body, possessions, and all your collected virtue; this explanation is accomplished through presenting the part [of the seven parts for collecting virtue and purifying negativities] known as "dedication." Here there are two steps: an explanation of the text of the chapter, and an explanation of its name.

दस्यायर्थे वर्षे.याप्त्रीयापत्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयापत्रीयाप्त्रीयाप्त्रीयापत्तियापत्रीयाप

The first of these comes in three parts of its own: a brief presentation, accomplished by making a dedication that every living being should be led into the way of life of a bodhisattva; a more detailed explanation of the act of dedication; and an act of obeisance, inspired by recalling kindness.

विट्याम्बर्धिट्यायह्यास्यः स्वा विद्यायः इस्यायः वस्यस्यः यासी विद्यायः इस्यायः वस्यस्यस्यः स्वी विद्यायः इस्यायः वस्यस्यस्यः स्वी विद्यायः स्वायः विद्यायः स्वी

I have thus finished composing A guide to the way of life Followed by bodhisattvas. By all the virtue achieved thus May every being engage In the bodhisattva's life.

चिट् क्रिच श्रिश्च प्रस्ति र्श्वेट पार्क्या चित्र क्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्य श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च श्रिश्च

Here is the first. "I," meaning the author of this commentarial classic, "have thus finished composing a very thorough guide to the way of life followed by bodhisattvas. It expresses the entire contents of the highest of all spoken words: it incorporates a description of the entire path for reaching Buddhahood,

including an explanation of this result itself; that is, it shows how to actually put into practice every one of the steps of the path designed for people of three different scopes. I hereby dedicate *all the virtue* that I have *achieved* through this act, as well as *all the virtue* that anyone may ever obtain through teaching, or learning, or thinking about the meaning of this book. Through this virtue, *may every* living *being engage in*—that is actually practice, properly—*the bodhisattva's* way of *life."*

The Sutra Requested by Ocean of Wisdom states,

Think of drops of water as they fall into the great salt sea; Until the ocean itself dries up, the drops never disappear. Virtuous acts that are dedicated in whole to enlightenment Are the same, and never finish until Buddhahood is attained.

As we pointed out above, dedication has the further benefit that virtues which would have produced only a minor result give forth instead effects which are immense. And virtues that would have at some point worn out if they had not been dedicated become never-ending, and ever-increasing. Think well on these fine qualities of dedication; take even the very smallest good deeds that you ever do, and make great efforts to dedicate them to reaching matchless enlightenment for the sake of every living being.

यशिरकाराक्षेरार्थ। स्योकारा क्षेत्र.स्या यद्या स्याच्या स्याच स्याच्या स्याच स्याच्या स्याच स्य

The sutras on the perfection of wisdom are making this same point when they say,

Your entire core of virtue should be dedicated exclusively to the state of All Knowing alone; never engage in making dedication of them to the levels of a Listener, or a Self-Made Buddha.

२वो.च.४.४४.५वर्षा.च.४४.वर्षा.च.४४.वर्षा.च.४५.वर्ष्य.च.४४.वर्ष्य.च.४५.४५.४५.४५.४५.४५.४५.वर्ष्य.च.वर्ष.चर्य.च.वर्ष.च्य.च.वर्य.च्य.च.वर्य.च्य.च.वर्य.च्य.च्य.च.वर्य.च्य.च्य.च्य.च्य.च्य.च.च

Moreover this virtue, as explained in the ninth chapter, must be performed in such a manner that it is imbued with the wisdom which perceives the fact that none of the three elements has any true existence. Admittedly there is no great difference between the act of dedication and that of prayer. Nonetheless, an act of prayer can be described as something characterized by a kind of aspiration in which you hope for some goal, something that you wish to happen. Dedication, on the other hand, is something characterized by a kind of aspiration in which you hope that virtues, from their causal point of view, might become a cause for some particular result to occur.

Contemplation Thirty-Eight For the Teacher and Teachings

|यद्यं:यदे:सून्यानस्यःसून्यदेन। |यदे:य:स्रस्य:उदःयतुदःयदेःयादस्य| |यद्यं:यदेस्य:यद्यं:यद्यं:यद्यातस्य| |यद्यं:यदे:सून्य:यस्य:सून्यदेगःसू।

They are the single medicine
For the pains of living kind,
And the source of every happiness;
So may the teachings remain
Far into the future,
With prosperity and glory.

श्रीन्गी, यम् दि, योषका सम् वीम् दुर्या स्रोत्राम् देश्वे प्रका त्या प्रकृत प्राप्ते स्रोत्य प्रका स्रोत्य प्रका स्रोत्य प्रक्षे प्रका त्या स्रोत्य प्रका स्रोत्य स्र

Here is the third point, [which is a dedication for the goal that the teachings, which are the source of every happiness, should spread in the world]:

Consider the teachings of the Victorious Ones, the Buddhas: they are first of all, due to the power of the amount of virtue involved, the single medicine, and a matchless medicine, for curing every pain of living kind. And they are as well the ultimate source of every happiness that living kind ever experiences. I pray that they may remain, with prosperity and glory, far into the future; that is, for as long as the cycle of suffering may last itself.

|यट्यायद्गर्याक्ष्यायाः |यट्यायद्गर्याक्ष्यायाः |यट्यायद्गर्याक्ष्यायाः

I bow down to Gentle Voice, The one whose kindness has brought me That virtuous state of mind.

मुक्षियायायायः देवाह्याया सुवायायाया ।

प्रा देत्वायहूर स्वर स्वर विषया स्वर्ण स्वर्ण

And here is the third more general point: an act of obeisance, inspired by recalling kindness.

I bow down to that extraordinary Spiritual Guide who has acted as the personal cause for it all: the one whose kindness has brought to me that virtuous state of mind through which I have been able

to meditate upon the Wish for enlightenment, and to train myself in the activities of a bodhisattva, and to compose this classical commentary which takes these activities as its subject matter. In short, I bow down to the personal cause of these; that is, to *Gentle Voice* (Manjushri) himself.

|ग्राट्यो'देव'ग्रीशयद्या'द्रर'य| |द्यो'यदे'य्येश'यद्र्य'द्र्या'युग'दर्ख्य|

I bow down in the very same Way to that Spiritual Guide Whose kindness has made me prosper.

चद्र-चत्रेश-चान्नेन-तान्य-चन्ना-चन्ना-चन्ना-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त-भून्य-तान्त्र-चन्न-स्वा-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-चन्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-चन्त्र-चन्त्र-चन्न-तान्त्र-चन्त्य-चन्त्र-चन

I bow down in the very same way to that Spiritual Guide who has granted me the kindness of making the virtuous side of my being prosper, by leading me into the spiritual trainings, and by helping me to develop realizations such as those achieved through the three-fold process of learning, contemplation, and meditation.

याताः श्र्रीयाः वर्ष्णायत्तरायाः श्रीवायाः श्रायायाः श्रीवायतः त्येतुः त्यायाः श्रायाः श्रायाः श्रीवायः वर्षाय द्वायाः स्वायाः स्वीतायः याः श्रीयाः वर्ष्णाः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः

This final chapter is characterized by the act of dedication, in which virtues are transformed by fierce feelings of aspiration expressed in prayers for temporal and ultimate goals. As such, it represents a detailed explanation of how we train ourselves in that type of generosity where we give away our bodies, possessions, and the virtues we have collected, all in order to help others. Earlier on in the text too there were occasional explanations of how to train oneself in the perfection of giving. We can say therefore that there is no single entire chapter which covers how to train oneself in giving.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Five: The Art of Reasoning, Part One

The following readings on the art of reasoning are divided into one of three different categories. The first type is composed of selections from what are known as the "Collected Topics," a summary of the Buddhist teachings on logic and perceptual theory. The second group are selections on the forms of logic, and the third collection describes how both these subjects have been debated in Tibetan monasteries over many centuries of time.

Selection from the collected topics: Why study the art of reasoning?

Unless otherwise noted, the selections on the collected topics are excerpted from a monastic textbook entitled An Explanation of the Science of Logic, included in the Advanced Path of Reasoning, a Section from the "Key to the Logic Machine"—a Presentation of the Collected Topics which Clarifies the Meaning of the Great Scriptures on Valid Perception (Tsad-ma'i gzhung-don 'byed-pa'i bsdus-grva'i rnam-par bshad-pa rigs-lam 'phrul gyi lde'u-mig las rigs-lam che-ba rtags-rigs kyi skor). This text was written by Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901), who in his day held the position of Tutor to the Dalai Lama.

Our first selection discusses the importance of learning how to reason well:

The causes that create the Buddha are consummate thoughts and actions. Proving that these constitute a totally pure path that we should practice is accomplished by using the eight different forms of logic. As such there is but one main way of keeping the teachings of the victorious Buddha safe in the world, and this is to become a master of the logical forms used to prove some things and to disprove others. As the *Goldmine of Reasoning* [by the Sakya Pandita, Kunga Gyeltsen (1182-1251)] says,

Suppose a person comes to understand The scriptural tradition for how to reason: This art of proving or disproving things. A master like this is a person who keeps The teachings of the totally enlightened Buddhas safe here in the world.

The second selection is a very famous quotation from scripture which is memorized by every young monk who begins the geshe course in a Tibetan monastery. It describes one of the ultimate reasons for studying the art of reasoning:

अर्दे त्यशा वादः वयाः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः विश्वः श्रेष्याः व्याः व्यव्याः विष्यः व्यव्याः विष्यः व्यव्याः विष्यः व्यव्याः विष्यः व्यव्याः विष्यः व्यव्याः विष्यः वि

There is a sutra where it says,

No person should ever judge another; those who try will fall.

The point of these words is to show us how wrong it is for us to say that someone else lacks any particular good quality, only because it does not appear to us that they do. This same point is made in the *Commentary* with lines such as the following:

In a case where valid perception has yet To engage in the object, the result obtained Is that they don't: they didn't engage.

Formal logic subject: The definition of a reason

The selections on formal logic that follow are also taken for the most part, from the Key to the Logic Machine.

Here is the first part of our discussion. The definition of a reason is "Anything put forth as a reason." The definition of a reason in any particular logical statement is, "Anything put forth as the reason in any particular logical statement."

It doesn't even matter if something exists or not, it can always be a reason in any particular logical statement. This is because of the fact that, no matter what something may be, it can still always be put forth as the reason in any particular logical statement. And this is true because even the horns of a rabbit can be put forth as a reason, in the following way:

Consider anything, whether it exists or not. It is a changing thing, Because it is the horns of a rabbit.

The forms of debate: The motivation for debating, and how to begin a debate

Monks in a monastery such as Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery in south India follow a rigorous schedule of debate. At around age twelve, young monks begin to study formal logic (takrik) and the basic related topics (dura) with their house teacher. By age fifteen, if their progress is satisfactory, they are allowed to enter the debate courtyard and participate in the debates.

At Sera Mey, debates are held twice a day on every other day, once in the morning and once at night. On the remaining days, with the exception of Tuesday (which is market day), debating is held only at night, so that monks can attend extra classes with their scripture teachers in the morning.

Debate is an incredibly powerful tool for reviewing and digging deeper into the subjects learned during classes each day. During a typical day, a monk will spend the early morning in prayers at the assembly hall, and then go home to memorize scripture in his room. Later in the morning he attends either debate or his regular classes. This is followed by a break for lunch, a rest, and personal study. The afternoon is spent in two or three classes with five to twenty other students, in the room of a scripture master.

After an evening meal, monks study on their own. Around six o'clock, a gong called a *ka-nga* (sky-drum) is beat from atop the main temple of the monastery. This is the call to the debate courtyard. The beat begins slow, and then speeds up to a quick pulse. By the time it reaches its crescendo, all monks are expected to be ready in the courtyard, sitting in rows around the platform and throne (called a *shuktri*) where the great debates are centered.

No books are allowed in the debate courtyard; the feeling as you sit in your room and hear the gong beaten is that you will be completely naked, and armed only with your own knowledge. You straighten your robes, grab your monk's shawl and your rosary, and slip a small Tibetan rug under your arm. This carpet will keep your bottom warm through the many hours ahead, exposed to the night, sitting on the flagstones of the courtyard. Until recently, the debate courtyards in south India had no electricity; it still fails frequently, and some of the most pleasant hours of a monk's day are spent out on the courtyard, under the stars, in the sound of the debates and a soft wind blowing past.

The debate master, known as the *giku*, supervises the debates, walking around the courtyard answering questions, urging the debaters on, and enforcing discipline with an occasional hearty swing of his rosary. He is normally a

senior *geshe*, and serves as vice-abbot of the entire monastery, representing the abbot whenever he is unable to attend a function.

A senior student in the debate courtyard, one with a good voice and memory, begins to recite the *kurim* (*sku-rim*), or opening prayers. No debate session is begun without at least a brief version of the opening prayers. This is a time for every monk to sit quietly, chanting and reviewing his motivation for the debates. It is considered extremely important to think carefully during these prayers, and to remove any emotions of competitiveness or pride for the coming debates. We debate so that we can help the others around us, and to examine what we believe, so that we can become enlightened more quickly, and therefore be of ultimate help to all living beings.

After the *kurim* is completed, the monks break out in a kind of victory cheer using the sound *dhi!*—the root syllable of Gentle Voice, the embodiment of the Buddha's intellect and wisdom—to celebrate the beginning of another debate session. Each monk then stands up and mills around the debate courtyard, looking for another monk with whom to debate one-on-one. This is an opportunity for monks from different classes (like freshmen and sophomores in high school) to challenge each other.

Since each class is debating a completely different subject, this is an excellent time for the older monks to review what they have already learned, by choosing a partner from one of the lower classes. The younger monk, in turn, has a chance either to go through his class's current topic with a more experienced debater, or to hear a little bit about a topic which he will have to debate in the coming years.

The two monks decide on who will be the attacker, and who the defender. The defender throws his carpet down on the flagstones, often near a wall where he can lean, and seats himself. The attacker stands facing his opponent, thinking furiously of a subject from which to begin. He then unfolds part of his monk's shawl and drapes it over his left shoulder from the back, a sign of respect that has been followed since the time of Lord Buddha.

The attacker bows close to his opponent's face and claps his hands, simultaneously whispering, *Dhi jitar chuchen!*—which means: "*Dhi!* So what do you think about this one?" He begins the debate then normally by making a statement which is false, to see if his opponent can disprove him. A typical statement of this kind might be, "There is no logical reason why Lord Buddha repeated himself in the *Heart Sutra*, where he says 'Well done! Well done!" This naturally becomes the starting point of a heated argument, which might last for hours.

The attacker in the debate will accompany his salvos with vigorous body language like stamping and clapping, as well as shouts and taunts. None of

this is meant in a competitive or insulting way, but only as a way of breaking the concentration of the opponent. Monks trained in the debate courtyard thereby learn to concentrate deeply, and to stay free of distraction even with hundreds of screaming debaters all around them. This will be a great asset to them when they must sit in their rooms and think out difficult texts, or as they answer future students in different parts of the world, as they present their objections or difficult questions on specific points in the Buddha's teachings.

After about an hour or so, the debate master walks through the midst of the debaters, waving the end of his monk's shawl. This is a sign for the various classes to group together for the second stage of the debates; all the monks studying Middle-Way philosophy, for example, move quickly (for fear of the debate master's rosary) to sit together in a particular corner of the debate ground.

Here the monks of each class sit in two groups facing each other, with a narrow corridor left between the two groups. The groups themselves form into rows, perhaps three or four deep in a larger class, so that every monk can watch the debate. Each class has a class leader, known as a *kyorpon* (or "recitation leader"), who is chosen in the first year that the class is formed, and who will serve in his position until the members of the class take their geshe examinations some 18 years later.

Each member of the class throws his rosary into a pile on the flagstones in the open space between the two groups of monks. The class leader picks all the rosaries up in his hands, and tosses the whole bunch into the air. He closes his eyes and grabs one of the rosaries as the bunch falls to the ground. The owner of this rosary will be the defender in the first debate of the session. This process is repeated for the attacker, and usually for an "assistant" defender. Monks who enjoy debate bring huge, long rosaries to the courtyard, and the lazy ones buy a tiny one.

The two defenders seat themselves on their mats at the head of the corridor between the two groups of monks, and the attacker comes and stands within the corridor. He begins a debate as before. After a few minutes, any monk who has a good idea to bring up might start to yell it at the defenders as well, and will often stand up and push his way past the original attacker. Within about a half an hour, a whole group of attackers may be pushing and shoving to get to the front and scream their question at the defenders. This part can be very physical, but it is extremely rare to see anyone in the debate courtyard actually lose their temper.

The tempo of a debate is very fast, with heavy philosophical concepts flying by in a clipped mixture of modern slang and ancient literary Tibetan. The audience has to listen carefully to follow where the debaters are running. It takes only a few minutes to tear through a difficult concept in a way so

thorough that it could never be accomplished even in hours of classroom time or reading in one's room. There is probably no more powerful tool for learning the great ideas of Buddhism.

Selecting a topic, and maintaining a good motivation, are the two keys in getting the most out of the wonderful opportunity of a debate. An experienced debater, like any good Buddhist, learns to bring up the difficult points that he or she is unsure of—it is less comfortable than debating what you already understand clearly, but within a few minutes you will have deep insights into your question that you could never come up with on your own. Most nighttime debates last for four or five hours, and it is not unusual for a class to get engrossed and go on for most of the night. The level of understanding which monks reach this way is extraordinary.

It is important to give up any feeling of being self-conscious or embarrassed about debating. Say what you think, and say it with power! If you're wrong, you'll learn something new, and you can only be the better for it. Remember that your whole motivation is to become enlightened as quickly as you can, and be able to lead others to the paradise of enlightenment too. For this you will have to know your stuff well—you will have to know what you believe, and know why you believe it, and be able to express it clearly and defend it, especially in a country where Buddhism is just beginning.

It is essential for American Buddhists to believe in the Dharma only when it makes perfect sense to them, and not because of blind faith or tradition. Only then will the Dharma take strong root in this country, and only then will millions be able to follow it, and reach the goal of deathless bliss. You will have no trouble debating if you remember this—you are debating to save the lives of others.

Selection from the collected topics: An Outline of All Existing Things

यक्षिश्यः सन्दर्भी त्युवाश्यः या विश्वाया गुले श्वायः श्वी श्वायः स्वितः स्वितः स्वितः स्वितः स्वितः स्वितः स्व

Here is the second major part, where we present our own position.

There does exist a definition for "that which can be established as existing," Because "that which can be established by a valid perception" is the definition.

यिवीयुवायान्त्रीकायित्राचे क्यायान्ता नर्देकार्यायाकेकार्यन्यविद्या

There do exist two different categories for "that which can be established as existing,"

Because there exist the categories of "unchanging things" and "working things."

ह्यायदे सर्व केंद्र भेंद्र पेंद्र हो केंब्र प्रदः क्षेत्र केंद्र स्वायदे स

There does exist a definition for "unchanging thing,"

Because "one object which is both a thing and which is not such that it only lasts for a moment" is the definition of an "unchanging thing."

Things which are unchanging can be divided into two different types: unchanging things which can be, and unchanging things which cannot be.

There does exist something which is an unchanging thing that can be, Because "knowable things" is it.

There does exist something which is an unchanging thing that cannot be, Because "the two of unchanging things and changing things" is it.

नर्रेश संवे अर्द्ध केन प्येन ने। नेंब होन बुबाय ने ने प्येब पवे हीन।

There does exist a definition of "working thing," Because "anything which performs a function" is the definition.

न्द्रभः संस्थान्ति । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः भ्रोद्रभः विश्वास्थान्यः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः भ्रोद्रभः विश्वास्थान्यः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः भ्रोद्रभः विश्वास्थान्यः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः भ्रोद्रभः विश्वास्थान्यः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः । विभाष्ट्रमः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः । विभाविभाष्ट्रमः । विभाविभाष्ट्रम

There exist three different kinds of working things, for there are the three of matter, mind, and active things which are neither matter nor mind.

There does exist a definition for "matter," Because "something made of tiny physical particles" is the definition.

विभार्यात्मानुत्रामानुकार्थित्। द्विति विभार्यात्मान्यात्मानुकार्थित्। द्वित्रा

There are two different kinds of matter, for there are the two of outer physical matter and inner physical matter.

There does exist a definition for "outer physical matter," for "something which is made of tiny physical particles, but which is not subsumed by the awareness of a being" is the definition.

There do exist classical examples of outer physical matter, for a water pitcher, a pillar, and the four elements of earth, water, fire, and wind are just such examples.

There does exist a definition for "inner physical matter," for "something which is made of tiny physical particles, and which is subsumed by the awareness of a being" is the definition.

There does exist a classical example of inner physical matter, for the impure heap of physical form is just such an example.

There does exist a definition for "something mental," because "anything which is both invisible and aware" is the definition.

There does exist a classical example of something mental, because visual consciousness is just such an example.

There does exist a definition for an "active thing which is neither matter nor mind," because "any produced thing which is neither matter nor mind" is the definition.

चयाः इस्र रे. त्रुरं त्रुर्। वर्ष्य स्त्र त्रुर्। अः इयाः यः प्रतः त्रुरः स्त्र व्यास्य स्त्र व्यास्य स्त्र व्य

There do exist classical examples of active things which are neither matter nor mind, because "working thing" and "changing thing" and persons such as horses or cattle are just such examples.

Formal logic subject: The subject, the quality to be proven, and the quality denied in a logical statement

चिर्यं । देश्यं विश्वं विश्वं

Let's consider now a case where we put forth the following logical statement:

Consider sounds.
They are changing things,
Because they are something which is made.

The basis of contention in this statement [—that is, the subject of the proof—] is "sounds." The quality to be proven is being a changing thing. The assertion, the idea to be proven, is that sounds are changing things. The reason is being something which is made. The quality being denied is being an unchanging thing. The idea being denied is that sounds are unchanging. You can apply this same pattern to every other logical statement.

The forms of debate: Posture, the use of a rosary, and formulating the statement of a reason in three parts

In our second lesson we will cover the classical posture for debating, how to use a rosary during a debate, and how to formulate a classical logical statement during a debate.

The person defending in a debate sits down and faces the challenger, who stands. The defender normally maintains a fairly mild appearance (until the debate gets hot), gesturing slightly with his hands, and answering quickly and concisely to points raised by the challenger.

The challenger, on the other hand, uses extensive body language to throw his opponent off. After the initial challenge, he stands sideways to his opponent, with his left foot forward. Each new assertion is accompanied by a stamp of the left foot, and a clap of the right hand on top of the left, where the rosary is strung around the arm. From time to time, the rosary is stretched back with the right hand as if aiming an arrow from a bow. This is an ancient debating custom, and in pictures of Master Dignaga or Master Dharmakirti we can still see the same gesture.

The rosary, as noted earlier, is also used in the selection of the initial challenger and defender. It is also an important tool for counting out lists of things, which are so popular in Buddhism: the two realities, the three Jewels, the four arya truths, the five paths, the six realms. . .and so on. During the course of a debate, the challenger and defender will often count out a list together on

their rosaries, to make sure both are in synch on the point. Very occasionally a debater will swing a rosary to make a point, although it is rare and unaccepted to actually strike the other party—it would be more common to strike your own thigh or palm to get a nice "thwock"!

Positioning in front of the opponent says a lot. When an opponent makes a very serious mistake or uses circular reasoning, you might swirl around in a spin and come down with a clap. If an opponent takes too long to answer a question or remember a quotation, you might turn your back and walk away a few strides, to feign disgust with his lack of preparation. Sometimes you might make rhetorical comments to the audience on both sides—"Where did he get that statement from? Sounds like a quotation from an autocommentary to a root text that was never written!"—and throw out your arms with your palms up, like "Who could ever debate with such a dummy!"

Sometimes you would get a bunch of your classmates up beside you to scream the same syllogism a few times in unison, with exactly the same claps and stamps: it looks like a chorus line or cheerleaders yelling Buddhist logic. Again, the whole point is that everyone learn to think quickly and clearly under pressure, which will help us all spread the teachings. The debates in Tibetan monasteries are refreshingly free of any of the American competitive attitude, and everybody is just excited about learning. In 15 years of debating in Tibetan monasteries, the American monk writing this account has never once been treated with any trace of disrespect or prejudice.

The classical presentation of a proposition in debate, after the initial challenge, has three parts, following the rules of formal logic established even a early as Lord Buddha himself. We first choose a subject, the thing we are going to debate about. One example would be "human beings." Then we choose a quality about them that we wish to prove to our opponent; for example, that they "have to die." Finally we choose a reason—which in Buddhist logic more often refers to the main thing mentioned in the reason as it is expressed—such as "being born." The entire proposition presented to the opponent then will look like this:



Consider human beings.



They do have to die,

Because they are born.

The defender listens to this proposition carefully, and then quickly prepares his answer in his mind. The very specific rules for answering will be covered in the reading for the next class.

Selection from the collected topics: **Quality and Characteristic**

Here is the sixth section: a presentation of quality and characteristic. For this presentation we will first refute the position of our opponents, then present our own position, and then finally eliminate their rebuttal.

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

Nothing which is a general category (in the sense of being a quality) can ever be a specific member of a category (in the sense of being characteristic of a quality).

Consider "working thing." So is it never then characteristic of a quality? Because it is a quality.

[It doesn't necessarily follow.]

But you already agreed that it does necessarily follow.

[It's not correct to say that "working thing" is a quality.]

Consider "working thing."

It is so a quality,

Because it has things which are characteristic of itself.

यदः स्त्रीम। प्रस्था स्त्रीम स्त्रिमा स्त्रीमा प्रस्था स्त्रामा स्त्रीमा स्त्रामा स

[It's not correct to say that "working thing" has things which are characteristic of itself.]

Consider "working thing."

It does so have things which are characteristic of itself, Because a water pitcher is one.

ल्लेस्य विश्वास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्याः विद्यास्त्र क्ष्याः विद्यास्त्र क्षयाः विद्यास्त्र क्ष्याः विद्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्याः विद्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्षयास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्षयः क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्य क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्ष्यास्त्र क्य

[It's not correct to say that a water pitcher is characteristic of "working thing."]

Suppose you say that it's not correct [to say that a water pitcher is characteristic of "working thing"].

Consider a water pitcher.

It is so characteristic of "working thing,"

Because (1) it is a working thing; (2) it shares a relationship with "working thing" such that to be it is to automatically be a working thing; and (3) there exist multiple other objects which are both not it, but still a working thing.

[The second part of the reason you gave is not correct.]

Suppose you say that the second part of the reason we gave is not correct. Consider a water pitcher.

It is so true, that it shares a relationship with "working thing" such that to be it is to automatically be a working thing,

Because (1) to be it is to automatically be a working thing; (2) it is something distinct from "working thing"; and (3) if there were no working things it could not never exist either.

[The first part of the last reason you gave is not correct.]

Suppose you say that the first part of the last reason we gave is not correct. Consider a water pitcher.

It is so, that to be a water pitcher is to automatically be a working thing, Because to be a water pitcher is by nature to be a working thing.

म्ब्रम्भः प्रमेश्वः प्रमेशः व्या व्यायः क्रियः व्या प्रमेशः प्

[The second part of the reason you gave is not correct.]

Suppose you say that the second part of the reason we gave is not correct. Consider a water pitcher.

It is so something distinct from "working thing," Because it is something physical.

द्रम्थायाश्वर्यायाः स्वापाया चुर्यायाः स्वायाः स्वयाः स्वयः स्वय

[The third part of the reason you gave is not correct.]

Suppose you say that the third part of the reason we gave is not correct. Consider a water pitcher.

It is so the case, that if there were no working things it could not never exist either,

Because if there were no working things, then you could make up anything at all.

म्पायतेगान्ति। स्वायान्यस्य प्रायान्ति। स्यायाः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वयः स्

[The third part of your original reason is not correct.]

Suppose you say that the third part of our original reason is not correct. Consider a water pitcher.

There do so exist multiple other objects which are both not it, but still a working thing,

Because a pillar of sandalwood is one, and a pillar of juniper is also one.

स्रायमायदेन्त्रम् न्द्रमाय्यक्षणायम् विश्वास्य विश्वास्य

[Then I agree to your original statement: "working thing" is never characteristic of a quality.]

Consider "working thing."
It is so characteristic of a quality,
Because it is characteristic of "knowable things."

यिन् भडीयात्र। रह्मास् क्र्यात्र स्त्रीया वित्र स्त्रात्त्र स्त्रीया वित्र स्त्र स्

[Your reason is not correct.]

Suppose you say that it is not correct [to say that "working thing" is characteristic of "knowable things"].

Consider "working thing."

It is so characteristic of "knowable things,"

Because (1) a working thing is a knowable thing; (2) it shares a relationship with "knowable things" such that to be it is to automatically be a knowable thing; and (3) there exist multiple objects which are both not a working thing, but still knowable thing.

यिक्षियात्राची नर्देश्वास्त्रिक्षेत्राची न्याने न्य

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

If something is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic, then it is always a quality of which "able to perform a function" is characteristic.

स्त्री वियायायमा अर्द्भन्तिः क्रम् द्रम् विदायायमा

Consider "thing to be defined."

So is it then a quality of which "able to perform a function" is characteristic? Because it is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic.

[It doesn't necessarily follow.]

But you already agreed that it does necessarily follow.

[It's not correct to say that "thing to be defined" is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic.]

Consider "thing to be defined."

It is so a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic,

Because "working thing" is characteristic of it.

[It's not correct to say that "working thing" is characteristic of "thing to be defined."]

Suppose you say that it's not correct [to say that "working thing" is characteristic of "thing to be defined"].

Consider "working thing."

It is so characteristic of "thing to be defined,"

Because (1) it is a thing to be defined; (2) it shares a relationship with "thing to be defined" such that to be it is to automatically be a thing to be defined; and (3) there do exist multiple other objects which are both not it and yet are still things to be defined.

[Then I agree with your original statement: "thing to be defined" is a quality of which "able to perform a function" is characteristic.]

Suppose you agree with our original statement, [saying that "thing to be defined" is a quality of which "able to perform a function" is characteristic].

It is not so, that "thing to be defined" is a quality of which "able to perform a function" is characteristic,

Because it ["able to perform a function'] is the definition of a working thing.

यिक्तियात्राची निर्देशस्त्रिक्षेत्रिक्षेत्रस्य भ्राप्ति भ्रापति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्रापति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्राप्ति भ्रापति भ्र

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

Anything which is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic must also be a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic.

यदः स्तुर वियायायम। भ्राप्त स्वायायम् वियायायम् अः स्वायदः श्रीः भ्राप्त स्वया प्रस्थाये स्थाये स्वायत् स्थाये स्वायत् स्थाये स्व

Consider "distinct from 'changing thing'."
So is it then a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic?
Because it is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic.

[It doesn't necessarily follow.]

But you already agreed that it does necessarily follow.

यां या से मिन्न प्राप्त के स्वाप्त प्रमा के स्वाप्त के

Suppose you say that it's incorrect to say [that "distinct from 'changing thing'" is a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic].

Consider "distinct from 'changing thing'."

It is so a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic,

Because "working thing" is characteristic of it.

[Then I agree with your original statement: "distinct from 'changing thing' " is a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic.]

Suppose you agree to our original statement, [saying that "distinct from 'changing thing" is a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic]. It's not so, that "distinct from 'changing thing' " is a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic,

Because "changing thing" is not characteristic of it.

अःत्युतः द्या अःह्याःयः केंश्यः उद्या अःह्याःयः नदः श्चः नदः श्चः नुः न्यः याः अवः यदः श्चः । अःह्याःयः नदः श्चः नदः अः अदः यदेः श्चेरः।

[It's not correct to say that "changing thing" is not characteristic of "distinct from 'changing thing'."]

Suppose you say that it's not correct [to say that "changing thing" is not characteristic of "distinct from 'changing thing' "].

Consider "changing thing."

It is so [not correct to say that it is characteristic of the quality of "distinct from 'changing thing',"]

Because it is not distinct from "changing thing."

वण'गे'यदग'सेद'धेद'यदे'सेूर।

[It's not correct to say that "changing thing" is not distinct from "changing thing."]

Suppose you say it's not correct [to say that "changing thing" is not distinct from "changing thing"].

It is so true, that it is not distinct from itself,

Because it is an example of something where the person has no nature of its own.

श्रदाच्यात्रात्री श्रुदेश्रुष्ट्रीष्ट्रात्यात्रीत्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्रात्रीत्यात्यात्रीत्यात्रीत्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्रीत्यात्यात्यात्रीत्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्या

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

There exists no one thing which is both (1) a quality of a quality of which something is characteristic, and also (2) characteristic of something which is characteristic of a certain quality.

रे : व्यर्ग्य स्याय दे ने : व्यव्य स्याय स

Isn't it though so, that there is such a thing? Because "unchanging thing" is just such a thing.

लूब.सयु.हुर। सयु.याख्र.श्रव्य.स.लूब.सर.वजा ब्रिट्-श्रुव्,श्रुव्,श्रुव्,लूब.स.याट.ख्र्या.चु.चया.याट.लूब. भ.यीय.थ। स्या.स.क्र्बा.श्र्या ब्रिट्-श्रुव्,श्रुव्,श्रुव्,लूद.लूबा च्रि.चया.याट.लूब.

[It's not correct to say that "unchanging thing" is one thing which is both (1) a quality of a quality of which something is characteristic, and also (2) characteristic of something which is characteristic of a certain quality.]

Consider "unchanging thing."

It is so one thing which is both (1) a quality of a quality of which something is characteristic, and also (2) characteristic of something which is

characteristic of a certain quality,

Because it is a quality of which "quality" is characteristic, and it is characteristic of the quality of "characteristic."

[The first part of your reason is not correct: it's not correct to say that "unchanging thing" is a quality of which "quality" is characteristic.]

Consider "unchanging thing."
It is so a quality of which "quality" is characteristic,
Because "quality" is something which is characteristic of it.

चयाःग्रोटःलुश्नःतदःयोषुःश्रर्धश्वःतःरीःशःचीयःतदःख्रीर। ब्रिट्राचीःचयाःलुश्ना ब्रिट्राचीःचयाःत्रट्याःयोश्वयाःप्रैःवच्चेत्रा ब्रिट्रःशःलुश्वःष्ठेः देयाश्वःयोश्वेश्वःतःशःचीयःश्वा स्वाःतःक्र्यःश्वरो च्रीःचयाःयोःचीःचयाःलुश्वःतरःचत्रा

[The second part of your reason is not correct: it's not correct to say that "unchanging thing" is characteristic of the quality of "characteristic."]

Suppose you disagree to the second part of our reason, [saying that it's not correct to say that "unchanging thing" is characteristic of the quality of "characteristic"].

Consider "unchanging thing."

It is so characteristic of the quality of "characteristic,"

Because (1) it is characteristic of a quality; (2) it has a relationship with "characteristic" such that to be it is to automatically be characteristic of a quality; and (3) there exist multiple things which are both not it, but still characteristic of a quality.

यिक्य । ह्यायदे हुँ। येव ह्यायदे तुः त्रायदे तुः त्रायदे तुः त्रायदे तुः त्रायदे त्राया स्वाय ।

Someone may come and make the following claim:

Nothing which is a quality of which "unchanging thing" is characteristic can ever be characteristic of the quality "unchanging thing."

क्रैंक्श्यवा देरावया देवाधिरा

Consider "quality."

So is it then never characteristic of the quality "unchanging thing"? Because it is a quality of which "unchanging thing" is characteristic.

देर बया ह्या यां ब्रिंद ग्री ही द्या धेर पद ही रा

[It's incorrect to say that "quality" is a quality of which "unchanging thing" is characteristic.]

It is so a quality of which "unchanging thing" is characteristic, Because "unchanging thing" is characteristic of the quality "quality."

[It's incorrect to say that "unchanging thing" is characteristic of the quality "quality."]

It is so characteristic of the quality "quality,"

Because (1) "unchanging thing" is a quality; (2) "unchanging thing" has a relationship with "quality" such that to be "unchanging thing" is to automatically be a quality; and (3) there exist multiple things which are both not an unchanging thing, but still a quality.

[Then I agree with your original statement: "quality" is never characteristic of the quality "unchanging thing."]

Suppose you agree with our original statement, [saying that "quality" is never characteristic of the quality "unchanging thing"].

Consider "quality."

It is so characteristic of the quality "unchanging thing,"

Because (1) it is an unchanging thing; (2) it has a relationship with

"unchanging thing" such that to be "quality" is to automatically be an unchanging thing; and (3) there exist multiple things which are both not "quality," but still an unchanging thing.

यिक्य । रहेर् रहेर स्त्री स्त्री प्रमान स्त्री स्त्

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

It's not necessarily the case that anything which is a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic can never be characteristic of the quality "changing thing."

शेवबर्दी र्रेशर्येवे श्वेर्राट्ये सेवे ही प्रवासी के सम्मिन्य सेवे श्वेर

But this is incorrect,

Because there exists nothing which is both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and which is also characteristic of the quality "changing thing."

[It's not correct to say that there exists nothing which is both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and also characteristic of the quality "changing thing."]

It is so [correct to say that there exists nothing which is both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and which is also characteristic of the quality "changing thing"],

Because there exists neither an unchanging version nor a changing version [of something which is both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and which is also characteristic of the quality "changing thing"].

र्यायाध्येत्रम् ह्यायाध्येत्रम् र्येश्वर्षः वित्ययत् स्वर्षः वित्ययाध्येत्रम् । स्वर्षः वित्ययाध्येत्रम् । स्वर्षः वित्ययाध्येत्रम् । स्वर्षः वित्ययाध्येत्रम् ।

[It's not correct to say that there exists no unchanging version.]

The first point in the reason is so [—that is, it is correct to say that there exists no unchanging version of something which both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and which is also characteristic of the quality "changing thing"],

Because something which is an unchanging thing can never be characteristic of the quality "working thing";

Which is to say, if something is unchanging, it can never be a working thing.

य्या स्वास्त्र स

[It's not correct to say there exists no changing version.]

The second point in our reason is so [—that is, it is correct to say that there exists no changing version of something which both a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic and which is also characteristic of the quality "changing thing"],

Because if there existed a changing thing that could be a quality of which "changing thing" is characteristic, then you could make up anything at all.

रदःरेश्वःद्र्यःस्यायः क्ष्यः द्र्यः द्रयः द्र्यः द्रः द्र्यः द्र

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim regarding our statement that, if something is a working thing, it can never be a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic:

Consider the fact that sound is a changing thing.

Is it then [not a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic]?

Because it is a working thing.

Our definitive answer would be to say, "It's not correct [to say that this fact is a working thing"].

[Then I agree with the original statement: the fact that sound is a changing thing is not a quality of which "working thing" is characteristic.]

But you cannot agree to the original statement,

Because the fact that sound is a changing thing is a quality of which "working things" is characteristic,

Because working things are characteristic of the fact that sound is a changing thing.

देरा द्राप्त प्राप्त स्वापाय स्वापाय

[It's not correct to say that working things are characteristic of the fact that sound is a changing thing.]

It is so [correct to say that working things are characteristic of the fact that sound is a changing thing],

Because (1) working things are "sound is a changing thing"; (2) working things are related to "sound is a changing thing" in such a way that to be a working thing is to automatically be "sound is a changing thing"; and (3) there exist multiple other things which are both not a working thing and yet still "sound is a changing thing."

हम्बार्स्यः सार्चे स्वाप्तः विराद्यः प्याप्तः देवायः देवाय

[The final part of your reason is not correct; that is, it is not correct to say that there exist multiple other things which are both not a working thing and yet still "sound is a changing thing."]

The final part of our reason is so true; [that is, it is correct to say that there exist multiple other things which are both not a working thing and yet are still "sound is a changing thing"],

Because "existing things" are one, and "unchanging things" are one as well.

देर खला चर्चा खेर क्षेत्र का सुरक्षे ह्वा या क्षेत्र प्रका विचाय है स

[It's wrong to say that "existing things" and "unchanging things" are things which are both not a working thing and yet are still "sound is a changing thing."]

It is so [correct, to say that "existing things" and "unchanging things" are things which are both not a working thing and yet are still "sound is a changing thing"],

Because anything which has no self-nature is always "sound is a changing thing."

यि उँगात रो ह्रेंदि हो न्या प्येत ता नर्देश रेंदि हो न्या प्येत प्रशास्त्र ना नर्देश रेंदि हो न्या प्रशास निवास निव

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

Anything which is characteristic of the quality "mental object" is also always characteristic of the quality "working thing."

र्ट्यास्त्रम् वियामायमा रेट्यास्त्रम् वियामायमा

Consider the two of valid perception and reflection that act as a cause for a working thing.

So are they then [characteristic of the quality "working thing"]? Because they are [characteristic of the quality "mental object"].

[It doesn't necessarily follow.]

But you already agreed that it does necessarily follow.

[It's incorrect to say that the two of valid perception and reflection that act as a cause for a working thing are characteristic of the quality "mental object."]

Suppose you say that it's incorrect [to say that the two of valid perception and reflection that act as a cause for a working thing are characteristic of the quality "mental object"].

They are so [characteristic of the quality "mental object"],

Because (1) the two of them are mental objects; (2) they share a relationship with "mental object" such that to be the two of them is to automatically be the mental object; and (3) there exist multiple things which are not the two of them but are still mental objects.

ब्र.२२.२.चीयःतपुःसुर। तरःबता क्षांत्राद्धिरानुःलटानुःलुवा क्र्यात्रान्यानुःलटानुःलुवा नुःचाक्षेत्रात्यस्त्रःस्व २८.स्.२८.चाक्षेत्रात्तःस्री चार्शेत्रात्तात्राचीयःव। नुःवरःचपुःचाष्ट्वात्रात्र्येतःस्वरःस्वरः

The first and second parts of our reason are easy to accept; suppose you say that the third is not correct; [which is to say, there do not exist multiple things which are both not the two of valid perception and reflection, but which are still mental objects].

It is so true, that there exist multiple things which are both [not the two of valid perception and reflection, but which are still mental objects],

Because omniscience is just such a thing, and valid perception is just such a thing—the two do exist as separate things.

यन्याः यहेन् व ने के व्यापायाः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स

[Then I agree with your original statement: the two are characteristic of the quality "working thing."]

Suppose you agree with our original statement.

Consider these same two.

They are not so—they are not characteristic of the quality "working thing," Because they cannot share a relationship with "working thing" such that to be them is to automatically be the working thing.

मानुवान। दे के मान्या दे का से विकास के साम के साम हो।

[It's not correct to say that they cannot share a relationship with "working thing" such that to be them is to automatically be the working thing.]

Suppose you say that it's not correct [to say that they cannot share a relationship with "working thing" such that to be them is to automatically be the working thing].

Consider these same two.

It is so correct [to say that they cannot share a relationship with "working thing" such that to be them is to automatically be the working thing], Because they are the cause of the working thing.

Our reason is easy to accept.

यम्नेश्वास्त्रास्त्राच्या श्रेतिःसर्वन्तेनःस्त्री रत्यो याश्वास्यायः श्रेतःस्यः वर्षेत्राचित्रः स्त्रेत्ये स्त्ये स्त्रेत्ये स्त्रे

Here secondly is the part where we present our own position. There does exist a definition of "something general," because "any existing thing which subsumes its members" is the definition.

ब्रैं त्या श्रुष्ठ प्रदेश स्त्र त्या श्रुष्ठ प्रदेश स्त्र त्या श्रुष्ठ स्त्र स्त्र श्रुष्ठ स्त्र स्त्र श्रुष्ठ स्त्र स्त्र श्रुष्ठ स्त्र स्

Nominally speaking, things that are "general" may be divided into three different types: general things as far as types, general things as far as objects, and general things as far as collections of parts.

रेग्रश्चुिते अर्क्ष किरार्थेर दे। रदा यो रेग्रश्च स्वार्य स्वार्थ स्व

There does exist a definition of a "general thing as far as types" (or "quality"), because "that existing thing which subsumes the multiple things which are of its type" is the definition.

A classical example of a "general thing as far as types" (or "quality") does exist, because "knowable things" is one.

तुमायदे देव हुँदे मर्कद केट प्येट दे। तुमादहेव हेवायाया तुमायामा प्येत पत्वेत ट्र

यश्चात्रः श्रूटः चर्दे श्रूरः चर्दे श्रूरः चर्दे श्रूरः चर्दे श्रुरः चर्दे श्रूरः चर्दे श्रूरे श्रूरः चर्दे श्रूरे श्रूर

There does exist a definition of a "general thing as far as objects" (or "actual mental image") relating to a water pitcher, because it is the following: "That element which is imputed to be the water pitcher, but which is not: that thing which appears to be the water pitcher to the conceptual state of mind which is perceiving a water pitcher, but which is however not the water pitcher."

A classical example of a "general thing as far as objects" (or "actual mental image") does exist, because "the appearance, to the second instant of a conceptual state of mind which is perceiving a water pitcher, of the opposite of all that is not the water pitcher of the second instant" is just this kind of example.

र्देग्रम् हुैते अर्द्ध हिर् अर्द्ध ग्रिक्त मिले र्लेन्द्री युक्त यात्र स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

There does exist a definition of a "general thing as far as a collection of parts," because it is the following: "A gross physical object which is composed of its multiple parts."

Classical examples of a "general thing as far as a collection of parts" do exist, because a water pitcher or a pillar would each be one.

There does exist one thing which is both a "general as far as a collection of parts" and a "general as far as types" (or "quality), because the water pitcher would be one.

र्स्याबाश्चीः आध्येषः यान्दा। देवाबाश्चीयेः वालिः अञ्चर र्धेनः र्धेनः र्धेनः निषान्तः ने ने र्यायाः श्चीयः विषान्तः ने र्यायाः श्चीयः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यानः विष्

There does exist one thing which is both not a "general as far as a collection of parts" and yet still a "general as far as types" (or "quality"), because "knowable things" would be one.

र्मया श्री अप्याप्त स्थाप के स्थाप श्री के स्थाप श्री के स्थाप स्

There does exist one thing which is both not a "general as far as types" (or "quality") and yet still a "general as far as a collection of parts," because the two of a pillar and a pitcher would be one.

यक्षिर्ने स्वाप्त स्वा

There does exist one thing which is neither a "general as far as types" ("quality") nor a "general as far as a collection of parts," because the two of "changing things" and "unchanging things" would be one.

ग्रीशक्तां न्या क्षेत्र क्

There does exist a definition of a "member" (or "something characteristic of a particular quality"), because "an existing object which is an example of a particular type which subsumes it" is this very definition.

The forms of debate: The Two Responses to a Statement of a Reason

The great beauty of debate is that, assuming both parties stick to the rules of logic, we must arrive at truth. If the attacker in any particular exchange poses a series of questions in a correct, logical order, all the defender must do is give very simple answer reflecting his own beliefs—answers like "yes," or "no"—and sooner or later the truth will out. This is much like the way in which a computer program works, with switches at each logical decision point, turned "on" or "off" to indicate "yes" or "no"—and then continue on to this branch, and answer "yes" or "no," until the flowchart takes you where you must eventually go.

In an actual debate, the attacker will give his assertion in three parts: the statement of the subject, the quality to be proven about the subject, and the

reason why this quality must be one that the subject possesses. He or she might say, for example,

Consider sounds.
They are changing things,
Because they are something hot to touch.

Here "sounds" are the subject, "being a changing thing" is the quality we are trying to prove about them, and "because they are things that are something hot to touch" is the full statement of the reason we give to prove that this quality does apply to the subject in question.

This is the most common form of logical statement in a Buddhist debate, and in Tibetan ends with the word *chir*, which is the word for "because." (In Tibetan sentence order, the "because" comes at the end.) A defender who hears a statement ending in *chir* immediately begins to think of two possible answers.

The first answer is *tak ma drup* (*rtags ma grub*), which basically means, "the reason you gave doesn't apply to the subject." In our case above this is to say, "It's incorrect to say that sounds are something hot to touch."

Suppose that the attacker had instead made the following statement:

Consider sounds. They are changing things, Because they exist.

Here it would be incorrect to answer tak ma drup, or "the reason you gave doesn't apply to the subject," because it is true that "existing" applies to

"sounds"—that is, sounds do exist. Instead, the defender would answer *kyappa ma jung* (*khyab pa ma byung*), or "it doesn't necessarily follow." This is the same as saying, "I admit it's true that sounds exist, but it doesn't necessarily follow then that they have to be changing things." After all, there are things—like emptiness or empty space—which exist but are not changing things.

Both of these answers are equivalent to saying "no," but for different reasons. They are the two classic answers because, if we assume a debate is about to take place, the attacker should begin with something to argue about—something the defender does not accept.

There are times in a debate though where an attacker is attempting to establish a certain context—trying to get the defender to accept one thing in order to go on to something else that he or she does not accept. An example would be the following:

Consider sounds.
They are changing things,
Because they are things that are made.

This is a correct statement, and so the defender answers "yes" or "right." The way to give such an answer in the Tibetan language is to simply repeat the verb that the opponent has used in his or her statement. With this last statement, for example, the defender would simply say, *Yin!*—or "They are!" meaning, "Yes! They are things that are made!"

The last thing to know about these answers is: *Think carefully before you choose which one to say!* It's quite acceptable in a debate to mull over your opening response carefully, since this already decides which side of the truth you will end up at, when both you and your opponent reach the inevitable conclusion of the flowchart.

Formal logic subject:
The definition of a correct logical statement,
and the three relationships

यशिषा भक्ष संस्वाश्रास्त्रीयात्री स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्यानित स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्थानित स्यानित स्थानित स्थ

Here secondly we will explain the definition of a correct reason.

A correct reason is defined as:

A reason where the three relationships hold.

What are the three relationships? They are the following three: the relationship between the subject and the reason; the positive necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven; and the reverse necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven. Here now we will give the definition, classical examples, and supporting arguments for each.

Here is the first. The "relationship between the subject and the reason" in any particular proof is defined as holding when:

The reason is ascertained through valid perception to be something that only applies to the subject of the proof—the object about which the opponent entertains his doubt—in the way asserted.

The "positive necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven" in any particular proof is defined as holding when:

The reason is ascertained through valid perception to be something that only applies to the group of similar cases for the proof, in the way asserted.

न् श्रुपःग्रीःन्र्सःग्रीःपश्च्याद्यतेःर्र्सःग्रीःन्द्र्यःगःन्यःयःश्वेनःश्वेनःग्रीःसःन्श्यःनःश्वेनःग्रीःसःन्यः सञ्जद्याद्यायःयःयर्गेनःर्द्ध्यःन्यःसञ्जद्यःयःस्वेनःयःश्वेनःयःश्वेनःयःभ्वेनःयःभ्वेनःग्रीःसःन्। नेः श्रुपःग्रीःर्वेनाःग्रिपःग्रीःसर्वनःश्वेन।

The "reverse necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven" in any particular proof is defined as holding when:

The reason is ascertained through valid perception to be something that only fails to apply to the group of dissimilar cases for the proof, in the way asserted, due to its relationship to the general type represented by the explicit form of the quality to be proven.

द्र्याप्यास्त्रम् भेरात्राची में प्राप्त स्त्रम् स्त्रम्

These definitions, however, are only meant to convey the principal sense of what each relationship is; something can, however, satisfy one of them and still not be a correct reason. Sound, for example, satisfies all three of these definitions in a proof that sound is a changing thing, but is none of the things defined by any of the three.

म्नु भे ह्मा पर सुराय देर्ग् न्या क्षेत्र क्ष

Suppose we now relate these in more detail, to specific applications. The holding of the "relationship between the subject and the reason in a proof where sound is proven to be a changing thing" can be defined as:

The reason is such that—

- (1) "Sound" provides the subject about which the opponent entertains doubt, in a proof where the particular thing is being used as a reason in the proof that sound is a changing thing; and
- (2) This particular thing is also ascertained by a valid perception only to apply to sound, in the way asserted—while it is also the case that it and sound are separate from each other.

स्वान्यर स्वान्य स्वान्यर स्वान्य स्वान्य स्वान्यय स्वान्य स्वान्

The holding of the "positive necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven in a proof where sound is proven to be a changing thing" can be defined as:

The reason is such that—

- (1) There does exist a correct "similar example," incorporating both the reason and the quality to be proven;
- (2) The reason is related to "changing thing"; and
- (3) The reason is ascertained through valid perception to be something that only applies to the group of similar cases in the way asserted, in a proof where sound is proven to be an unchanging thing.

स्विष्यात्रात्रात्रात्र्यंत्रम्यात्रम्यत्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यत्यस्यत्यत्रम्यत्यत्रम्यत्रम्यत्रम्यत्यस्यत्यस्यत्यस्यत्रम्यत्रम्यत्रम्यत्



The holding of the "negative necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven in a proof where sound is proven to be a changing thing" can be defined as:

The reason is such that—

- (1) There does exist a correct "dissimilar example," involving both the reason and the quality to be proven;
- (2) The reason is related to "changing thing"; and
- (3) The reason is ascertained through valid perception to be something that only fails to apply to the group of dissimilar cases in the way asserted, in a proof where sound is proven to be an unchanging thing.

इस्यावित्र क्रियाचित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चित्रः स्वान्यः यश्चित्रः स्वान्यः स

Here is the classical example. "Something which is made" is an example where, in a proof where "something which is made" is being used as the reason to prove that sound is something changing, all three hold: the relationship between the subject and the reason; the positive necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven; and the negative necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven.

Selection from the collected topics: Subjects and Objects

The study of subject states of mind, and of the wide variety of objects actually involved in a perception involving these states of mind, is one of the most important and intriguing subjects in the study of the Buddhist logic schools. This particular topic is covered most thoroughly in a monastic textbook from Drepung Tibetan Monastery popularly known as The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son (Sras bsdus-grva), by Master Ngawang Trashi—the spiritual son of the great Jamyang Shepa (1648-1721).

Here we will give a presentation on objects and subjects.

भ्राप्तः स्त्रीत्यायाया याया स्त्राची स्वर्धित स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्राची स्वर्धित स्त्राची स्त्राची

Here secondly is the presentation of our own position.

There does exist a definition of an object, because it is the following:

Anything which is apprehended by a valid perception.

खुवान्दर: र्वेन्यान्दरम्बवान्य मुस्रसः र्नेत्रमिष्ठम् । खुवान्य निष्ठेत्रः विष्ठेत्रः विष्ठेत्रः विष्ठेत्रः वि

"Objects" and "existing objects" and "objects apprehended by the mind" are all synonamous. Objects can be divided into two types: the two of working things and unchanging things.

Working things can be divided into five different kinds: (1) the heap of physical matter, (2) the heap of feeling, (3) the heap of discrimination, (4) the heap of other factors, and (5) the heap of consciousness.

याञ्चयात्राणीःसुराधेदेशम्बद्धत्रा । स्रामी स्रामी

There does exist a definition of the heap of physical matter, because it is:

That thing which can be pointed to as being physical matter, and which incorporates its many different parts.

याञ्चियात्राणीःसुराधेरिताञ्चयात्रायाञ्चेत्रार्थेत्राचीञ्चयात्राणीःसुराधेर्याः याञ्चयात्राणीःसुराधेर्याः याञ्चयात्राणीःसुराधेरा

The two expressions "heap of physical matter" and "physical matter" both refer to the same thing. The heap of physical matter can be divided into two groups: outer physical matter and inner physical matter.

Outer physical matter can be divided into five types, ranging from the gateway of form up to the gateway of tangible objects. Inner physical matter can also be divided into five, ranging from the sense power of the eye up to the sense power of the body.

स्याप्तर स्वाप्त स्वाप स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

There does exist a definition of the heap of feeling, because it is the following:

Something which incorporates its many parts, and which is the mental function of experience, which of its own accord experiences its particular object.

सद्यः मुन्यः सुरः स्प्रान्तः सूद्यः प्रदूषः मुन्यः स्वयः सुद्यः स्वयः सुद्यः स्वयः सुद्यः स्वयः सुद्यः सुद्यः स्वयः सुद्यः सुद्य

The two terms "heap of feeling" and "feeling" both refer to the same thing. The heap of feeling can be divided into six different types: feeling which occurs due to contact involving the eye; feeling which occurs due to contact involving the ear; feeling which occurs due to contact involving the nose; feeling which occurs due to contact involving the tongue; feeling which occurs due to contact involving the body, and feeling which occurs due to contact involving the mind.

Feeling can be divided more finely into eighteen different types, which are arrived at by dividing each of the six above into three of pleasure, pain, and neutral feeling.

There does exist a definition of the heap of discrimination, because it is the following:

That mental function which is established by virtue of its grasping, of its own accord, to the distinguishing features of its object; and which incorporates its many parts.

यदःविषाणुःसुराधंन्दा यद्विषाणिष्ठशःद्वाणिषा । प्रतःविषाणिष्ठशःधंन्दी। सर्वतःसरायद्वेत्रायदेःयद्वाविषान्दा यण्याः यरायदेवा । प्रतः विषाणिष्ठशःधंन्दी। सर्वतःस्वरः

The two terms "heap of discrimination" and "discrimination" both refer to the same thing. Discrimination can be divided into two types: the kind which grasps to features, and the kind which grasps to symbols.

स्रवः स्रवः

We can posit different types of discrimination of the kind which grasps to features, because these would be the following five different kinds:

- 1) Discrimination which results from contact involving the eye;
- 2) Discrimination which results from contact involving the ear;
- 3) Discrimination which results from contact involving the nose:
- 4) Discrimination which results from contact involving the tongue; and
- 5) Discrimination which results from contact involving the body.

नग्रान्यर वहें ब्रायते वर्षे व्याप्त विष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या

We can also posit a type of discrimination of the kind which grasps to symbols, because this would be the discrimination that results from contact involving the mind.

तर्निराग्नी:स्राप्तराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तियानी:स्राप्तिराधिकायानी:स्राप्तियानी:स्रापतियानी:स्राप्तियानी:स्रापतियानी:स्

There does exist a definition of the heap of other factors, because it is the following:

That which (1) consists of those working things which do not belong to any one or number of the heaps of physical matter, feeling, discrimination, or consciousness; and which (2) incorporates its many parts.

यर् होर्ग्णे स्ट्रां र्रायर् होर्ग्याकेश र्वि यार्डेया । यर् होर्ग्यार् होर्ग्या हेश्य वर्षेत्र । वर्षेत्र होर् वर्षेत्र हो। स्वरं श्रेव प्वरं होर्ग्य स्वरं होर्ग्या हेश्य वर्षेत्र ।

The terms "heap of other factors" and "other factors" both refer to the same thing. Other factors can be divided into two kinds: those other factors which are changing things that are neither physical nor mental; and those other factors which are linked with mind.

स्व सेन प्रत्ति । प्रति । प्रत्ति । प्रति । प

There is a definition of those other factors which are changing things that are neither physical nor mental:

Those things which (1) are other factors, and which (2) are differentiated by not having any state of mind which is linked with them.

मर्जन माले ने प्लें र दे। दर्श में दे प्लेन पन में मुरा

There is a classical example of this kind of other factor, and that is working things.

There is a definition of those other factors which are linked with the mind:

Those things which (1) are other factors, and which (2) are differentiated by having some state of mind which is linked with them.

मर्ब्दमान्त्रम् वर् हिरायान् हो स्रो स्रोम्सा हुराले न्या प्येन् हो। र्के रायान्य वर्

तयुःस्त्रीर। विश्वानिश्वेशःस्त्यश्चाविष्यःतयुःश्रेशशाचिदः वश्वश्चात्रः स्त्रिश्चेरः स्त्रियः विश्वः स्त्रियः स्त्रियः स्त्र

Other factors which are linked with mind may be divided into 49 different mental functions. This is because all mental functions other than the two of feeling and discrimination are other factors linked with mind.

इसायर विश्वायदे सुदारे दि शक्त के दि स्थाय स्था

There is a definition of the heap of consciousness:

(1) A state of mind which is an awareness of something other than itself, and which has mental functions occurring in conjunction with it; and which (2) incorporates its many parts.

यात्रया । इस्रायत्र विश्व याद्य सुद्र र्यो द्राया । इस्रायत्र विश्व याद्य । इस्रायत्र विश्व याद्य सुद्र र्यो स्थायत्र सुद्र रायत्र सुद्

The expressions "heap of consciousness" and "consciousness" and "mind" and "awareness" are all synonymous.

The heap of consciousness may be divided into six parts, being the six from eye consciousness up to consciousness of your awareness.

खुवारुद्याची सर्वा केरा केरा केरा केरा केरा है। सरा खुवा वा वह वा सदे के सारे के सारे खेरा वि

There is the following definition of a subject:

Any existing thing which engages in its object.

लेता.१४.जारीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्यात्रीया.सूर्याया.स्याया.सूर्या.सूर्याया.सूर्या.सूर्याया.सूर्याया.सूर्याया.सूर्याया.सूर्याया.स्याया.सूर्या.सूर्

Subjects may be divided into three different types: states of mind; subjects that are something physical; and subjects which are something changing which is neither physical nor mental.

There exists the following definition of perception:

That which is invisible and aware.

The expressions "perception" and "state of mind" are synonymous. Perception may be divided into to two parts: the mind's perception of itself (apperception), and the mind's perception of something other than itself.

There exists the following definition of apperception:

The aspect of the mind which apprehends.

रदःरेयाः ददः रेयाः अद्भः शुअः याष्ठे र्देषः याष्ठेयाः । अर्द्धः याष्ट्रेशः अद्भः याष्ट्रेशः अद्भः याष्ट्रेशः अद्भः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशः याष्ट्रेशेशः याष्ट्रेशेशः याष्ट्रेशेशः याष्ट्रेशेशः याष्ट्

The expressions "apperception" and "direct apperception" are synonymous.

There is a classical example of apperception, and that is the mind's perception of itself in which you experience your eye consciousness of the color blue.

The mind's perception of things other than itself may be divided into two types: [main] mind and mental functions.

योर्यर पु तर्वो पु ता क्षी अध्या प्रेर प्रवेश विश्वाय प्रेर प्रवेश प्रवेश के प्रवेश प्रवेश के प्

The definition of "mind" is the same as what we gave before [as the definition of perception].

There is a definition of a mental function:

That perception which has a main mind that it exists in conjunction with.

क्रेंब-र्येच । ७.११्व.५.५१ थे। २म्.म.म.व्याक्रमा म्याव्याः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वीतः स्वात्यः स्वीतः स्वात्य इत्यात्या । १९.११्व.५.५१ थे। २म्.म.म.व्याः स्वीतः स्वात्यः स्वात्यः स्वात्यः स्वात्यः स्वात्यः स्वात्यः स्वात्

Mental functions may be divided into 51 different types. These are the omnipresent five; the five that determine how their object is perceived; the six primary mental afflictions; the 20 secondary mental afflictions; the eleven virtuous mental functions; and the four variable mental functions.

मुद्गारकों ख्रायदेव रहेवा धेरा विद्या विद्या के अध्याया सेवाया धेर

There is a certain way of enumerating the five ominpresent mental functions: feeling, discrimination, movement of the mind, contact, and direction of the mind.

. .वेश्वर्यान्यः व्यवित्रः व्यवित्ते । वर्ष्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व

There is a certain way of enumerating the five mental functions that determine how their object is perceived: volition, wish, memory, concentration, and intelligence.

अर्जन्यन्त्रम् व्हान्यन्ता वे के क्षान्यन्ता वित्वित्ता प्रकृषान्या अर्जन्यन्ता व्हान्यन्ता वे के क्षान्यन्ता वित्वित्ता प्रकृषान्या

There is a certain way of enumerating the six primary mental afflictions: ignorant desire, anger, pride, ignorance, mistaken views, and harmful doubt.

स्त्रियायान्त्रीत्यास्य प्राप्ति विद्यास्य प्राप्ति स्वराधि स

Mistaken views may be divided into five: perishable view, extreme view, wrong view, the view that holds mistaken views as being best, and the view that harmful codes of behavior and asceticisms are the best.

के.ब्रेंब.ब्रेंच.ल्.वर्डेब.ब्रंब.ल्.ल्.ट्री चब्र.क्ष्य.र्ट्यांच्टा चब्र.क्ष्य.चान्नेश्रायाचानेश्रा

There is a certain way of enumerating the 20 secondary mental afflictions, and this is to divide them into the first and the second sets of ten.

चरुः र्वत्र न्द्र स्वार्चियाः प्रियः न्द्र । विष्यः न्द्र । विष्य

There is the following way of enumerating the first set of ten secondary mental afflictions: irritation, rancor, concealing one's faults, resentment, jealousy, stinginess, deceit, feigning, conceit, and malice.

विष्यं विषयं विषय

There is the following way of enumerating the second set of ten secondary mental afflictions: lack of shame, lack of consideration, mental dullness, mental agitation, lack of faith, laziness, lack of care, forgetting the object, lack of mindfulness, and distraction.

नवीः वाच दुः वाद्वेवा व्यवेद्या व्यवेदा विकाय देश विकाय

There is the following way of enumerating the eleven virtuous mental functions: a sense of shame, a sense of consideration, a lack of liking things ignorantly, a lack of disliking things ignorantly, a lack of ignorance, faith, pliancy, care, equanimity, joyful effort, and the avoidance of harm to others.

वर्षेत्रप्रत्या वर्षेत्रप्रत्याभेत्रप्र क्षेत्रप्रविष्य वर्षेत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्षेत्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्रप्रविष्य वर्येत्य

There is the following way in which the four variable mental functions should be enumerated: the pair of rough awareness and finer awareness, sleep, and regret.

द्धेरा इंरा

We can set forth an example of a subject which is one of those changing things that is neither physical nor mental, for it would be a person.

याच्चयार्थार्थ्यः स्थार्थः स्यार्थः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्थः स्थार्यः स्थायः स्थार्यः स्यार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थायः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्यः स्थार्

We can further set forth an example of a subject which is something physical, for it would be those five ranging from the sense power of the eye up to the sense power of the body.

Perception may be divided into two types: states of mind that are valid perceptions, and those which are not valid perceptions.

There is the following definition of valid perception: that which is a fresh, unerring perception.

Valid perception may be divided into two types: direct valid perception and deductive valid perception.

There is the following definition of direct valid perception: fresh, unerring perception which is free of discursive thought.

यदः स्त्रीम। स्त्रः स्त्रीम। स्त्रः प्रीयः प्रेयः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्रः स् स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त

Direct valid perception may be divided into six different types, ranging from direct valid perception in the form of eye consciousness up to direct valid perception in the form of consciousness of one's awareness.

इस्रान्यवान्वीः क्रन् स्वतः सक्रम् स्वतः होनः स्वतः निष्यान्तः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः । स्वार्ने संपत्ते स्वतः स

There is the following definition of deductive valid perception: that which is (1) a fresh, unerring perception and (2) a state of perception wherein one believes, one holds, terms and their referents in a manner where they are mixed together.

हेशन्यमात्यन्त्रीत्यम्बुअप्पेन्नी नर्देशः क्षेत्रश्रीहेशन्यमान्दा य्वायश

यवै:हेर्रान्यमान्दा धेर्क्राणीहेर्रान्यमान्दाम्बुर्राधेरायवै:धुरा

Deductive valid perception may be divided into three types: deductive valid perception based on logical reasoning; deductive valid perception based on convention; and deductive valid perception based on credible authority.

र्ट्यः र्स्ट्रेययः ग्रीः हेयः द्ययाः यत्वाः त्राः प्रेरितः हो स्वाः यतः हेयायः यदेः हेया द्याः विवाः त्राः स्व

We can set forth an example of deductive valid perception based on logical reasoning, for it would be the deductive perception with which one realizes that sound is a changing thing.

We can set forth an example of deductive valid perception based on convention, for it would be the deductive perception with which one realizes that the moon can be referred to as the "home of the rabbit."

[Translator's note: In India and Tibet, by tradition, the patterns on the face of the moon were thought to suggest the shape of a rabbit, and the moon was sometimes called the "home of the rabbit."]

We can set forth an example of deductive valid perception based on credible authority, for it would be valid perception based on scriptural authority.

र्यतः श्रीतः श्रीः त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां श्री अप्ते त्रां श्रीत्र श्रीत्र । अप्ते त्रां श्रीत्र श्रीत्र । अप्ते त्रीत्र श्रीत्र ।

States of mind which are not valid perception may be divided into three different types: a failure to perceive something; perceptions which are wrong; and doubt.

We can set forth an example of a failure to perceive something, for it would be all those cases where an object presents itself to one's perceptions but one fails to grasp it.

Perceptions which are wrong may be divided into two different types: perceptions which are wrong and constitute discursive thought; and perceptions which are wrong and do not constitute discursive thought.

We can set forth examples of perceptions which are wrong and constitute discursive thought, for they would be something like the thought that sound is unchanging, or the tendency to hold that the person has some nature of its own.

We can set forth examples of perceptions which are wrong and do not constitute discursive thought; individual cases would be a sense consciousness wherein one perceived a snow mountain as being blue, or a sense consciousness wherein one perceived a mirage as being real water.

We can set forth an example of doubt, for it would be the doubt wherein one wonders to oneself whether sound is something unchanging or something that changes.

There is the following definition of evident reality: that thing which can be directly realized through a direct valid perception. The expressions "evident reality" and "working things" refer to one and the same thing.

There is the following definition of hidden reality: that thing which can be directly realized through a deductive valid perception. The expressions "hidden reality" and "existence" refer to one and the same thing.

Formal logic subject:

An Introduction to the Types of Correct Logical Statements, and a Discussion of Logical Statements which Use a Result

य्या अश्वतः स्वायाध्याः द्वाः क्याः विद्याः विद्याः क्याः विद्याः विद्याः

Here third is our explanation of correct reasons. Our presentation will be made in six parts: in divisions based on basic nature; on the quality to be proven; on how the proof is made; on the statement to be proven; on the relationship to the group of similar cases; and on the opponent.

प्रत्यं व्यवस्त्रम्यायः प्रत्यं प्रत्यं या स्वायः स्वयः स्वय

Here is the first of these, [the division based on basic nature]. Here there are three types of correct reasons: those that involve a result, those that involve a nature, and those used to prove the absence of something.

We will discuss the first of these in four parts: its definition; its divisions; an explanation of the valid perception used to confirm that the definition applies properly to a definitive example; and an identification of the various elements, such as the reason, the quality to be proven, and the subject.

याले अञ्चर श्रेन्यनो विंत्रने स्त्रुच के स्वाया अपन्य प्राया विंत्र के स्वाया के स्वया के स्वाया के स्वया के स्वाया के स्वया के स्वया के स्वया के स्वाया के स्वया क

Here is the first. The definition for something which is a correct reason involving a result for any particular proof is as follows:

It must first be a correct, positive reason for a particular proof. Secondly, there must exist one thing which is both (1) something considered the explicit quality to be proven in the proof where it serves as a reason; and (2) also its cause.

The forms of debate: The Two Responses to a Statement of Necessity

In Reading Four, we discussed the statement of a necessity—which is most often expressed as a sarcastic rejoinder to an unacceptable proposition by the opponent. Remember the example we gave before:

If something is the color of a flower, it must always be a white color.

भे में ना नी ना में ना प्येत ता ना में ना माने नाम में प्येत प्येत निमा

Our sarcastic reply was,

Consider the color of a red rose. So is it then a white color? Because it is the color of a flower.

The phrase "so is it?" in Tibetan is *tel*, whenever this is spoken in a debate that voice drops in a sarcastic tone (when the voice rises in *tel*, it means *it is so*, meaning that we accept our statement; and so we are *not* speaking sarcastically).

When any debater, whether it be ourselves or our opponent, presents the other person with a sarcastic statement of necessity—one ending in *tel* where the voice drops—then we are allowed two possible responses. The first is "I agree," or *du* ('*dod*) in Tibetan. In the case just mentioned, this would amount to answering "I agree that the color of a red rose is a white color."

The second of the two possible answers is *chiy chir* (*ci'i phyir*), meaning "Why so?" (signifying, essentially, that one does *not* agree). In this case it would mean, "Why do you ask whether the color of a red rose is a white color?" or, more specifically, "Why do you imply that I would think that the color of a red rose is a white color?"

These two responses to a statement of necessity are always used on the debate ground but rarely appear in written debates in scripture. In a case like the one above, the line "Because it is the color of a flower" implies that someone has answered "Why so?" to the sarcastic statement of necessity, "So is it then a white color?"

The most common case where we see the answer "I agree" in written debates is indicated in the expression, "Suppose you agree to our original statement."

These two responses to a statement of necessity, along with the two standard responses to the statement of a reason covered in Reading Three, constitute almost the entire repertoire of a debater when presented with a statement from his or her opponent. The four responses essentially amount to "yes" or "no"—positive or negative—sending the argument down a new branch of possible scenarios.

If one debater continues only to follow a logical sequence of statements, while the other continues only to answer with appropriate plus or negative answers, then Truth *must* eventually be arrived at. This is the beauty of Buddhist debate.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Six: The Art of Reasoning, Part Two

Selection from the collected topics: Negative and Positive

The selection here is from a monastic textbook popularly known as The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son (Sras bsdus-grva), by Master Ngawang Trashi, the spiritual son of the great Jamyang Shepa (1648-1721).

Please note that indented statements are usually those given by the opponent. Responses within brackets are those that are usually left unwritten in the Tibetan text, and are understood to be there because of the context following each.

Here secondly is the presentation of our own position. There does exist a definition of a negative thing, because it is the following:

A thing which must be perceived by the state of mind which perceives it directly through a process of eliminating, directly, that which it denies.

नवानायान्या शेवानान्या वाल्याशेवान्या व्यवायावले नेयान्या

The four terms "negative thing," "exclusion," "exclusion of all other," and "reversal" all refer to the same thing.

न्यायायायात्र न्त्री स्याक्षेत्राधेन्त्री स्याधेत्र न्यायात्र स्याधित्र स्याधित्र । स्रीत्रा

Negative things may be divided into two different types: things that are negative in the sense of not being something, and things that are negative in the sense of the absence of something.

यायाः वृत्यः दुः केंश्याविदः संभितः द्वायाः दरः ब्रुशः यहें दः यदे स्थ्यः द्वायाः यः देः यो वाः यः देः विदः स्थ्यः यो वाः यः विदः स्थ्यः यो वाः यो वाः

There does exist a definition for a "negative thing in the sense of not being something," because it is the following:

A negative thing such that the term which expresses it implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies.

मक्ष्याचीत्री स्वास्त्री स्वास्त्

There does exist a classic example of a negative thing in the sense of not being something, for it is "sounds are [always] changing things."

स्रीत्राची स्राची स्रा

There does exist a definition for a negative thing in the sense of being an absence of something, for it is the following:

A negative thing such that the term which expresses it does not imply something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies.

सर्वद माले दे 'ऑर'रे। यार' वया यो 'यर्या सेर'रे 'ओद' यदे 'सेर

There does exist a classical example of a negative thing in the sense of being an absence of something, for it is the fact that no person has any nature of their own.

Negative things may be divided into five different types:

- Those which are such that the term which expresses them directly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording;
- 2) Those where the term which expresses them does this implying indirectly;
- 3) Those where the term which expresses them does this implying both directly and indirectly;
- 4) Those where the term which expresses them does this implying by context;
- 5) Those which are such that the term which expresses them implies nothing else—neither a negative in the sense of not being something, nor a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording.

क्रमाविष्यः साम्नुष्यः निर्मान् । स्त्रीयः यानाः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्वानाः स्वरः स्वानाः स्वरः स्वानाः स्वरः स्व

There does exist the first type, the kind which are such that the term which expresses them directly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording, because one would be the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher.

यान्त्रात्यावात्यात्यात्वे क्ष्याविष्यात्र्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात्रात्यात् क्ष्याविष्यात् क्ष्यात् कष्यात् क्ष्यात् कष्यात् कष्या

Suppose you say that this is not correct.

Consider this same thing.

It is so true that it is the kind of negative thing which is such that the term which expresses it directly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording,

Because (1) the term which expresses it denies what it denies directly in the actual wording; and (2) it also directly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive.

[The first part of the reason you gave is incorrect: it is not correct to say that the term which expresses the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher denies what it denies directly in the actual wording.]

But the first part of our reason is correct,

Because the expression "the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher" denies, in its actual wording, the possibility that any nature of their own that belonged to some person could ever be true of a water pitcher.

यादा चया यो प्यत्या स्त्री युक्षा या स्वाद्या यो प्यत्या स्वीद्या स्वाद्या स्वाद्या

[The second part of the reason you gave is incorrect: it is not correct to say that the term which expresses the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher also directly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive.]

But the second part of our reason is correct,

Because the expression "the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher" (1) directly implies that the fact that no person has any nature of their own exists, and (2) the fact that the fact that no person has any nature of their own is true of a water pitcher is a negative thing in the sense of not being something.

The first part of our reason is easy to accept.

Suppose you say that the second part is not correct.

Consider the fact that no person has any nature of their own.

The fact that it is true of a water pitcher is so a negative thing in the sense of not being something,

Because it can be established as existing.

चलयाः मृत्याः स्वार्षेत्रः स्वरः स्वार्षेत्रः स्वार्षेत्रः स्वार्षेत्रः स्वरः स्वार्षेत्रः स्वरः स्वरं स्

There does exist the second type of negative, the kind which are such that the term which expresses them indirectly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording, because one would be the fact that John Smith, who is chubby, never eats during the day.

द्राया द्राया अर्थन भ्राया स्थान स्

[It's not correct to say that the fact that John Smith, who is chubby, never eats during the day is an example of this kind of negative.]

It is so,

Because (1) the expression "John Smith, who is chubby, never eats during the day" indirectly implies that he eats at night, incidental to denying directly what it denies: that he eats during the day; and (2) his eating at night is a positive thing.

रेर.वणा वश.व.य.श्चेय.त.लुब.तयु.हीरा

It is so,

Because eating is a positive thing.

There does exist the third type of negative, the kind which are such that the term which expresses them both directly and indirectly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording, because one would be the fact that there exists a John Smith who is chubby, who doesn't eat during the day, and who is not thin.

[It's not correct to say that the fact that there exists a John Smith who is chubby, who doesn't eat during the day, and who is not thin, is the kind of negative thing such that the term which expresses it both directly and indirectly implies something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording.]

It is so correct to say just this,

Because (1) the expression "There exists a John Smith who is chubby, who doesn't eat during the day, and who has a body that is not a thin one," indirectly implies that he eats at night—and directly implies that there is a body which is not thin—incidental to denying directly that he eats during the day; and (2) the fact that there is a body which is not thin is a negative in the sense of not being something.

दस्तरमः त्राह्मा विद्यान् विद्यान विद्यान् विद्यान विद्यान

There does exist the fourth type of negative, the kind which is such that the term which expresses it implies through the context something else—either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording, because one would be where you had determined that a particular person must be either of the royal caste or the Brahmin caste, but were unsure of which; and then someone says "They are not a Brahmin." The actual wording here directly denies, in its actual wording, that they are a Brahmin, and then implies—through the context—that they are of the royal caste; and this is the process you have to go through to determine which they are.

याल्यायाः प्रत्यायाः प्रत्यायाः प्रत्यायाः याल्याः याल्य

There does exist finally that kind of negative where the term which expresses it implies nothing else—neither a negative in the sense of not being something, nor a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording, because one would be the fact that a certain Brahmin does not drink alcohol.

द्वीर। लट.शु.यसुर्थः वीयोश्वातात्त्रट.शु.यसुर्थ। श्रीयश्चात्त्र्याग्चीशत्त्रट्यात्त्र्यान्त्र्यः त्यात्र्यः स्थात्त्र्यः स्थात्त्र्यः स्थात्त्र्यः स्थाः स्

[It's not correct to say that the fact that a certain Brahmin does not drink alcohol is a kind of negative where the term which expresses it implies nothing else—neither a negative in the sense of not being something, nor a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording.]

It is so,

Because the expression "The Brahmin does not drink alcohol" implies neither directly, nor indirectly, nor by context, anything else—neither a negative in the sense of not being something, nor a positive—incidental to denying what it denies directly in the actual wording: that is, that the Brahmin did drink alcohol.

ने न्या अप्येत न्याया न्या अप्याया के अप्याय है अप्याय के अप्याय के अप्याय के अप्याय के अप्याय के अप्याय के अप

These five can be grouped into two categories: negatives in the sense of not being something, and negatives in the sense of the absence of something. This is because the first four should be considered negatives in the sense of not being something, and the last should be considered a negative in the sense of the absence of something.

चियः पर्दः स्त्रीम। सःचियः पः प्येतः ने वायाः याः सःचियः पः यादः त्रीयाः अतः प्रयायाः यादः त्रीयाः अतः याद्यः य

It is not necessarily the case that, just because something is a negative thing, the term which expresses it denies what it denies in the actual wording. This is because this is neither necessarily the case with negatives in the sense of not being something, nor the case with negatives in the sense of being an absence of something.

[The first part of your reason is not correct: it's not correct to say that it is not necessarily the case with negatives in the sense of not being something that the term which expresses them denies what it denies in the actual wording.]

But the first part of our reason is correct,

Because—even though the two of unchanging things and knowable things are negatives in the sense of not being something—they are not such that the terms which express them [in Tibetan] deny what they deny in the actual wording.

[The second part of your reason is not correct: it's not correct to say that it is not necessarily the case with negatives in the sense of being an absence of something that the term which expresses them denies what it denies in the actual wording.]

But the second part of our reason is correct, Because—even though the two of space and the true nature of things are

negatives in the sense of being an absence of something—they are not such that the terms which express them deny what they deny in the actual wording.

Formal logic subject: Logical Statements that Use Natures

The following selection is from the monastic textbook entitled An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning (rTags-rigs), by the Tutor of His Holiness the Dalai Lama, Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901).

म्याकेश्वास्त्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रम्या

Here secondly is our explanation of correct reasons of the type that use natures. We will proceed in three steps: the definition, the divisions, and the classical examples.

दरास्त्री ररायश्वराग्नीःस

Here is the first. The definition of a correct reason of the type that uses a nature is as follows:

A reason where the three relationships hold, and which utilizes a nature.

The definition of a correct reason of the type that uses a nature in any particular proof is as follows:

A reason where the three relationships hold, and which utilizes a nature, in any particular proof. स्त्र क्षेत्र के स्वाप्त क्षेत्र क्

The definition of a correct reason of the type that uses a nature in any particular proof can also be defined as follows:

A reason which is (1) a correct reason in any particular proof, and (2) which is established as being this kind of reason [one that uses a nature] by virtue of the fact that anything considered the explicit quality to be proven for the particular proof in which it serves as the reason is necessarily such that to be it [the reason] is to be the quality.

योश्वर्या देश्चीयक्री हिर्त्तर रेयो. त्राचकुर र त्यं विष्ठेश क्षेत्र त्या विष्ठेश विष्ठ त्या विष्ठ

Here is the second step. Correct reasons that utilize a nature can be divided into two different types: correct reasons that utilize a nature and which are such that they depend on a certain distinction, [of suggesting the thing that made it]; and correct reasons that utilize a nature and which are such they are free of dependency on a certain distinction, [of suggesting the thing that made it].

न्दः संदे अर्द्धनः भेन् दे । ने श्रुचः ग्रीः न्या विष्यः स्वादः क्षा न्या विष्यः । न्या विषयः ।

Here is the definition of the first:

A reason which is (1) a correct reason for any particular proof which utilizes a nature; and (2) which is established as being this kind of reason by virtue of the fact that the term which expresses it suggests the thing that made it.

ने यार लिया र र यहें र यदे सुरार र यो ये र यो से र ये से र यदे के स्वाय लया या

याकुरा यदे सक्दर कुर्

The definition of the second is as follows:

A reason which is (1) the same as the first part just given; and (2) which is established as being this kind of reason by virtue of the fact that the term which expresses it does not suggest the thing that made it.

यमिक्रास्त्र। स्टामीमित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्वाधित्यस्य स्व

The first type may be further divided into two: those which suggest the thing that made them directly, and those which do so indirectly.

श्रीयः ततुः श्रिटः तरः द्याः तः यतुः रदः यत्ते व श्रीः ह्याश्राः यत्रः यति । द्राः त्रः यत्रः यत्रः यत्रः यत्रिः यत्रः यत्यः यत्रः यत्यः यत्रः यत्रः

Here thirdly are the classical examples. "A thing which is produced by conscious effort" and "a thing which is brought about" are examples of the first type of reason, in a proof that the sound of a ritual horn is a changing thing. "A thing which is made" is an example of the second type of reason, in a proof that sound is a changing thing. "A working thing" is an example of a correct reason which utilizes a nature and which is such it is free of dependency on a certain distinction, [of suggesting the thing that made it].

स्याबालट्रयाचाक्षेत्रा २८१ ट्रेश्चैयःग्रीःश्रश्चेयाद्रायःयद्रायःयद्रिशःश्चेयःग्रीःय्ट्रयाःग्रद्रःट्रेश्चैयःग्रीःयट्रयाः श्चित्रश्चेत्रायःयःचित्रःचेट्रःद्रियायःयःद्रःट्रःश्चैतःग्रीःयट्रयःयद्वित्रःचीः स्याबाद्रःद्रियावःयःपित्रःचेट्रःद्रियायःयःद्रःय्वित्रःचीःयःयःयःद्रःद्रश्चितःग्रीःयःयःयः

A correct reason which utilizes a nature and which is employed in the proof that sound is a changing thing can also be divided in a different way. This division would be into the two of (1) correct reasons which utilize a nature and

which apply to the entire group of similar cases for the proof; and (2) correct reasons which utilize a nature and which both apply and fail to apply to the group of similar cases for the proof.

Respective examples would be the reason "a thing which is made," and the reason "something characteristic of the quality of being made."

प्रत्यायार लेया से । विकास ने प्रत्ये से ने प्रेस सक विया सके से मा स्वाप के स्वाप

Here is a demonstration for each of these.

"A thing which is made" is the first kind of reason,

Because it is (1) a correct reason for the particular proof which utilizes a nature; and (2) it is such that, if something is a changing thing, it must always be it [that is, a thing which is made].

विया से ह्या या प्रेम दा दे प्रेम या सम्बाधन यह स्थित । स्था सम्बाधन यह स्था स्था सम्बाधन यह स्था सम्बाधन यह स

"Something characteristic of the quality of being made" is the second kind of reason,

Because it is (1) a correct reason for the particular proof which utilizes a nature; and (2) it is such that, if something is a changing thing, it is not necessarily it [that is, something characteristic of the quality of being made].

The forms of debate: **Using Scriptural Authority**

In Buddhist debate, we can prove a thing in two ways: we can prove it with logic, and we can prove it with scriptural authority; that is, by quoting a scripture which is accepted by the opponent. In Tibetan these two are known, respectively, as *rikpa* (*rigs-pa*) and *lung* (*lung*)—and the idea is so important that some monks (such as Khen Rinpoche's devoted attendant) are give the name "Lungrik." Quoting scripture must obviously be used with care when

attempting to demonstrate something to a person who is not yet a Buddhist, since they may very well deny the authority you are quoting.

Favorite texts to quote in the monastery are the older scriptures from India: either the word of Lord Buddha himself, or the word of one of the great early Indian masters, as found in the Kangyur and Tengyur collections of the great classics of India translated into Tibetan. These are accepted by all schools of Tibetan Buddhism. In a debate between monasteries which are all of the Gelukpa tradition—such as the annual winter debates attended primarily by monks of the "Great Three" monasteries of Sera, Ganden, and Drepung—the favorite works to cite would be those of Je Tsongkapa or one of his major disciples: Gyaltsab Je, Kedrup Je, or His Holiness the First Dalai Lama.

In everyday debates at your own home monastery, you would normally quote from one of the monastic textbooks that are unique to the curriculum of each individual monastery; these are known as *yikcha* (*yig-cha*). These textbooks have developed over the last five hundred years much in the same way as the ACI course notebooks, and similar courses in the West.

The ammunition for using a quotation in the debate ground must of course be prepared in advance: no one can bring a scrap of paper into the area, and all quotations must be recited from memory. One way to get a good booing from the assembled crowd is to start a quotation and then flounder, unable to finish it from memory!

A scriptural citation is normally used to back up an assertion just given as a reason in a proof, and it is often introduced with a great flourish, emphasizing the indisputability and greatness of the source you have selected. You might see, for example, the following, where we start out with:

Consider sound.

It is a changing thing,

Because it is something which is made.

The opponent replies with:

Your reason is wrong!

দ্বাশ্যমানুবা

Meaning, sound is not a thing which is made. We then reply with,

Consider sound.

शुःक्र्याय

It is so something which is made,

নুষামাত্রীর মম রেম।

Because it was spoken to be that way by the High and Holy One, the Good and Glorious Kedrup Tenpa Dargye, a Master (*Ke*) Who has Found All Attainments (*Drup*), and Whose Kindness to All of Us is Infinitely High; and because His words are something that you must accept!

स्र-यश्रिक्यायात्वादः वित्र विद्या विश्वाय्येषः योष्ट्याय्यः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायः

And he did so speak it be this way, because he did so in his *Overview* of the Perfection of Wisdom, with the following words: "When we use 'something which is made' as a reason to prove that sound is a changing thing."

स्वायायायहेदात्र्या दे केंद्र श्रीयायहें स्वयायहे स्वयाया होत्र स्वयायायहेदात्र स्वयाया होत्र स्वयायहे स

Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568) is the principal author of the textbook series of Sera Mey; he is therefore, for the monks of Sera Mey, an indisputable authority, and his words must be accepted.

A typical strategy once an opponent has resorted to scriptural authority is to respond that, despite the fact that such a statement *was* once made by that authority, it does not necessarily prove what the opponent claims that it does. In such a case, the other side in the debate just described might come back with:

"It doesn't necessarily follow!"

Whenever someone contradicts scripture, it's time to pull out the unique response used by monks from Sera Mey. (Other monasteries have their own slightly different version.) Here you scream the following at the top of your lungs, and then go on to the formula above:

You contradict the scriptures! You contradict the holy scriptures!

Selection from the collected topics: Contradiction and Relationship

The following reading consists of the Presentation of the Concepts of Contradiction and Relationship ('Gal-'brel gyi rnam-bzhag), from An Explanation of the Intermediate Path of Reasoning (Rigs-lam 'bring-gi rnam-par bshad-pa), by the Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901), who in his day held the position of Tutor to the Dalai Lama.

Please note that indented statements are usually those given by the opponent. Responses within brackets are those that are usually left unwritten in the Tibetan text, and are understood to be there because of the context following each.

यक्षिमान्य प्रतियाम्य प्रविया स्वायायाया स्वायायाया स्वायायाया स्वायायाया स्वायायाया स्वायायाया स्वायायायाया स

Here is the second part, where we present our own position. We proceed in two steps, covering the definition of what it is to be in contradiction, and then the different types of contradiction.

२८-स्.म् । ब्रिट्-ब्र-२८-क्रिट-त्यायायाः त्याचाः मान्याः मान्

Here is the definition of what it is for two things to be in contradiction:

The two things must (1) be distinct from each other, and then they must be such that (2) it is impossible for any one thing to be both of them.

ययात्रायाक्षेत्रा याक्षेत्रायात्रयात्रायात्रायात्रीत्रा स्व.क्ष्याक्ष्यायात्रायात्रायात्रायात्रायात्रायात्राया

There are two different ways of being in contradiction: contradictory in the sense of being mutually exclusive; and contradictory in the sense of being diametrically opposed.

र्ट्रा है। इस्रायर्ट्र पेट्रा योर्ड्र ग्री हें त्रायायायायात्र सहस्य प्रायं विकासी स्वर्र्द्र स्वायायायायात्र स्वर्थे स्वर्ये स्वर्थे स्वर्थे

The definition of the first of these, to be contradictory in the sense of being mutually exclusive, is as follows:

Two things which conflict with each other in such a way that the presence of one automatically means the absence of the other.

The two terms "contradictory in the sense of being mutually exclusive" and "contradictory" refer to the same thing.

श.लुय.बुट.। यब्रि.शु.अर्बय.त्रय.योयश्चा चर्मेट.त्योज.ग्री.शक्य.कुटा अर्बय.त्रय.योयश्चा टेर्ट्श.त्योज.ग्री.शक्य.कुटा टेर्ट्श.श्व.योर्य्ट.ग्रीट्. ट्रे.ज.ट्री.यो टेर्ट्श.त्योज.ट्रा चर्मेट.त्योज.योठ्शा त्रय.क्य.ट्रेट्रा.श्री.शु.

Things which are contradictory in the sense of being mutually exclusive may be further divided into two types: those which contradict each other in this way directly; and those which contradict each other in this way indirectly.

The definition of things which contradict each other in this way directly is "Two things which conflict with each other directly." The definition of things which contradict each other in this way indirectly is "Two things which are such that no one thing can be both, but which are not such that one immediately obviates the other."

याक्षेत्रान्नात्वेत्रा प्रदेश में प्रदेश मे

A typical example of the first would be something like the two of "working thing" and "a thing which does no work." A typical example of the second would be "heat" and "coldness," or else "the state of mind which holds that things have some nature of their own" and "the wisdom which realizes that nothing has a nature of its own."

Here is the definition of the second kind of contradiction—of things which are contradictory in the sense of being diametrically opposed:

Two things which conflict with each other in such a way that each one acts to stop the continued existence of the other.

मक्रमान्त्रेष्ठी यानेमार्मान्यान्त्रमान्त्रामाने

A typical example would be a spiritual antidote and the negative personal quality which it allows you to eliminate.

The definition of what it is to share a relationship with something else in such a way that to be the first is to automatically be the other is as follows:

Whenever two existing things are such that, to be the first is by nature to be the second, but in such a way that they are separate things; and where—if the second were to cease to exist—then the first would have to cease to exist as well.

मक्रम्यावि दे। युमायान्यायुमायवे व्यापास्यायु

An example would be the relation between a vase and the exclusion of all that is not the vase.

Here is an actual application of the concept. The definition of what it is to share a relationship with "working things" in such a way that to be a particular thing is to automatically be a working thing is "something which is such that to be it is by nature to be a working thing, but in such a way that they are separate things; and where—if 'working things' were to cease to exist, then the particular thing would have to cease to exist as well." A typical example here would be a water pitcher.

द्विम्। दव्यश्चितः विवाधित्रम्याम् अस्या क्रिंश्चितः द्विम्। विवाधित्रम् विवाधित्रम्

The definition of what it is to share a relationship with something else in such a way that the first has come from the second is as follows:

Whenever two things are such that to be the first is to be the kind of thing which is the result of the second, in such a way that to be the first is not to be, by its very essence, the second.

यर्चयाप्येद्रायदे स्त्रीत्। प्रदेश स्त्रीत् स्ति स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत् स्त्रीत

A typical example would be the relationship of one coming from the other between those things which are a working thing the moment after it, and the original working thing.

Formal logic subject: Logical Statements Used to Prove an Absence of Something, and the First Category of this Type of Statement

The following selection is from the monastic textbook entitled An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning (rTags-rigs), also by the Tutor of His Holiness the Dalai Lama, Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso.

भ मासुस्रायासान्स्रीमासायदे स्वासाय्यान्त्राय्यत् स्वासाय्या सर्वस्ति । न्त्रीः च। सर्वस्याविदे स्रोटान्स्यासायदे स्वासाय्याम्याय्याः सर्वस्ति । न्त्रीः च।

Here thirdly is our discussion of correct reasons of the type used to prove the absence of something. We will proceed in three parts: the definition, an explanation of the divisions, and a description of the valid perception where we confirm that the definition applies to a typical example.

Here is the first. The definition of a correct reason used to prove the absence of something in any particular proof is as follows:

Any reason which is (1) a correct reason for the particular proof; and (2) such that there can exist one thing which is both (a) the explicit version of the thing which is considered the quality to be proven in the particular proof in which it acts as the reason, and also (b) a negative thing.

यक्षिश्रायास्रान्द्रीयास्रायदेःह्यास्राध्यतःन्यात्यान्त्रीःस् सेःसूत्रायास्रान्द्रीयास्रायदेः

ह्रवार्राः अदः दुदः स्वार्यः द्वेषार्राः स्वार्राः स्वार्राः स्वार्राः स्वार्राः स्वार्राः स्वार्याः स्वार्याः

Correct reasons to prove the absence of something can be divided into two types: correct reasons for the absence of something involving a thing which is imperceptible [to the particular opponent], and correct reasons for the absence of something involving a thing which is perceptible [to the particular opponent].

दह्यान्। स्रोत्तां स्रोत्तां व्यान्त्रां व्यान्त्रां व्यान्त्रां स्रात्यां स्रात्यां

Here is the first. Now there is a sutra where it says,

No person should ever judge another; those who try will fall.

The point of these words is to show us how wrong it is for us to say that someone else lacks any particular good quality, only because it does not appear to us that they do. This same point is made in the *Commentary* with lines such as the following:

In a case where valid perception has yet To engage in the object, the result obtained Is that they don't: they didn't engage.

रे.श्च्रुचःग्रीःअर्दश्चित्रश्चरःह्वाश्वःश्वरःविश्वाशःश्वरःश्वरःश्वरःग्रीःश्चरःग्रीःश्चरःग्रीःद्वाशःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःद्वाशःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःद्वाशःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःद्वाशःग्रीःश्वरःग्यःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्रीःश्वरःग्यःग्रेःश्वरःग्रेष्यःग्रेषःश्वरःग्रेष्यःग्वरःग्रेष्यःग्रेष्यःग्रेष्यःग्रे

The definition of a correct reason used to prove the absence of something involving a thing which is imperceptible in any particular proof is as follows:

Any reason which is first of all a correct reason used to prove the absence of something for the particular proof, and which is

secondly such that—even though the thing which is considered the main element of all which is denied by the proof in which it serves as the reason does generally exist—this thing is imperceptible to the valid perceptions of a person for whom this same reason fulfills its role in the relationship between the subject and the reason.

रि:श्रुवःग्री:श्रेःश्रूवःग्री:श्रेःश्रूवःययेः। त्रीयाशःयवेः हवाशः धरः वाशः वाशः धरः वाशः वाशः वाशः वाशः वाशः व रे:श्रुवःग्री:श्रेःश्रूवः विश्वः वाशः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः व्यवः वाशः विश्वः वाशः वाशः वाशः वाशः

This kind of reason can be further divided into two types: a correct reason used to prove the absence of something in a particular proof, by virtue of the absence of a corollary which possesses a relationship [with whatever is denied]; and a correct reason used to prove the absence of something in a particular proof, by virtue of the presence of a corollary which is contradictory [to whatever is denied].

Here are the respective definitions. The first is defined as:

Anything which is first of all a correct reason in a particular proof for the absence of something involving a thing which is imperceptible, and which is secondly a negative in the sense of being the absence of something.

Anything which is first of all a correct reason in a particular proof for the absence of something involving a thing which is imperceptible, and which is secondly either a negative in the sense of not being something, or a positive.

অহ'ব্যা'যাশ্বুমা

The first of these can be divided into three types: those which are correct reasons used to prove the absence of something which represent (1) a cause for something involving a thing which is imperceptible; (2) a greater set than something involving a thing which is imperceptible; and (3) a nature of something involving a thing which is imperceptible.

Here are respective typical examples for the three. Suppose someone sets forth the following logical statement:

Consider the place in front of us.

There cannot exist here, in the mental continuum of a person for whom flesheater spirits [another word for a *preta*, or tormented spirit] are still abstruse objects, a recollection whose object corresponds to reality, and which is used to ascertain the existence of a flesheater spirit;

Because there does not exist, in the mental continuum of this same person, any valid perception wherein he or she perceives any flesheater spirit.

Think of this fact: that there does not exist, in the mental continuum of this same person, any valid perception wherein he or she perceives any flesheater spirit. This represents the first type of reason just listed—for proving the fact that, in the place in front of us, there cannot exist, in the mental continuum of a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects, a recollection whose object corresponds to reality, and which is used to ascertain the existence of a flesheater spirit.

Think now of the fact that a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects has not yet perceived, with a valid perception, the fact that flesheater spirits exist. This represents the second type of reason just listed—for proving the fact that, in the place in front of us, it would be improper for a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects to swear that flesheater spirits do exist.

 α . બ. = . દુશ્. = . શ્રેત્ર. શ્રેત. શ્રેત્ર. શ્રે

Think finally of the fact that—in the mental continuum of a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects—there cannot be perceived, with any valid perception, a recollection whose object corresponds to reality, and which is used to ascertain the existence of a flesheater spirit. This represents the third type of reason just listed—for proving the fact that, in the place in front of us, there does not exist, in the mental continuum of just such a person, any recollection whose object corresponds to reality, and which is used to ascertain the existence of a flesheater spirit.

नर्वाक्षःयावी अनुवन्तीःयिविःवनिरास्वेषःयरःश्वेनःनरःश्वेनःनरः। वः अर्थःश्वेनःश्वेरंश्वः व्याः विश्वः विशः विश्वः विशः विश्वः वि

There is a specific purpose to these kinds of proofs. We are demonstrating here that, if a person still doubted whether flesheater spirits existed (and if they were thus still objects which were abstruse for them), then it would be

inappropriate for them to come to some definite conclusion in their own minds about whether these spirits existed or not. We are meant by this example to realize how inappropriate it is for us to either overestimate or underestimate any particular person we may encounter, unable as we still are to confirm—through a valid perception—whether or not they do in reality possess a particular positive or negative personal quality.

It is not necessarily the case, by the way, that if something is what we consider the main element in all that we deny in a particular logical statement, then it is also all that we deny in the same statement. Think of the possibility that there did exist, in the mental continuum of a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects, a recollection whose object corresponds to reality, and which is used to ascertain the existence of a flesheater spirit. This is both what we consider the main element in all that we deny, and also all that we deny, in a proof that there does not exist any such recollection whose object corresponds to reality. The two of (1) flesheater spirits themselves, and (2) states of recollection whose objects correspond to reality, and which are used to ascertain the existence of such spirits, are—each of them separately—a kind of case where something is what we consider the main element in all that we deny in the particular logical statement, but not all that we deny in the particular logical statement.

२८.मू.सी ही.भाभागीयात्र क्षान्य विभागतात्र होत्य क्षान्य क्

The former example is easy. Suppose though that you say that the latter two are incorrect.

Consider then (1) flesheater spirits themselves, and (2) states of recollection whose objects correspond to reality, and which are used to ascertain the existence of such spirits.

These are so—each one of them separately—things that we consider the main element in all that we deny in the particular logical statement,

Because a correct opponent for this particular proof doubts whether or not flesheater spirits exist in the place in front of us, and also doubts whether or not there exists any such kind of recollection whose object corresponds to reality.

दे.चाक्षेत्राच्याचे.च्याचाचित्यः क्ष्याच्याचे.च्याचाचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याचित्यः क्ष्याः स्त्राच्याः च्याच्याः च्याचः च्याच्याः च्याच्याचः च्याच्याः च्याः च्याच्याः च्याचः च्याचः च्याच्याः च्याच्याः च्याच्याः च्याच्या

Neither one of these is though, by itself, all that we deny in the particular logical statement, because generally speaking there do exist flesheater spirits; and because smoke is not all that we deny in a proof that there exists no smoke upon the nighttime ocean.

स्त्रियाश्चायत्रे स्वाश्चायत्रे त्या स्वायत्रे स्वायत्यत्रे स्वायत्रे स्वायत्रे स्वायत्रे स्वायत्यत्यत्रे स्वायत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्

Consider the fact that [the person described here] exists. This is an example of a correct reason used to prove the absence of something in a particular proof, by virtue of the presence of a corollary which is contradictory [to whatever is denied], for proving that a person for whom flesheater spirits are still abstruse objects still has no recollection which ascertains the existence of such spirits, and whose object corresponds to reality.

Generally speaking, there are three different ways in which an object can be abstruse, relative to your state of mind. These are objects which are abstruse by virtue of the place, time, and nature. The first would be something like the details of particular beings or realms which are situated at a great distance from your particular location. The second would be something like the details of events which have occurred or are going to occur at times which are eons away in the past or future. These things are not abstruse in their own general right, but only relative to a given state of mind. The third would be something which is abstruse by virtue of being very subtle in nature, even though it may exist in the immediate proximity. Examples of this would be things like a flesheater spirit, or a being between death and rebirth who is headed towards birth as a human or pleasure being, and their various heaps.

The forms of debate: **Some Debating Tactics**

The exquisite boxing style of Muhammed Ali showed the value of distracting and harassing your opponet before even throwing a punch, and we use some of the same tactics in a Buddhist debate. Again remember though, that the goal is not to defeat your opponent, but to help him and yourself and the audience listening; to sharpen his ability to concentrate under pressure, and to raise challenging questions that will clarify everyone's understanding of the life-saving Dharma.

Almost every normal debate begins with the attacker taking a mistaken position, and this is perhaps the most important tactic of all. The greatest

geshes and debaters in the monastery have overcome any kind of pride, and are fearless in taking a position which is mistaken—a position where they will eventually have to "lose"—if this means that the defender and the audience will learn some important point. The goal here is to take a position which is *almost* correct, and very subtly mistaken: this will make for a fun debate, and clear up this point for everyone.

Feigning is another common tactic in boxing and debate. Hutzpah is essential: even if you're not sure your answer is correct, act like it is. Let the other person prove you wrong logically, and you'll both learn something valuable. Even if you can't hear the opponent's position clearly (which is a common occurrence in the incredibly noisy debate grounds!), or you don't have much clue of what he's talking about, take a shot! It starts a lively debate, which sooner or later clarifies every detail of the issue. The point is: always work from what you honestly think, answer to the best of your current understanding, and don't be afraid to go on a journey with your opponent, even through some dark or fuzzy places in your understanding, to reach to the higher ground of knowledge.

Don't be afraid to use the audience to help you distract or disrupt your opponent. Many an unbeatable position is overthrown in the monastery simply by the (mistaken) boos of the audience, egged on by the attacker. Here there are a whole repertoire of distracting taunts, which are fair game in the rules of debate. We will list a few of them following—please note though that the exact meaning of the words used has often been obscured over the centuries; the meanings given here are sometimes "best guesses" offered to us in an informal interview by the most qualified master in the world, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin.

One common taunt is *Whoa!* The attacker either feels or feigns great surprise at a position taken by the defender, and begins a loud *whoa* sound. This is picked up by the monks in the immediate vicinity who are following the argument, and quickly spreads to the "deadheads" in the back (who are often engaged in some conversation of their own and not listening) and even to monks in other debate groups in the compound—all of whom have no idea what the defender even said that he deserves a *whoa!* This *whoa!* generally means "Uh-oh! Now you're in trouble!"

In the winter debates, the *whoa* can be followed by a loud *chir!* This is most often used when an argument has been presented to a defender and he finds himself unable to formulate an answer; it has the meaning of "Come on! We want an answer!" A common corrolary in smaller groups is for the attacker himself to say to a speechless defender, *labda!*—"Come on! Say something!" Some people say that the *chir!* is *che!*—meaning "Your argument has stalled now!" The spellings of these three in Tibetan are:

धुरा ययरा करा

A screamed *ha!* has the same meaning as in English, "Wow! What a joke! Are you kidding?" It is often accompanied by throwing your hands up in the air.

Tsa! is one of the most common taunts; it comes from the word ngo-tsa, meaning "You should be ashamed to have said such a stupid thing!" and is typically used when someone is forced to retract a position they have taken themselves earlier. This is most often accompanied with a slap of the back of one hand in the palm of another, with everything repeated a few times for emphasis: Tsa! Ooooh tsa! Tsa chik! ("You should be ashamed! Ashamed, man! What a disgrace!"). At this point a debater might scowl at his opponent and jam his finger in his own cheek, meaning: "Time for you to blush, man!" Some people say the tsa is the tsar in ngo-tsar, meaning, "Man! That was a weird thing to say!" These words in Tibetan are:

र्वा रेंका रेंसरा

Two more taunts are more based in formal logic than in tactics. The first is *kyappa long*, which literally means, "Give me your statement of necessity then!" This is used in a context like the following, with the indented portion from the opponent:

Consider sound.

It must so be a changing thing,

Because it's a thing which is made.

And that's true because anything which is made is always a changing thing.

ব্রশ্বর্শ তথা ব্রশ্বর্শ তথা ব্রশ্বর্শ তথা ব্রশ্বর্শ তথা ব্রশ্বর্শ তথা

It's incorrect to say that.

म्यायायाया

Give me your statement of necessity then!

At this point, the opponent would be forced to give the following absurd statement of necessity:

Just because something is a thing which is made doesn't prove that it's a changing thing.

A final rejoinder is *korsum!* or *kordhi korsum!* This means "You have just made a circular argument," or "Now you have contradicted yourself completely!" A typical case would be where the opponent accepts that sound is a made thing, and accepts that if something is made it must be a changing thing, but stubbornly asserts still that sound is an unchanging thing. In the second version of this statement, the root syllable for the mantra of Gentle Voice (Manjushri, or Jampel Yang) is interjected. The Tibetan spellings for these are:

Defenders have a few tactics of their own, one of the most useful being *ah*? or *la*?—meaning "Whaddya say? I couldn't catch what you said." Then you put your cupped palm up to your ear as if you're having a problem hearing the attacker in all the mayhem of the debate ground. This is a great way to buy a few extra moments while you formulate your answer!

Selection from the collected topics: Definitions and the Things They Define

The following reading consists of the Presentation of Definitions and the Things They Define (mTsan-mtson gyi rnam-bzhag), from An Explanation of the Elementary Path of Reasoning (Rigs-lam chung-gi rnam-par bshad-pa), by the Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901), who in his day held the position of Tutor to the Dalai Lama.

याकुरुष्यः स्टरः त्युयारुष्य। अर्कें द्वायुष्टे अर्क्षदः क्षेत्रः स्थितः द्वायाः स्थितः स्थितः व्यायाः स्थितः व

Here secondly is our own position. There is a definition of something defined, because it is the following:

A case where all three of the nominal qualities are present.

यहम्मार्थ्य क्रिंश मासुस्र वहेत सुवा व्याप्त हो ह्ये रास्त क्रिंश प्राप्त स्वाप्त स्य

There is a way of enumerating these three "nominal qualities," because the following is a correct list of the three:

- 1) Generally speaking, the thing should be something to be defined;
- 2) It should apply to some definitive example for it; and
- 3) It should be something defined only for whatever its definition is, and not for any other.

There is a definition of a definition, because it is the following:

A case where all three of the material qualities are present.

There is a way of enumerating these three "material qualities," because the following is a correct list of the three:

1) Generally speaking, the thing should be a definition;

- 2) It should apply to some definitive example for it; and
- 3) It should be a definition for nothing other than the thing it defines.

र्देन निरुद्ध प्रति सर्वे सर्वे निर्वे सर्वे निर्वे निर्व

There does exist a definition of what "that which performs a function" defines, because it is the following:

That case where all three of the nominal qualities pertaining to "that which performs a function" are present.

नर्रशर्यवे सर्वः क्षेत्रः ग्री सर्वः क्षेत्रः भ्रीतः स्थाः स्था

There does exist a definition of the definition of a working thing, because it is the following:

That case where all three of the material qualities pertaining to "working thing" are present.

There does exist a definition for a definitive example where all three of the nominal qualities for "that which performs a function" are present, because it is the following:

That case of "that which performs a function" where all three of the nominal qualities for "that which performs a function" are present.

देवे अर्क्ष मानि प्येंद्र दे। दर्देश र्ये दे दे प्येष प्यवे स्वेर

There is a definitive example of such a thing, because a working thing would be one.

There is an alternate definition for something to be defined, because it is the following:

A case where all three of the qualities for being establishing as something are present.

सन्ध्राम्य प्रति । स्ट्रिस्य स्ट्रि

There is a way of enumerating these three qualities for being established as something, because the following is a correct list of the three:

- 1) The thing should be something to be defined;
- 2) It should not be something defined for any other definition than its definition; and
- 3) It should be possible with whatever we are considering a definitive example.

There is also such a definition for a definition, for it is the following:

A case where all three of the qualities for establishing something are present.

इस्रायर वर्ह्मा चुर्ग्मे क्रेंस्याम्बुस्य ये स्वर्त्त क्रिया धेर्म्य मिल्य स्वर्त्त क्रिया स्वर्त्त क्रिया स्वर्

वःश्रीतःतःश्रेःयाश्रुसःर्यःतेःवद्गेतःत्रेयाशःयवेःश्रीता

There is a way of enumerating these three qualities for establishing something, because the following is a correct list of the three:

- 1) The thing should be a definition;
- 2) It should not be a definition for any object to be defined other than the one it defines; and
- 3) It should be possible with whatever we are considering a definitive example.

सर्वः मिल्विरः सर्वनः केतः प्येतः द्येतः । सर्वनः केतः मित्रः स्थान्यः सर्वः सर्वनः स्थान्यः सर्वनः सर्वनः

There is also such a definition for a definitive example, because it is the following:

An example which typifies the object to be defined for the particular definition in question.

देशन्त्रीत्रस्थायतः इसायराचल्यान्त्रते केंशायासुस्रास्तरान्ते ने प्रेत्तान्ते स्वास्त्र स्वास्त

We can illustrate these with a specific case. There is a definition for the object defined by "that which performs a function," because it is the following:

A case where all three of the qualities for establishing something through "that which performs a function" are present.

Formal logic subject: Reasons for the Absence of Something Which Involve Something Perceptible

The following selection is taken from An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning (rTags-rigs), also by the great tutor, Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso.

<u>| बूद:रुद:अ:द्रशेवाश:यदे:हवाश:यद:दवा:य:अर्ळद:क्रेद:द्र्वी:व:वाक्रेश|</u>

There are two parts to our explanation of a correct reason for the absence of something which involves something perceptible [to the opponent]: the definition, and the divisions.

द्राया देश्यो देश्चिता शेषा त्राया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वया

Here is the first. The definition of a correct reason for the absence of something which involves something perceptible is the following:

That thing which is both (1) a correct reason for the absence of something in a particular proof; and (2) such that the thing which is considered the main element of all which is denied by the proof is not an abstruse object to the person for whom this same reason fulfills its role in the relationship between the subject and the reason.

र्रात्यात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्व र्रात्यात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्रात्वात्यात्रात्वात्यात्रात्

This type of reason may be divided into two types: a correct reason used to prove the absence of something perceptible in a particular proof, by virtue of the absence of a corollary which possesses a relationship [with whatever is denied]; and a correct reason used to prove the absence of something perceptible in a particular proof, by virtue of the presence of a corollary which is contradictory [to whatever is denied].

स्त्र केट्र के प्राप्त के प्रमुद्य के कि स्त्र के कि स्वर के कि स्त्र के कि स

Here are the respective definitions of these two different types. The definition of the first is:

That thing which is both (1) a correct reason used to prove the absence of something perceptible in a particular proof and (2) a negative thing in the sense of being an absence of something.

र् श्रुवःग्रीःश्रूदःरुदःस्रान्स्रेयासःयदेःस्यासःस्यःन्याःग्रुसःसदेःस्रह्य। स्थितःयाःग्रदःस्यासःसदेःस्यासःस्यासःसदेःस्यासःस्यासःसदेःस्यास

The definition of the second is:

That thing which is both (1) a correct reason used to prove the absence of something perceptible in a particular proof and (2) either a negative thing in the sense of not being something, or a positive thing.

|रेग्राय:धदे:वर्ग्रे:सूर्या

Rikpay Drotang
Debating Format, Part One

युष्रायःह्रम्।यःध्येदःयदेःध्वेर।

Bumpa tokpa yinpay chir.

...Because a water pitcher is an unchanging thing.

দ্বাঝামানুবা

Tak madrup!

Wrong!

तुष्रायःह्यायाः वार्षेद्रायरः वया

Bumpa takpa mayinpar tel.

Are you telling me a water pitcher is not an unchanging thing?



Du!

Right!

याधीयाने।

Mayinte!

And why not?

तुष्रायाधीः ह्यायाधीदायवे धीरा

Bumpa mitakpa yinpay chir.

Because a water pitcher is a changing thing.

Bumpa mitakpa yinpar tel.

Are you telling me a water pitcher is a changing thing?

a 5 51

Du!

Right!

Selection from the collected topics: The Concept of Exclusion in Perception

For the next selection, we return to The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son (Sras bsdus-grva), by Master Ngawang Trashi, the spiritual son of the great Jamyang Shepa (1648-1721).

हेर्याः हो स्वान्त्रां याल्यः होताः प्रत्यान्याः यात्रेशः हेत्रः याहेयाः ध्येतः स्वरः सर्वरः

Here secondly is our own position. Because the terms "exclusion" and "negative thing" refer to the same thing, there is no need to posit a definition for exclusion.

र्देशर्यः धीवः वार्षितः ग्रीः देवः यदः श्रास्तवः श्रीः याववः श्रोयः यावेशः देवः याद्येयः विदः याद्येयः विदः या

If something is a working thing, then there always exists an exclusion for it which is the objectification of a specific instance. The terms "negative thing which is a working thing" and "an exclusion which is the objectification of a specific instance" both refer to the same thing.

चन्याः सेनः प्येतः त्राहिनः ग्रीः ह्येतः याव्य स्थेतः प्येनः प्यान्य । ह्येतः याव्य स्थेतः न्यान्य । ह्येतः याव्य स्थेतः न्याः स्थाः प्राप्त । ह्येतः याव्य स्थितः याव्य । ह्येतः याव्य स्थाः प्राप्त । ह्येतः याव्य स्थाः स्थाः । ह्येतः याव्य स्थाः । ह्येतः । ह्येतः याव्य स्थाः । ह्येतः । ह्येतः यावः । ह्येतः ।

There is always a mental kind of exclusion for anything which is such that it possesses no nature of its own. The terms "mental kind of exclusion" and "object which appears to a conceptualization" refer to the same thing.

यालि युवा कार्ति न ग्री और प्रयामा यो यालक शेवा प्येत स्था यात्र यात्र स्था यात्र स्था

If a thing can be established as existing, then there is always an exclusion of it which is a negative thing that involves the absence of something. And the terms "exclusion which is a negative thing that involves the absence of something" and "negative thing which involves the absence of something" refer to the same thing.

Formal logic subject: Identifying Elements of a Logical Statement, and Some Different Classifications of Correct Logical Statements

The following selection is taken from An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning (rTags-rigs), composed by the great tutor of His Holiness the Thirteenth Dalai Lama named Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901).

दर्ग्नरःम्ब्रुशःद्रःम्ब्रुशःद्र्यःम्ब्रुदःम्ब्राः द्र्यान्यत्यःम्ब्र्यःम्ब्रुयःम्ब्रुः दर्ग्नरःमञ्जूशःद्रःभःमञ्जूरःम्ब्रुः

This bring us to the section where we identify the reason, the quality to be proven, and the subject. We proceed in two steps: presenting our position, and then putting forth proofs to support our position. Here is the first.

The expression "because there is no fire" is a logical reason for proving that there is no smoke on the surface of an ocean in the middle of the night in a proof where "because there is no fire" serves as the reason in the proof. "Because *there's* no fire" is not a logical reason for the same proof where that same term serves as the reason in the proof.

र्प्तः भेर्प्तः द्वा भेर्या स्वायः द्वायः श्री भारतः स्वायः स्वयः स्ययः स्वयः स

The expression "there is no smoke" is both (1) the quality to be proven in that same proof, where "because there is no fire" serves as the reason; and (2) that which is considered the explicit form of the quality to be proven for the same proof. The expression "it's smokeless" is neither of the two. This same pattern applies for the expressions such as "there are no trees" and so on.

The expression "because there is no water pitcher perceived to be there by any valid perception" is a logical reason for proving that there exists no water pitcher in a particular location where no water pitcher is perceived by any valid perception to be present. The expression "there exists no water pitcher there" is both (1) the explicit form of the quality to be proven in the same

proof, where "because there is no water pitcher perceived to be there by any valid perception" is acting as the reason; and (2) that which is considered the explicit form of the quality to be proven in the same proof. This pattern follows for other cases as well.

A "flesheater spirit" [a *preta*, or tormented spirit] is a main element in the quality which is denied in a proof that, in the location before us, there can exist no recollection whose perception corresponds to reality, and which ascertains a flesheater spirit, in the mind of a person for whom flesheater spirits are abstruse objects. This same term though is not the "quality which is denied" itself.

पः चः प्रम्रायः र्रेषः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः प्रम् स्रम् विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः प्रम् विष्णः विषणः विष्णः विषणः विष्णः विष्णः

The existence, in the mind of a person for whom flesheater spirits are abstruse objects, of a recollection whose perception corresponds to reality, and which ascertains a flesheater spirit, is both (1) the quality which is denied in this particular proof, and (2) a main element in the quality which is denied in the same proof.

र्यः रेतः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः । रे श्रुपः ग्रीः रवावाः ग्रीः विष्यः । रे श्रुपः ग्रीः रवावाः ग्रीः विषयः । रे श्रुपः ग्रीः विषयः । रे श्रुपः ग्रीः विषयः । रे श्रुपः ग्रीः विषयः । रे श्रीः विषयः । र श्रीः विषयः । रे श्रीः विषयः । र श्रीः विषयः । र श्रीः विषयः । रे श्रीः विषयः । र श्रीः व

The term "smoke" is a main element in the quality which is denied in a proof that there is no smoke on the surface of the nighttime ocean, but it is not the quality denied in the same proof.

देर-र्-पर्लर्-पर्ने अर्द्धर अदे कुर्जे र्-प्राची विदे के अपनिष्ठ र निवानित के अपनिष्ठ र निवा

The "existence of smoke in that particular place" is both (1) a main element in the quality which is denied in a proof that there is no smoke on the surface of the nighttime ocean, and (2) the quality which is denied in the same proof.

"An unchanging thing" is a main element in the quality which is denied in a proof that sound is not an unchanging thing, but it is not the quality which is denied in the same proof.

Here next is the second major point from above. Correct reasons may also be classified according to the quality to be proven. Here there are two types: correct positive reasons, and correct negative reasons.

स्वार्थः यात्रे यात्रे यात्रे यात्रे या वित्ते ते स्वार्थः या वित्ते यात्रे या

Here are their respective definitions. First comes the definition of a correct positive reason for any particular proof:

Something which is (1) a correct reason for a particular proof; and (2) which is such that there can exist one thing which is both (a) the object which is considered the explicit form of the quality to be proven in the proof where it acts as the reason, and (b) a positive thing.

र्त्रा दे.योक्षेत्राचीटार्द्रटालुबाबा श्रीयास्योत्राच्याः स्टायं विद्याः स्वायाः स्टायं विद्याः स्वायाः स्वयाः स्वयाः स्वयाः स्वयः स्वय

These kinds of reasons may be divided into two types of their own: correct reasons that involve a result, and correct reasons that involve a nature. Anything which is one of these two types of reasons is always a positive reason.

हिर्रित्र सुवार्गी म्यायाप्य विष्या । हिर्द्य स्थित्र म्यायाप्य स्थित्र मिर्म्य स्थित स्थित्र मिर्म्य स्थित स्थित्र मिर्म्य स्थित स्थ

The definition of a correct negative reason for any particular proof is as follows:

Something which is (1) a correct reason for a particular proof; and (2) which is such that there can exist one thing which is both (a) the object which is considered the explicit form of the quality to be proven in the proof where it acts as the reason, and (b) a negative thing.

न्यायाः ह्याश्राप्यदः न्याः नदः। सः नस्योगश्राधादेः ह्याश्राप्यदः नयाः यान्नेशः र्नेतः यान्नेया

The terms "correct negative reason" and "correct reason for proving the absence of something" both refer to the same thing.

स्टियान्त्राच्याः यालवः रूपः स्वायाः स

The sixth and final division here is that critical one where the classification is made by correct opponent. Here there are two types: correct reasons to use in the context of oneself, and correct reasons to use in the context of others.

The definition of the first is as follows:

Anything which is both (1) a correct reason for proving that sound is a changing thing; and (2) a case where there is no correct opponent for the particular proof in which it serves as the reason.

लुर्ग स्रीय.तयु.क्र्रा चित्र.त.स्री.श्र.स्या.तर.स्रीय.तयु.रट.ट्र्य.स्रोयत्र.ग्री.स्यात्र.त्या. र्ज्ञ.स्यात्र.क्र्रा चित्र.त.स्री.श.स्या.तर.स्रीय.तयु.रट.ट्र्य.स्रोयत्र.ग्री.स्यात्र.स्यात्र.स्यात्र.स्यात्र.

Whenever the proponent seeks to establish something to his own mind, setting forth "because it's a made thing" to himself in order to prove that sound is a changing thing, then "because it's a made thing" is serving as a correct reason to use in the context of oneself, to prove that sound is a changing thing.

लट्ट्या:ल्ट्रिया:लट्ट्या:लट्ट्या:लट्ट्या:लट्ट्या:लट्ट्या:ल्ट्रिय:ल्ट्रिया:ल्ट्रिय:ल्ट

The definition of the second type above is as follows:

Anything which is both (1) a correct reason for proving that sound is a changing thing; and (2) a case where there is a correct opponent for the particular proof in which it serves as the reason.

त्रुषायाञ्चार्योः ह्याय्यर ञ्चूयायदे यात्रुष्ठ देव ञ्चयषा ग्री ह्याषा प्याप्त द्या प्येष देव

"Because it's a made thing" is a correct reason to use in the context of others, in proving that sound is a changing thing.

The forms of debate: The Traditional Debating Classes and Subjects

Over the centuries, each major Gelukpa monastery in Tibet has developed its own unique curriculum, all based on the study of the five great books of ancient Indian Buddhism. The structure of the different classes in the debate park is designed around the progressive study of a student in the geshe program through these five great classics, and this is where the core subjects and even the name of the Asian Classics Institute come from.

There are fourteen different debate classes going on simultaneously at Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery, and typically 20 to 22 years is required to pass through the fourteen. Each of the classes has its own special name—something

like "freshman" or "sophomore" in the West. At any given night in the debate park, the classes will be huddled in different spots spread around the park. The best spots (under a couple of especially shady trees in the summer, or up against a protecting wall in windy, cold weather) are given to the higher classes. If a beginning class is very large, the debate master may choose to break it up for the night into two or even three separate groups. Each group starts out with a single attacker and, normally, two defenders; by the end of the night, this may have dissolved into melee of eight or ten attackers bearing down on the original two defenders, with a group of supporters huddled behind them shouting out answers too.

Typical classes at present in Sera Mey might start out with sixty or seventy young men, of whom only a handful—four or five—will actually make it to the end of the geshe program. There is a custom at an advanced point in the curriculum, around ten years into the program, to combine two of the classes from that point on, so that there are enough monks left to make the debates interesting.

The following is a list of the names, durations, and traditional subjects for each of the debate classes at Sera Mey. It was compiled with the help of Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin. It should be noted that this is the ideal curriculum, and in the refugee monasteries of southern India events like an unusually long monsoon season, an attack of tuberculosis, sudden changes of plan by monastic officials, extra monastic ceremonies to be attended, a public teaching by a great visiting Lama, or any number of other happenings can conspire to lengthen or shorten the time needed to complete one's geshe studies.

Year One Class One: Beginning Class, Collected Topics

This class is Tibetan is known as *duchung* (*bsdus-chung*), since it is a beginning (*chung*) class on the collected topics (*bsdus-grva*) of Buddhist logic and perceptual theory, mostly according to the "Sutrist" (*Sautrantika* or *mDo-sde-pa*) School, which is considered the second of the four schools of ancient India. It is also the higher of the two schools of the Lower Way (Hinayana).

The original root text for this class is the *Commentary on Valid Perception* (*Pramana Varttika, Tsad-ma rnam-'grel*), written by Master Dharmakirti (*sLob-dpon Chos-kyi grags-pa*) around 650 AD. The principal monastic textbook is the *Collected Topics* (*Yongs-'dzin bsdus-grva*) of the Master Tutor, Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901).

The duration of the class is one year, and begins with a special ceremony of initiation into the debate park. The students are typically around 14 or 15

years old; they have completed some elementary study of the collected topics with their house teacher, and are already familiar with the format of debate (called *rikpay grotang* [*rigs-pa'i 'gro-stangs*]). These students have also already learned to read and write (in both the regular and cursive alphabets), and have memorized many of the shorter prayers and texts.

In a pattern which will continue throughout their careers as students in the geshe program, the class moves through a standard series of topics, each with its own name—such as *chokchu* (*phyogs-chos*): the study of the subject element in a logical statement, and its relationship to the reason. The class might remain on a particular topic for say one to six weeks, and then move on to the next, according to an undefined, organic schedule dependent on a constant assessment of their progress by the great lamas who are instructing different members of the class.

In the curriculum of the Asian Classics Institute, the topics of this and the next class are represented in the following course:

Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Year Two Class Two: Advanced Class, Collected Topics

This class is a continuation of the previous, and lasts for a year. Its name is *duchen* (*bsdus-chen*), meaning the advanced (*chen-po*) class on the collected topics (*bsdus-grva*).

Year Three Class Three: Beginning Class, First Chapter of the "Ornament"

The name of this class in Tibetan is *shungsar* (*gzhung-gsar*), indicating that these students are beginners (*gsar-pa*) in the first of the great classics (*gzhung*). The foundation root text here is the *Ornament of Realizations* (*Abhisamaya Alamkara*), dictated to the realized being Asanga (*'Phags-pa Thogs-med*) by the future Buddha, Maitreya (*rJe-btzun Byams-pa*) around 350 AD. The principal monastic textbook for this class is the *Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom* (*Phar-phyin mtha'-dpyod*) by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (*mKhas-grub bsTan-pa dar-rgyas*), a master from Sera Mey who lived 1493-1568.

These texts present the beliefs of the lower Middle-Way school (the lower half of the fourth or highest school of the four, which itself corresponds to the higher of the two schools of the Mahayana, or Greater Way). This school is known as the *Madhyamika Svatantrika* (dBu-ma rang-rgyud pa), or "Independent"

branch of the Middle-Way, so named because of their belief that we must take an independent object and discuss it in common terms to bring another person to understand correct view. The entire study of this school is called, in the monastery, the "Perfection of Wisdom," or *parchin* (*phar-phyin*) in Tibetan—an abbreviation of the full term, *sherab kyi parul tu chinpa* (*shes-rab kyi pha-rol tu phyin-pa*, or *prajnya paramita*).

This class also lasts for a year, and is devoted to covering only the first third of the first chapter of the root text. (The first chapter is by far the most extensive.) The topics covered in this and the following five classes are represented in the following ACI courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Year Four Class Four: Intermediate Class, First Chapter of the "Ornament"

This class is a continuation of the preceding. It lasts for a year and is devoted to the second third of the first chapter of Lord Maitreya's root text. The name of the class in Tibetan is *shung-nying* (*gzhung-rnying*), meaning a study of this great classic (*gzhung*) by students who are now more advanced (*rnying-pa*).

Year Five Class Five: Advanced Class, First Chapter of the "Ornament"

This class is again a continuation of the preceding. It too lasts for a year, and is devoted to the final third of the first chapter. Its name in Tibetan is *shung-nying gongma* (*gzhung-rnying gong-ma*), meaning an "even more" (*gong-ma*) advanced class of more experienced (*rnying-pa*) students of the great classic (*gzhung*).

Year Six Class Six: Class on the Second and Third Chapters of the "Ornament"

This class is a continuation of the previous, and covers the second and third chapters of Lord Maitreya's text. It lasts for one year, and is named *kab nyipa* (*skabs gnyis-pa*), since it is devoted to the second (*gnyis-pa*) and third chapters (*skabs*) of the root text.

Years Seven and Eight Class Seven: Class on the Fourth and Higher Chapters of the "Ornament"

The study of the *Ornament* continues in this class, dedicated to the fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth chapters of the root text. The eighth chapter is considered especially important because it is dedicated to a thorough description of an enlightened being. The name of this class is *kab shipa* (*skabs bzhi-pa*), meaning the students have reached the fourth (*bzhi-pa*) and higher chapters (*skabs*) of the root text. Each of the courses from this point on to the end of the geshe program last for two years each.

Years Nine and Ten
Class Eight: Class for Supplementary Topics
on the Perfection of Wisdom

The next class is named after and devoted to the study of supplementary topics on the perfection of wisdom known as *surkul* (*zur-bkol*), so called because they are extensive treatments of particular subjects which are "extracted" (*zur-du bkol-pa*) and expanded from much briefer references in the *Ornament*.

The four classic topics here are dependent origination (*rten-'brel*); the permutations of the flowchart that leads to enlightenment, known as the "community of the twenty" (*dge-'dun nyi-shu*); the levels of the form and formless realms, along with their corresponding meditational states (*bsam-gzugs*); and the very important study of the art of interpreting statements of the Buddha (*drang-nges*).

In conjunction with the last, the members of this class will also engage in a separate study of the "foundation consciousness" (*kun-gzhi*, or *alaya vijnyana*) concept accepted by the Mind-Only (*Citta Matra* or *Sems-tzam-pa*) School, the lower of the two Mahayana schools of ancient India, and third in the overall scheme of four schools. This will in fact be the most time ever spent on the beliefs of this particular school, although it is also touched upon later in the "Middle-Way" courses.

In Sera Mey, the principal monastic textbooks used for the supplementary topics are those on each particular subject composed by the masters Kedrup Tenpa Dargye and Panglung Lobsang Tukje (*sPang-lung Blo-bzang thugs-rje*, fl. 18th century).

Years Eleven and Twelve Class Nine: Beginning Class on the Middle Way

Entrance to the ninth class, where a student debater begins his study of the higher half of the Middle-Way School, marks a major change in status. At Sera Mey, it is at this point that the monk earns the right to vote upon questions affecting the monastery at large during the regular assemblies. He has also normally just finished his *rikchung* examinations, which in effect qualify him to become, in time, a geshe.

In Tibet it was a custom at this juncture for the entire surviving class to approach sponsors and raise the funds to make an important gift to the monastery in appreciation of her kindness. The gift might be a set of rare and important books, new paintings or images for the temple altars, or even a building. Members of the class would also go into deep retreats, intended to accumulate the good karma necessary to grasp the very subtle points of higher Middle-Way philosophy, the next subject in the curriculum. It is considered auspicious if the student encounters difficulty during this retreat (as the sign of an effective attempt to eliminate previous bad karma), and our Root Lama, Khen Rinpoche, has said that he became dangerously ill during his retreat in Tibet at this time.

The name of this class is *uma sarpa* (*dbu-ma gsar-pa*), meaning "beginning" (*gsar-pa*) class on the beliefs of the higher part of the Middle-Way (*dbu-ma*) School. The root text is *Entering the Middle Way* (*Madhyamika Avatara, dBu-ma la 'jug-pa*), composed by Master Chandrakirti (*Slob-dpon Zla-ba grags-pa*) around 650 AD. The principal monastic textbooks used are the *Illumination of the True Thought of the Middle Way* (*dBu-ma dgongs-pa rab-gsal*) of Je Tsongkapa, along with its commentary by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye entitled *Overview of the Middle Way* (*dBu-ma spyi-don*).

The higher half of the Middle-Way School is known as the "Consequence" (*Prasangika*, or *Thal-'gyur-ba*) group, due to their belief that a logical statement utilizing a ridiculous but necessary consequence of an opponent's erroneous beliefs is especially effective in helping the opponent develop a correct view of emptiness. The entire study of this particular group is called "Middle Way" (*Uma*, or *dBu-ma*) in the monastery, although technically the beliefs of the Independent group, already studied, also qualify as "Middle Way."

The topics covered in this and the next class are represented in the following ACI courses:

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra
Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva
Courses X, XI, and XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life—Parts
One, Two, and Three

Years Thirteen and Fourteen Class Ten: Advanced Class on the Middle Way

This class is a continuation of the preceding, and in Tibetan is known as *uma nyingpa* (*dbu-ma rnying-pa*), meaning "advanced" (*nying-pa*) class on the beliefs of the higher part of the Middle-Way (*dbu-ma*) School.

Years Fifteen and Sixteen Class Eleven: Beginning Class on Vowed Ethics

The class then graduates to the study of vowed ethics (*vinaya*, or 'dul-ba); here the curriculum of Sera Mey is unique, since the other major Gelukpa monasteries continue on to higher knowledge (*abhidharma*, or *chos mngon-pa*) at this point. This course will cover, extensively, the beliefs of certain groups within the first of the four schools—the Detailist—on the eight different types of vowed morality.

It is only here that a monk learns, in detail, the finer points of monastic rule. The debates of this class are a sharp contrast to the high theoretical dialectic of the Middle Way: here we are more likely to be quoting lists of monastic guidelines, and memorization of the versed summary on the subject is a "must." This is the *Versed Summary on Vowed Morality* by Kongpo Ngawang Tsultrim (*Shar-chen Kong-po Ngag-dbang tsul-khrims*), an eminent lama from the Kongpo College of Sera Mey.

The great commentary of the omniscient Tsonawa (*Kun-mkhyen mTso-sna-ba Shes-rab bzang-po*), a Kagyupa master from the latter part of the 14th century, will also be studied carefully. Both are based, as is the study of vowed morality throughout Tibet, upon the *Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra,* or *'Dul-ba mdo rtza-ba*), by the Indian master Guna Prabha (*Slob-dpon Yon-tan 'od*), from about 500 AD.

The name of this particular class in Tibetan is *senkyang dangpo* (*gzan rkyang dang-po*), since in the old days in Tibet it was only (*rkyang*) by reaching this class that a student was first (*dang-po*) considered senior enough to wear a heavy sort of monastic shawl (*gzan*) or cloak called a *dagam*, on the (very cold) nights of winter in the Lhasa valley.

The topics covered in this and the next class are represented in:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

Years Seventeen and Eighteen Class Twelve: Advanced Class on Vowed Ethics

This class is a continuation of the preceding, and is given the name *dzindra* sumpa ('dzin-grva gsum-pa), meaning third (gsum-pa) class ('dzin-grva) from the top.

Years Nineteen and Twenty Class Thirteen: Beginning Class on Higher Knowledge

Year nineteen marks the beginning of the final subject, higher knowledge (abhidharma, known simply as dzu [mdzod] in the monastery). The original root text here is the *Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha,* or *Chos mngon-pa mdzod)*, written by Master Vasubandhu (*Slob-dpon dbyig-gnyen*) in about 350 AD. This work primarily presents the beliefs of the Kashmiri section of the Detailist (*Vaibhashika*, or *Bye-brag smra-ba*) School, the first of the four Indian schools, and lower of the two Hinayana schools.

Three monastic textbooks for this subject are featured in the curriculum of Sera Mey:

The commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, Gendun Drup (rGyal-ba dGe-'dun grub, 1391-1474) entitled Light on the Path to Freedom, an Exposition of Higher Knowledge (Mdzod-tik thar-lam gsal-byed);

A resolution of difficult points on higher knowledge popularly known as *The Book on Higher Knowledge by Gyalwang*, composed by Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (*rGyal-dbang 'Phrin-las rnam-rgyal*, *fl.* 1850); and

An exquisite, highly detailed commentary from the Sakya tradition entitled *The Chim Book on Higher Knowledge*, written by Jampeyang of Chim (*mChims 'Jam-pa'i dbyangs*, c. 1280).

The name for this class in Tibetan is *dzindra nyipa* (*'dzin-grva gnyis-pa*), so called because it is the second (*gnyis-pa*) class (*'dzin-grva*) from the top.

The topics covered in this and the next class are represented in the following ACI courses:

Course V: How Karma Works Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Years Twenty-One and Twenty-Two Class Fourteen: Advanced Class on Higher Knowledge

This class is a continuation of the preceding, and in Tibetan is called *dzindra dangpo* ('*dzin-grva dang-po*), meaning it is the first (*dang-po*) class ('*dzin-grva*), or the highest class of all. The minimum stay for a person in this class would be two years, but this could stretch out into three, four, or even more years, since a student is required to remain until he can complete his examinations for any of the ranks of a geshe.

Annually for the Entire Geshe Program
Special Winter Classes on Buddhist Logic and Perceptual Theory

Throughout the entire length of a monk's career in the geshe program, several months in the winter are reserved for special classes on Buddhist logic and perceptual theory, based upon the *Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika, Tsad-ma rnam-'grel*) of Master Dharmakirti (*Slob-dpon Chos-kyi grags-pa*), who lived about 650 AD.

The principal monastic commentary here is *Light on the Path to Freedom, an Explanation of the "Commentary on Valid Perception,"* by one of the principal disciples of Je Tsongkapa, Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (*rGyal-tsab rje Dar-ma rin-chen, 1364-1432*). At Sera Mey, a new commentary by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (*dGe-bshes Ye-shes dbang-phyug, 1928-1997*) is also very popular. Normally each class simply takes its name from whichever major topic it may be debating at the time.

One reason the text by Gyaltsab Je is so widely used is that it is studied in all of the major Gelukpa monasteries, and can thus be used as common scriptural authority during the annual Jang Gunchu, or Winter Debates—a kind of annual Olympic intensive where the best student monks from each of the major colleges can come together to study and debate, almost day and night, for an entire month.

Here all the students from each monastery who are debating the same subject join into a single class, which acts as an excellent preparation for the debates they will have with each other during the geshe examinations down the road. Back home, those from each monastery who did not qualify for the Winter Debates continue on these same general subject; this provides a good opportunity for students of medium or lesser ability to take center stage at the debate park and improve themselves.

The topics for the Winter Debates are represented in the following ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Special Teachings by Eminent Lamas

Throughout the geshe program, a student will also attend special teachings given by eminent Lamas, both inside and outside their home monasteries. Actual recent examples at Sera Mey, for example, would be a one month teaching on the steps of the path to Buddhahood (*lam-rim*) presented by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk, or a teaching by His Holiness the Dalai Lama on emptiness. The most frequent subjects of these teachings are either *lam-rim* or *lojong*: developing the good heart. The content of these special teachings often comes up later in the debate park, in conjunction with almost every other subject. For this reason, the teachings on *lam-rim* and *lojong* have been organized into a sixth subject in the ACI curriculum, and are represented in the following courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

The invasion of Tibet led to a great deal of disruption in the debate classes. For twelve years after the fall of Tibet in 1959, the surviving monks from all of the major Gelukpa monasteries were thrown together in the Buxall refugee camp in northeastern India. Only several hundred of over 10,000 student monks from Lhasa lived through the invasion and subsequent horrors of the Buxall camp, to reach their new home in south India.

In the early 1970's, land was found in the Karnataka area of south India for the re-establishment of these major monasteries. (Khen Rinpoche's older brother, a Tibetan government official, was instrumental in locating and securing the land.) The debating classes and geshe examinations continued throughout this time in a very tenuous way, and by the mid 1970's it looked as though there would not be enough support for them to be carried on at Sera Mey.

This is when Khen Rinpoche began the food fund for students in the geshe program, which proved to be a deciding factor in their survival. Khen Rinpoche and his students also provided a great deal of the support needed to revive the Winter Debates in India. The debate classes throughout the great Gelukpa monasteries of south India now thrive, and the level of study is said to rival that of Old Tibet.

|रैवारा:पदे:दर्वे:सूररा

Rikpay Drotang Debating Format, Part Two

(Continued from the previous section on debating format:)

तुष्रायःष्ठीःह्याःयःष्पेदःयरःचया

Bumpa mitakpa yinpar tel.

Are you telling me a water pitcher is a changing thing?

वर्रेरा

Du! That's right!

श्राध्येत्रः यरः त्रवा

Mayinpar tel, No it's not,

युम्रायार्क्रमाधीमा यदाः सुमा

Bumpa chu yinpay chir. Because a water pitcher is a dharma—an existing thing.

Bีน.ก.ท.ฮี่ะ.โ

Kyappa ma jung. It doesn't necessarily follow.

क्रात्मियायायायाय्येयायायायायायायायायायायाया

Chu yinna, mitakpa mayinpe makyappar tel!

Are you telling me that, just because something is an existing thing, it doesn't have to be a changing thing?



Du!

That's right!

याःरेःचल्या

Gare shak?

Then show me something like that!

ब्रेंदःयःक्षेदःक्ष्यःउदा

Tongpa nyi chu chen. Consider emptiness.

श्रीम्यायासाधितासी

Mitakpa mayin te, It's not a changing thing,

म्यायाधेम्यवे धुरा

Takpa yinpay chir.

Because it's an unchanging thing.

रियायायवे वर्गे सूर्या

Rikpay Drotang
Debating Format, Part Three

वर्षेर प्राया अववः सेंद्र पवे सेुर।

Korwa la ta yupay chir

A: Because the cycle of pain does have an end.

म्याश्रासायाया

Tak madrub B: Wrong.

वर्षेर च ताया अञ्च अद यर ज्ञया

Korwa la ta mepar tel

A: Are you telling me the cycle of pain doesn't have an end?



Dи

B: Right.

शेर'रे।

Me de

A: Why not?

वर्षेर प्रायाः भूव मी अवव अद भेद पव से र

Korwa la ngun gyi ta mepay chir

B: Because the cycle of pain has no front end.

שָּביינו־אַ־שֶּבְין

Kyappa ma jung

A: That doesn't mean it can't have an end!

वर्षिर पाया सम्मदार्थे र पर मा

Korwa la ta yu par tel

B: Are you telling me the cycle of pain does have an end?



Dи

A: Right.

व्यंदःदे।

Yu de

B: Why so?

विष्र-पायासुदीसम्बदार्थन्यदेसुर।

Korwa la chiy ta yupay chir

A: Because the cycle of pain has a back end.

व्यॅर:दे।

Yude

B: Why so?

नन्यावह्रिन्गुःयानेनःस्नियाःस्निप्धिन्।

Dakdzin gyi nyenpo top den yupay chir

A: Because there is a powerful antidote that will smash our habit of seeing things as self-existent.

Selection from the collected topics: The Concept of Time

The following selections on the concept of time (Dus-gsum gyi rnam-bzhag), are excerpted from The Collected Topics of Rato (Rva-stod bsdus-grva), by Master Chok-hla U-ser, a great master of Rato Monastery who lived about 1500 AD. This particular book is considered the "grandfather" of what came to be a separate genre of literature in Tibet: the dura (bsdus-grva), or "selected topics from the Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika, or Tsad-ma rnam-'grel) of Master Dharmakirti (circa 650 AD).

लेब.संब्राचियःसंबुर्धेर। क्षेत्रःश्चरःही वर्षाःसःस्टरःशःब्र्ट्षःसःश्चरःसंब्रेत्रःही योष्ठिःश्चेयःव। राक्षेत्रःयः विद्यां अत्र्यःसःस्टर्शः विद्यां प्रतितःस्व श्चित्रः संवर्धः संवर्धः संवर्धः संवर्धः संवर्धः संवर्धः संवर्धः

Here next is an analysis of the question of whether the past and the future exist or not. Generally speaking there exist no definitions for "the past" or "the future," because the past and future are not things which even exist. This is because, anything which can be established as existing must always be existing in the present [according to this school of Buddhism].

मक्रम्भित्राम्यायदेश्यायदेश्यायदेश्यायदेश्यात्राम्याय्यात्राम्यायदेश्यायदेश्यायदेश

If though we were to establish the meaning of "the past" relative to a specific point of reference, we could say that the definition of its past relative to the time of a specific water pitcher could be given as follows:

Something which has, by the time of the water pitcher, already started; and which has, by the time of the water pitcher, already ended as well.

This and "the pitcher just before the pitcher" amount to the same thing.

यिश्निश्चेष्ठ, त्रः र्युयोश्वः त्री यीशः तयुः र्येषः श्वः रः तयुः शक्ष्यः त्रात्रः तयुः शक्ष्यः त्रात्रः त्रीयोशः त्री यीशः तयुः र्येषः रायुः श्वः श्वः र्येषः रायुः रा

The definition of its present relative to the time of a specific water pitcher then could be given as follows:

That one thing which is both (1) something which has already come into existence by the time of the water pitcher; and (2) which is simultaneous to the water pitcher.

The definition of its future relative to the time of a specific water pitcher, finally, could be given as follows:

That one thing which is both (1) in the act of starting at the time of the water pitcher; and (2) not yet started at the time of the water pitcher.

प्रेम्यत्राम्यक्षम् प्रम्यत्राम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम् व्यम्यत्रम्

The following all amount to the same thing:

the not-yet-coming of the water pitcher; the cause of the water pitcher; its past at the time of the water pitcher; and its past relative to the water pitcher.

[Translator's note: "Not-yet-coming" and "future" are the same word in Tibetan (ma-'ongs-pa).]

र्ह्म् भारते विकास के अपने विकास के स्वास के स्

The following also all amount to the same thing:

the passing of the water pitcher; the result of the water pitcher; its future at the time of the water pitcher; and its future relative to the water pitcher.

[Translator's note: "Passing" and "past" are the same word in Tibetan ('das-pa).]

Generally speaking, there is no such thing as something which has stopped. And there is nothing which is about to begin. Neither is there anything which is in the act of beginning, nor is there anything which is approaching the state of beginning.

There does exist though the passing of the smoke; and the stopping of the smoke; and the smoke's not yet coming, and the smoke's being about to begin; and the smoke's being in the act of beginning; and the smoke's approaching the state of beginning.

सेना वनानासम्बद्धः नुःचः सेना विनामवेः नुःचः सेना वनसम्बद्धः नुःचः सेना सः विनामवेः नुःचः सेना

There is though no such thing as smoke which is approaching the state of beginning. Neither is there any smoke which is in the act of beginning; nor any smoke which is about to begin; nor smoke which has stopped; nor smoke which has been destroyed; nor smoke which is past; nor smoke which is future.

The following all amount to the same thing:

- a working thing;
- a changing thing;
- a momentary thing;
- a thing which is in the act of being destroyed;
- a thing which is approaching the past;
- a thing which is approaching its destruction.

चर्लेट्र क्यान्यसम्ब्रीस्त्र मिनायास्त्र हैस्। यात्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र क्षेत्र मिनायास्त्र हैस्य स्वास्त्र स्वास्

These assertions [about the nature of time] are all presented in accordance with the beliefs of the "Logician" group within the Sutrist School. They would not necessarily be acceptable to any other school of Buddhism. The Detailists, for example, do accept ideas such as past karma and future karma, while the Necessity group entertains unimaginably profound positions such as the one that states that the destruction of something is a working thing.

Formal logic subject: A Discussion of Incorrect Logical Statements

The following presentation on incorrect "logical" statements is excerpted from An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning (rTags-rigs), by the Tutor of His Holiness the Thirteenth Dalai Lama, Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901).

विष्ठेश्वर्यान्त्रीश्वर्यान्त्रीश्वर्याः स्त्रियाः विष्ठ्याः स्त्रियः स्त्रूरः स्त्रूरः विष्ठ्याः विष्यः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्ठ्याः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्ठ्यः विष्ठ्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्य

Here is the second major division of our presentation, in which we explain the opposite of a correct reason: that is, incorrect reasons. We proceed in two steps: the definition of such reasons, and their various divisions.

The first of these we'll discuss in terms of disproving our opponent's beliefs, and then establishing our own beliefs. Here is the first.

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

"Any reason where the three relationships fail to hold" is the definition of an incorrect reason.

र्याः त्रेत्रः त्र्याः वियः पदः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेतः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्

This though is mistaken, for there is no such thing as an incorrect reason: everything which exists is a correct reason [to prove *something*].

Here secondly is our own position. The definition of an incorrect reason for a particular proof is:

A reason for a particular proof where the three relationships fail to hold.

यान्नेत्रायाः प्रत्यान्याः यान्नेत्रा श्रीत्रायाः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत् यान्नेत्रः स्वर्णः प्रत्यायः प्रत्यात्रः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्त्तः यान्नेत्रः स्वर्तः यान्तेत्रः यान्तेत्यः यान्तेत्रः यान्तेत्रः यान्तेत्रः यान्तेत्रः यान्तेत्रः यान्त

Here secondly are the various divisions of incorrect reasons. Although there is not, generally speaking, any such thing as an incorrect reason, we can say that there do exist the following types of incorrect reasons in specific contexts:

- 1) Contradictory reasons for specific proofs;
- 2) Indefinite reasons for specfic proofs; and
- 3) Wrong reasons for specific proofs.

We will discuss the first of these in four steps: definition; divisions; classical examples; and supporting arguments.

द्राक्षःग्रीः श्र्वः क्ष्याः प्रत्यः श्रुवः प्रत्यः विकाश्यः श्रुवः प्रत्यः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः प्रत्यः श्रुवः श्रवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्रुवः श्र

Here is the first. The definition of a contradictory reason for proving that sound is an unchanging thing is:

That one thing for which (1) the relationship between the subject and the reason does hold for proving that sound is an unchanging thing; and (2) the reverse relationship between the reason and the quality to be proven also holds for proving that sound is *not* an unchanging thing.

[A classical example would be: Consider sound. It is an unchanging thing, because it is a made thing.]

रट.त्.यु। स्री.स्या.तर.स्रीय.तयु.त्रीयात्र.क्र्याज्ञट.लुया स्त्य.क्षेट्र.टटा रच्चे.य.यायुत्रा विष्ठेत्र.त.त्र.इत्र.तयु.योध्य.क्ष्यात्र.त्रविष्यात्र.क्ष्याज्ञट.लुया सक्य.क्षेट्र.टटा रच्चे.य.याक्षेत्रा

सक्रम्भितायः भेत्। श्रुम्यायः अभित्यायः श्रुप्यायः श्रुप्यः श्रुप्यायः श्रुप्यायः श्रुप्यायः श्रुप्यायः श्रुप

Here secondly is our explanation of an indefinite reason; we will proceed first with a definition, and then with the various divisions of this reason. Here is the first of these.

The following is the definition of an indefinite reason for proving that sound is an unchanging thing:

That one thing for which (1) the relationship between the subject and the reason for proving that sound is an unchanging thing does hold; (2) the reverse relationship between the reason and the subject for proving that sound is an unchanging thing does not hold; and (3) the reverse relationship between the reason and the subject for proving that sound is *not* an unchanging thing doesn't hold either.

[A classical example would be: Consider sound. It is an unchanging thing, because there is no such thing as antlers on a rabbit's head.]

द्री देश्चित्रक्षेत्रस्य प्रियान्त्रस्य प्रियान्त्

Here third is our presentation on wrong reasons. Again we proceed in two steps of definition and divisions. Here is the first.

The definition of a wrong reason for any particular proof is:

That which (1) has been put forth as a reason for a particular proof, but (2) for which the relationship between the subject and the reason does not hold.

यश्चियः यथा देवः या स्वियः वश्चा स्वयः या स्वयः य

Here secondly are the divisions of wrong reasons for particular proofs. There are three different types:

- 1) Reasons which are wrong relative to meaning.
- 2) Reasons which are wrong relative to a state of mind.
- 3) Reasons which are wrong relative to the particular opponent.

याद्याः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वास्त्

The first of these may itself be divided into seven different types:

- 1) Reasons which are wrong because the very nature of the reason is non-existent.
- 2) Reasons which are wrong because the very nature of the subject is non-existent.
- 3) Reasons which are wrong because the reason and the quality to be proven are indistinguishable from one another.
- 4) Reasons which are wrong because the subject and the reason are indistinguishable from one another.
- 5) Reasons which are wrong because the subject and the quality to be proven are indistinguishable from one another.
- 6) Reasons which are wrong because the reason does not pertain to the subject in the way it has been said to in the statement of the proof.

7) Reasons which are wrong because some part of the reason fails to belong to the subject under consideration.

The following are respective examples of these types of reasons, in particular proofs:

1)

Consider a particular person.

They are a suffering being,

Because they have been impaled on a rabbit's antlers.

2)

Consider the antlers on the head of a rabbit.

They are a changing thing,

Because they were made.

ग्री:पार्श्वेशत्तर्थ। शुःस्याःम्। शुःस्याःतःलावःत्रःस्त्रेम। खेर्याःयार्ग्र्रःयदेःस्त्री नेःस्त्रुयः

3)

Consider sound.

It is a changing thing,

Because it is a changing thing.

4)

Consider sound. It is a changing thing, Because it is sound.

मुंकेंश उदा मुंधित है। जुरायदे धुरा बेरायमें रायदे हैं। रे मुंदा ग्री स्थार

5)

Consider sound.

It is sound,

Because it is something which was made.

म् देश्वरणी स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य

6)

Consider sound.

It is a changing thing,

Because it is something that you see with your eyes.

ब्रिंग्विरक्रिंग्ड्या श्रेश्रश्चा श्रेश्रश्चात्र्याचित्रः व्यात्रः वित्रः विद्यात्रः वि

7)

Consider a fruit tree.

It must be a conscious thing,

Because its leaves curl up and night and seem to sleep.

यक्षिश्वासः स्वार्थः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वासः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः

This brings us to the second kind of wrong reason: the one that is wrong relative to a state of mind. Here there are four different types:

- 1) Reasons that are wrong because the opponent entertains doubt about the very nature of the reason.
- 2) Reasons that are wrong because the opponent entertains doubt about the very nature of the subject.
- 3) Reasons that are wrong because the opponent entertains doubt about the connection between the subject and the reason.
- 4) Reasons that are wrong because there is nothing that the opponent has yet to understand.

The following are respective examples of these four, for particular proofs.

क्र-अयु:याब्यायु:ध्रेराययु:यार:बया:यो:रूर। श्रुंक्र:उद्या श्रे:ह्या:श्रे। पःवः

1) The following proof, presented to a person who has yet to confirm to himself that "flesh-eaters" [a kind of ghost] actually exist:

Consider sound.

It is a changing thing,

Because flesh-eaters are something which can be cognized through valid perception.

2) The following proof, presented to a person who has yet to confirm to himself that "smell-eaters" [spirits in the *bardo* or inbetween state] actually exist:

Consider the song of the smell-eaters.

It is a changing thing,

Because it is something that was made.

3) The following proof, presented to a person who doesn't know where a particular peacock is:

Consider that mountain vale over there. There must be a peacock living there, Because we can hear a peacock crowing.

यम्र्यात्रः स्त्रः स्त्राच्यायायाः मीः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राचः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राचः स्त्र

4) The following proof, presented to the glorious Dharmakirti:

Consider sound. It is a changing thing, Because it is something that was made.

यश्यायाः से विष्यायाः से विषयाः से विषयाः स्वाप्तायाः स्वाप्तायाः स्वाप्तायाः से विषयाः स्वाप्तायाः से विषयाः से विषयः से

Here thirdly is our explanation of reasons which are wrong relative to the particular opponent. There are three different kinds of these reasons:

- 1) Reasons which are wrong relative to the proponent.
- 2) Reasons which are wrong relative to the opponent.
- 3) Reasons which are wrong relative to both the opponent and the proponent.

Here are respective examples for these three types of reasons, in particular proofs.

यद्याः उदः यदः यदः युरा विद्यायमें दः यदे रेषे देश्चयः में दिर्धाः प्रदेशः स्थाः स्

1) The following proof, presented to a Buddhist by a Numerist [a member of the Sangkya, a non-Buddhist school of ancient India]:

Consider the intellect. It is something devoid of mind, Because it is something which starts and stops.

विष्यविष्यः व्यक्तः विष्यः विष

2) The following proof, presented to a Buddhist by a member of the Unclothed [or Jain school of ancient India]:

Consider a fruit tree. It must have a mind, Because it dies when you peel its bark.

3) The following proof, presented to a member of the Rejectionist [Lokayata] school by one of the Unclothed [Jain] school [both non-Buddhist groups of ancient India]:

Consider sound. It is a changing thing, Because it is something you see with your eyes. The Asian Classics Institute
Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Seven: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart, Part One

ह् ह श्रेट वोश्वायात्र याद्र स्ट्रिं स्ट्रिंट स्ट्रिंग प्रमुद्द स्ट्रिंग स

Eight Verses for Developing the Good Heart, written by the Kadampa Geshe named Diamond Lion, from the Plains of Langri

(1)

May I think of every living being As more precious than a wish-giving gem For reaching the ultimate goal, And so always hold them dear. वित्राक्षित्रः विश्वास्त्रः वित्रः वित्र वित्रः वित्रः विष्यः विषयः विषयः वित्रः वित्

When I'm with another, wherever we are, May I see myself as the lowest. May I hold the other as highest, From the bottom of my heart.

(3) विश्व स्थान स्या स्थान स्

As I go through the day may I watch my mind,
To see if a negative thought has come;
If it does may I stop it right there, with force,
Since it hurts myself and others.

। মন্ত্রির দর্শ এই ক্রিম্ম কর্টি। । শ্বীবা শ্বুবা ব্রবা র্ম কর্মির ক্রিম কর্মির ক্রি। । মীর ক্রির বাদিম ব্রহণ বেশ্বর বাবের বি

At times I will meet bad people, Tormented by strong bad deeds and pain. They are hard to find, like a mine of gold; And so may I hold them dear.

Some jealous person might do me wrong, Insult me, or something of the like; May I learn to take the loss myself, And offer them all the gain.

|यादःव्यःयद्याःयोश्यःयदःयद्यःयदःवित्र |देःयःकेःयःयादःवियाःयोश्य। |वेदःषुःश्रेःदेयाश्वःयार्देदःग्रेदःददः। |यवेश्वःयाष्ठेदःद्यःयदःवव्यःयदःवित्र। (6)

There may be times when I turn to someone With every hope they'll help me, And instead they do me great wrong; May I see them as my holy guide.

In brief may I give all help and joy
To my mothers, directly or some other way;
May I take all the hurt and pain of my mothers
In secret upon myself.

(8) विषयपार प्रमास्य प्रमास्य

May none of this ever be made impure By the eight ideas of things; May I see all things are illusion, and free Myself from the chains of attachment.

्रा विकायः स्तरः ने वृष्यः सद्यः या न्यस्यः स्वा प्रविवासः स्वा ।

Herein Contained are the Advices of the Victorious One, Yang Gunpa

The following advices are included in A Compendium of Texts on Developing the Good Heart (Blo-sbyong brgya-rtza), compiled by the great bodhisattva Muchen Konchok Gyeltsen (14th century), pp. 335-337. They were composed by Gyalwa Yang Gunpa (1213-1258), an illustrious master of the Kagyu tradition. The verses are old, and the copy that we have to work with seems to have a number of textual errors, which we have tried to work around but have largely left uncorrected.

The Victorious One, Yang Gunpa, once said:

्रावर्ष्य वर्ष्य वर्षे स्वास्त्र स्

Nothing that starts remains unchanged; Have no attachment, cut the ties. There's no happiness in this vicious circle; Get tired of it, find renunciation.

বিছিল্যান্ট্রর'থোস্ক্রীর'র্যাসীর'রা |ধুর'থোর্ন্ন্র'লাদর'মান্ত্রীরা |মর্মান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্তরমান্ত |বিছিল্যান্তরমান

The world is hollow and meaningless; Do not trust the lie. Your own mind is the Buddha; Go and meet your friend.

122.1

He also said:

विद्वी: द्वीय: क्षें चित्र स्था विव विद्वा विद्वा क्षें क्षें चित्र स्था क्षें विद्वा विद्वा क्षें क्षें क्षें क्षें क्षें क्षें क्षें विद्वा क्षें क्षे

The hour of life is passing; Start down the road to freedom. Send away the many thoughts of the busy life you lead; Bring to your side the many thoughts of what will happen later.

वित्रक्षेत्रः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्धिः स्वर्ध्वरः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्धिः स्वर्धिः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्धिः स्वर्धिः स्वर्धिः स्वा वित्रः स्वर्धिः स्वर्धः स्वर्धिः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्व

Everyone would like to stay, but no one has the power; Try to think of something that will come and help you later. It's hard to find a life with opportunity and leisure; Now for once you have, so try to get the most from it.

विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि विष्यायायदेशयास्येवि

It's easy to get used to mistakes; Post the sentry of your awareness.

The objects of the senses are good at tripping people up; Learn to hate useless things.

क्षिर्यक्षेत्रः भ्रम्भः विश्वेष्ठेष देशः श्री। विकेष्ट्रे

Nothing but the Dharma means anything at all; Throw the rest out like trash. It all boils down to dying; Pack light and take off now.

122.1

He also said:

|पक्कें,पःक्षेट्रायाः वर्ष्याः न्दः। |पक्कें,पःक्षेट्रायाः वर्ष्याः न्दः।

Put your death in your heart; This is the key for checking Whether your practice is tuned too tight or loose.

विष्यः यदे क्रिंत् क्रिंत् व्यायदे यात्र प्राथ्यः। विष्यः यदे क्रिंत् क्रिंत् व्यायदे यात्र प्राथ्यः।

Think of the viper's nest of the problems of this life; This is the key for stopping Attachment at the bottom of your heart.

।য়ৣ৾য়ৢয়ড়য়ৼৣ৽য়ৢ৾৽য়য়ৢ৽য়য়ৢঢ়য় ।য়ৣ৾য়ৢয়য়৾য়য়ৢয়য়ৢ৽য়য়ৣ৾৽য়য়ৢঢ়য়য়ৢ

Let every thought be of what others need; This is the key for making Everything you ever do the Dharma.

|প্রবাশ্ব:মু-শ্র-মা-মে-শ্রীশ:২८:। |বশ্বমা-শ্রী-শ্র-মা-মে-শ্রীশ:২८:।

Don't think of anything but your Lama; This is the key for turning Your mind and Theirs into one.

See the world and people as Angels; This is the key for stopping The idea that life is ordinary.

|यद्र-य-४:श्रु-य-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:वर्ष्ण-४:व

Whatever comes, make it crystal; This is the key for making This life turn to freedom, all by itself.

|मानर:र्नुमामी:मारुस्य:सर्दे।।

This last teaching is known as the "Advices on the Six Keys."

किलास्य प्रधान

The next one is called "The Four Kings."

| मूच:पत्र:मुव:र्य:प्रत्येग:हेब:र्य:प्रश्न:या

र्म्यातपुःभितात्त्यक्षेत्रःक्षैटायुःक्ष्यःक्षःअट्टाय्। भित्रात्त्रःभितात्त्यक्षेत्रःक्षःत्रात्त्रः

The King of Faith is thinking about your death.

The King of Practice is giving up on this world.

The King of Devotion is to see your Lama as the Buddha.

The King of Thoughts is to cut off your dependence
on seeing things as coming from their own side.

|याश्रुट:धर:|

He also said:

|यरे'य'बस्थार्य'याक्षेत्र'यर'यरेंर्'त्र| |यरेंर्'क्रया्य'याक्षेत्र'येंर्'ब्रॅट्स'र्ग्यो्स|

If you want to have every happiness, You must use the antidotes that keep you From liking things ignorantly.

बि.र्ज्ञरायक्रेयाव्यक्षकाः १८८८ स्थाः वि.र्ज्ञरायक्षकाः १८८५ स्थाः वि.र्ज्ञरायक्षकाः स्थाः

If you want to free yourself from all pain, You must use the antidotes that keep you From disliking things ignorantly.

। त्रानिः सुवाः त्याः विदः सुवः विद्यः यरः वर्षे राषाः । वानिः सुवाः त्याः वानिकः देशे विद्यः प्रतिका

If you want to reach matchless Enlightenment, You must use the antidotes that keep you From being ignorant.

|सर्वो:र्बर्यायायाद्येर्यःर्वेर्याः |सःकुव्याव्यायाद्येर्यःर्वेर्यः

If you want to stand independent on your own, You must use the antidotes that keep you From feeling any pride.

If you want to stop all obstacles, You must use the antidotes that keep you From feeling jealousy.

यार्थेट्या विद्यात्र्याः च्याः क्र्याः योष्ट्रियाः यार्थेद्याः यार्थेद्याः यार्थेद्याः यार्थेद्याः यार्थेद्याः

There is not a single important point in all of the teachings of the Dharma which is not found in these words. Go then and pray for blessings; go then and think hard about these things.

1445.1

He also said,

Post the sentry of thinking about impermanence, and let him guard your faith.

Beat the horse of your spiritual practice with the whip of joyful effort.

Let your own mind be the witness who testifies whether you've kept your pledges.

If you need an enemy to fight, then stop the five poisons that live inside of you.

The "five poisons" are the mental afflictions of liking things ignorantly, disliking things ignorantly, being ignorant, pride, and jealousy; these have appeared in the verses just above.

اسح.ا

He also said:

|अद्याक्त्र्यात्रीः स्वाद्यात्र्या |द्वित्रक्त्र्यात्रीः स्वाद्यात्र्या |दर्वे द्वित्रक्षात्रीः स्वाद्यात्र्या |वे व्यव्यात्रे स्वाद्यात्र्यात्र्या |व्यव्यव्यात्रे स्वाद्यात्र्यात्र्या

Faith is the very root of all the Dharma of the Gods.
Feeling sick of this life is the very root of all fine people.
Compassion is the very root of working to help others.
Devotion is the very root of receiving every blessing.
Whatever realizations you have are the very root of the Buddhas.

। स.च. केंद्र

These are known as the "Five Roots."

|प्रश्नुर:पःख्रःह्य

He also taught something called the "Five Changes":

र्मिट श्रम्भ श्रीट हिर पश्चीर प्रा क्रियाश्यम्भ श्रम्भ श्ची स्मार पश्चीर प्रा |स्मार्भ सम्बद्ध स्मार पश्चीर प्रा |स्मार्भ सम्बद्ध सम्बद्ध

।श्चेर्-तामाक्ष्माश्चेर्-त्यश्चरमा ।श्चेर्-तामाक्ष्माश्चेर-त्यश्चरमा

Change your idea that nothing will change into thoughts of death. Change your desire for things into the realization that everything is an illusion.

Change your anger into compassion.

Change the way you live now into a life of Dharma.

Change all the ideas you have into worldview.

اسح

And he also said:

विष्युः सुः हेशः हुँ दःयः युँ द्या

The legacy of the past Is a life you can well regret; Dregs from your old attachments, Leave that all behind now.

रि:र्र्यायाग्री:यशयामु:धेरा |अ:र्य्यथाग्री:यशयामु:धेरा

The thousand hopes you entertain Are something standing far away To lead you to the future; Leave that all behind now.

|८.क्षं.य.ज.चच्च्ची८.ता |क्याबाक्चट.यी.ल्.जटबालाव्य

Working for the things of now Is a cauldron where you cook Anger and attachment; Leave that all behind now.

।क्रमःभेदःस्र्रीरःलुभःग्रीमःभ्रीरःयोश्यरमा ।यारःवरःयञ्जा

Decide that all you see here is The Realm of the Uncreated, A taste of the Voidness Body; Keep this with you now.

1221

And finally did the Victorious One, Yang Gunpa, speak the following:

विश्वस्त त्री स्वर्ण त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य विश्वस्त क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य क्ष्य त्र क्ष्य क

Keep these seven Dharma teachings in your heart, and let your Dharma practice be something that you do inside yourself:

- 1) This sickness didn't just happen by itself; so use the medicine and get rid of it.
- 2) On the level of appearances, karma and its consequences never fail; so clean away your bad karma, your bad deeds and your obstacles.

- 3) The reality of things is beyond the mind; so reside in a state where you hold to nothing. [This statement should not be taken literally, but rather interpreted in light of the teachings of the Middle Way.]
- 4) Grasping to things as self-existent is what forces you to take birth; so cut the ties of all your hopes and dreams.
- 5) Your inner nature is the Body of Voidness; so recognize how sick you are.
- 6) Whatever happens is a holy blessing; so think of everything that happens as an attainment.
- 7) Think whatever you want; but don't think of anything as pain.

1144.6.311

Sarva shubham!
May all be goodness and beauty!

Herein Lies the Root Text of
"The Seven-Step Practice for Developing a Good Heart,"
Advices for Training Oneself in the Greater Way

The following version of the Seven-Step Practice for Developing a Good Heart was excerpted from a "short woodblock" (dpe-thung) format edition, including the text of Lord Atisha's Lamp for the Path, in the possession of Sermey Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin. The text is quite old and had a number of apparent problems; the following version has been compiled using several other editions for comparison.



Om svasti!

Om! May there be goodness!

ब्रयान्यःकेन्द्रम्यद्रम्यन्त्रम्यन्त्रम्भूत्रःय। विद्यत्रम्भूत्रःय। विद्यत्रम्भूत्रःयः

चश्चनःचः नदः चर्त्वः ची।

चश्चनःचः नदः चर्त्वः ची।

चश्चनःचः नदः चर्त्वः चीः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः चीः व्यान्तः व्यानः वयानः व्यानः व्यानः

Now there are a great many ways of teaching those advices for training oneself in the greater way—the *lojong*, or instructions for developing the good heart. In the tradition of the spiritual friend, the geshe, Chekawa, these instructions are organized into a seven-part practice. These seven are:

- 1) Instructions on the foundation Dharma, the preliminary practices;
- 2) The actual practice for developing the Wish for Enlightenment [bodhichitta];
- 3) Learning to use problems as a path to Enlightenment;
- 4) A summary of an entire lifetime's practice;
- 5) The point at which one can say that he or she has successfully developed the good heart;
- 6) Pledges to keep for developing the good heart; and
- 7) Certain advices on developing the good heart.

दर्चित्रः हेन्द्रगया वक्षेत्रः स्वाया विद्रः प्रवेष्ठेशः दश्चेषाया देशः विश्वः विश्वः

Part One: Instructions on the Foundation Dharma, The Preliminary Practices

The first of these is expressed in the following line of the root text:

Train yourself first in the preliminaries.

These preliminaries come in three parts: meditating on your spiritual opportunities and fortunes, and considering how difficult it is to obtain them; meditating upon your own death, the fact that you are impermanent; and meditating upon the problems of this vicious circle of suffering.

लय.जया.चर्ये.ता.वर्येजा जीका.चर्येटा। रेर्येचाका.क्षेट्रा.चाष्ट्रचा.प्रे.का.वर्षिचाका.तट्टाचा व्यक्षिणा.चर्याची ह्या.क्ष्री रेटा.क्ष्री श्रीचका.क्ष्राचा चाक्ष्राचारचा चाक्ष्यात्मर्थेका श्रीट्रा.चाची ह्या.क्ष्रीट्रा.चा.जा.चाक्ष्रीच्या.च्याच्याची ह्या.च्याची ह्याची ह्या.च्याची ह्या.च्याची ह्याची ह्या.च्याची ह्याची ह्य

Part Two: The Actual Practice for Developing The Wish for Enlightenment (Bodhichitta)

The second part, on the actual practice for developing the Wish for Enlightenment, has two steps of its own: developing the ultimate Wish, and developing the apparent Wish. There are three sections within the first of these steps: the preparation, the actual practice, and the conclusion. For the preparation, you should do the following: bring to mind thoughts of taking refuge; make supplications; offer the various steps of the seven-part practice; take your meditation position with your body carefully straightened up; and then count your breaths up to 21, without losing track at all.

चल्या । यानेन संस्था में त्या स्था । व्यानेन संस्था । व्

The second step, the actual practice, is found in the following lines of the root text:

Learn to see all things as a dream; Examine the nature of the mind, unborn. The antidote itself is gone to is; Let it go in the essence, source of all things.

নার্মানার। প্রবামর্মমান্ত্রী,পার্, শ্রীরা,বীর, বী

The third step, the conclusion, is expressed in the next line of the root text:

Inbetween sessions, be a figment of the imagination.

यर है। यहिंदा के प्रश्निय के

The second more general step, meditating on the apparent Wish for Enlightenment, has two sections: deep meditation, and the period after this. Here is the first:

Practice giving and taking, alternately; Let the two ride on the wind.

क्र्या-योश-श्री । त्येष-तयु-स्य-स्य-स्य-स्य । श्री-त्यय-ग्रीष-ह-

And here is the second:

Three objects, three poisons, three stores of virtue. Practice throughout the day, in words. The order of taking's to start with yourself.

भिष्यात्र स्थान्य स्यान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्य

Part Three: Learning to Use Problems as a Path to Enlightenment

The third main part, learning to use problems as a path to Enlightenment, is found in the following lines of the root text:

When the world and those in it are full of bad deeds, Learn to use problems as a path to Enlightenment.

पर्सुस्र।

पर्सुस्र।

पर्सुस्र।

प्राप्त प्रम्म प्रम्भ प्रम्म प्

Here there are two different steps: how to think, and how to act. The first has two sections of its own: the apparent and the ultimate. Here is the first:

The blame all belongs to only one person. Practice seeing them all full of kindness.

गहेशयहै। त्व्राश्चर भूपितेर पर्भेर परभेर परभेर पर्भेर परभेर परभेर पर्भेर परभेर पर्भेर पर्भेर परभेर पर्भेर परभेर परभेर

See the deception as being four bodies; Emptiness is the matchless protector.

पर्सूश्र.र.सैर.। ब्रैरा गर्न्य ज्ञासूरा क्र्यासूरामक्र्या मक्र्या मक्र्या परस्यायायार विचारा विक्रियारा सूर प्रायम् विक्रा स्था सूर्या प्रस्था स्थारा

Next is the step on how to practice in your actions:

The four acts are the supreme method. On the spot, turn all that happens to practice.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: These four are accumulating masses of good karma; cleaning oneself of bad karma; making offerings to harmful spirits; and making offerings to protectors of the Dharma.

| क्रूंचर्याक्तिंदत्तवः तद्। य्र्यावायात् । न्यानः त्र्यावायात् । क्रुंचराक्षेत्रः तद्ये क्रुंवः तद्ये। क्रुंवः तद्ये क्रिंवः तद्ये क्रुंवः तद्ये क्

संस्था न्यान्त्रःश्चरःयरः च्या श्चयाः क्षेत्रः यदेश्यदेशयान्यस्यः न्याः द्वी । श्चेत्रसः स्याः वि । श्चेत्रसः

Part Four:
A Summary of an Entire Lifetime's Practice

The brief essentials of the instruction Are combined within five powers. In the great way these same five are the advices For sending your mind; cherish the act.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The five powers are those of resolutions for the future; of accustoming yourself; of pure white seeds; of destruction; and of prayer.

> Part Five: The Point at Which One Can Say That He or She has Successfully Developed the Good Heart

All Dharma comes down to a single point. There are two judges; keep the main one. Be joy alone, in an unbroken stream. It's there when you can keep it unthinking.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The two judges here are yourself and others. [Reading *rang gzhan* for *rang bzhin.*]

त्वाय में भ्रिट की त्रा केवा वस्त्रय वि श्रिट्त वास्त्रा विष्या विष्य स्वाय विषय विषय

Part Six:
Pledges to Keep for Developing the Good Heart

Keep to the three laws.
Change your mind and stay the same.
Speak not of what was broken.
Never worry about what they're doing.
Rid yourself of the biggest affliction first.
Never hope for any reward.
Stop eating poison food.
Don't let the stream flow smooth.
Forget repaying criticism.
Give up laying ambushes.
No going for the jugular.
Load your own truck, no passing the buck.
Don't get fixed on speed.
Don't feed the wrong face.
Don't turn the sweet angel to a devil.

Don't look for crap to make yourself happy.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The three laws are never acting in a way that contradicts what you have committed yourself to; never placing yourself in a dangerous situation; and never falling into the habit of discriminating between others.

Part Seven:
Certain Advices on Developing the Good Heart

Do all the practices with but one. Let all the mistakes be made by one.

पर्नेट्रा पर्नेट्रपर यी । पार्केश स्राक्ष्य श्री पार्केश स्राक्ष्य । स्री पार्ट्य पर्नेट्र प

Do two at the two of beginning and end. Bear with whichever comes of the two. Keep the two at the cost of your life.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The "two" in the second line are being well off and being poor. The "two" in the third line are your general spiritual pledges and the pledges of the instructions on developing the good heart.

त्र.ची चश्चनची चश्च्यो जैश्वन्याज्ञेर्याश्च्याचीयः देन। व्यक्ताश्चर्याश्च्याची श्व्याची वर्श्च्याची श्व्याची श्वयाची श्

Train yourself in the three kinds of hardship. Take to yourself the three main causes.

Live in three ways that never get weaker. Keep the three that should never be lost.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The "three hardships" are learning to detect the start of a mental affliction; to stop it; and to stop the habit. The "three main causes" are finding a Lama, practicing the Dharma, and having all the support you need to practice the Dharma come together. The "three ways" are feeling devotion [for your Lama], joy [for practicing the *lojong* or instructions for developing a good heart], and keeping your various vows and commitments [through strong awareness and recollection]. The "three that should never be lost" are virtuous actions in your actions, your words, and your thoughts.

|योव्यायाः स्वायाः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः प्रमुद्धाः । मिन्यः प्रम्यावितः प्रमुद्धाः स्वाप्तः याचे स्वाप्तः याचे स्व

Act towards each one free of bias; Spread your love, and make it deep. Constantly think of the special ones; Don't let it depend on circumstances.

ल्ट्रिस्य प्रिया प्रमान्ध्रिय प्रिया प्रमान्ध्रिय प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्रिय प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्रिय प्रमान्ध्र प्रमान्ध्र प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्र प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्य प्रमान्ध्र प्रमान्ध्य प्रम

বশ্বনন্ত্র-অ'ঐল্বাম্য-মম্যন্ত্র-মম্য

Act now, do the most important thing.

Don't get it backwards.

Don't be on and off.

Make up your mind and stick to it.

Figure out both and free yourself.

Stop thinking all the time about how wonderful you are.

Don't let little things get to you.

Don't change from moment to moment.

Don't expect any thanks.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: When you have trained yourself well in these, then you will be able to do the following:

भिराम्यायत्त्रं प्राप्ते प्रा

Turn these five signs of the days of darkness Around us into a path to enlightenment. These words of advice are the essence of nectar; They were passed down through Serlingpa.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: The five signs are transformed into learning to endure without anger; feeling inspired to practice; a feeling of sweetness; thoughts of compassion; and great aspiration—and so the mind itself becomes the path. [The five signs of the days of darkness, which are said to be going on now, are: the darkness of the times, marked by strife; the darkness of lifespans, which have dropped to less than a hundred; the darkness of worldviews, very mistaken and difficult to change in people; the darkness of mental afflictions, strong and protracted; and the darkness of beings themselves, with minds and senses that are out of control.] The last two lines are meant to indicate that this instruction is one with an authoritative source.

म् अद्भारत्वेर क्षेत्र क्षेत्

Karmic seeds from following this practice in my past lives Were awakened, and the urge to teach this to others came to me On many occasions. And so I have finished it, these words Of instruction for beating the tendency of seeing things As having some nature of their own, and I have ignored All kinds of trouble and the derision of others to do so.

Now I can die, Without a shred of regret.

Note by the Tibetan commentator: In these words, that king of all deep practitioners, Chekawa, expresses the greatness of the instruction, for he has succeeded in applying it to his own heart.

Incidentally, there are many different versions of this root text: some are longer or shorter, and in others the lines come in a different order. I've set this one down here following the version found in the book of instruction by the bodhisattva Tokme.

Mangalam! May goodness prevail! The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Eight: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart, Part Two

्रा । विष्यः यः यविः य्याः योः या न्याः यव्याया ।

Herein Contained are the Advices known as "Freedom from the Four Attachments"

७७। ।ॐ.४.४.४.४.४

Om svasti siddhi! Om, may we reach goodness.

र्येट्याक्री में यात्र विष्टात्र्याय विष्याय के विषया के विषया

When the holy Lama, the Great One, the Sachen, was twelve years of age, he spent six months in a deep practice to reach the Realized One, Manjushri.

One day he had a direct vision of the Lord, Manjushri. His body was a russet gold, and he sat atop a throne of jewels, in the midst of a great mass of pure light. He held his hands in the gesture of teaching the Dharma, and sat with

a look of perfect beauty, flanked by a pair of bodhisattvas. And then he spoke the following words:

A person who is still attached to this life is no Dharma practitioner. A person who is still attached to the three worlds has no renunciation. A person who is still attached to getting what they want is no bodhisattva. A person who still grasps to things has no worldview.

डेश.वेश.विर.तर.वर.र्स्य.तर्म्य.त्य.स्य.स्य.स्य.स्य.प्रेस.स्य.प्रे

And the Sachen thought carefully about the meaning of these words. And he came to realize that the entire practice of the path of the perfections could all be found here, in these words for developing the good heart, called "Freedom from the Four Attachments." And thus did he come to an extraordinary level of understanding all the things there are.

|रास्त्रस्रस्री

Samaptam iti!
With this, all is spoken.

बिन'यःयबि:ययःयब्यायःस्त्रा। बिन'यःयबि:ययःयब्यायःस्त्रायः

Herein Contained is "Freedom from the Four Attachments," as Taught by the Holy Lama Drakpa Gyeltsen

From my very heart I go for protection To the kind one, my Lama, And to my close Angel, the compassionate one; I beg that you grant me your blessing.

१५/छि८-क्री.क्षेत्र-दे.चाक्र्यान्य-चक्री। १९९४-त्र-चलुर-स्प्रियान्य-छिट-त्र-त्या १क्ष्य-चलुर-स्प्रियान्य-छिट-त्य-त्या १क्ष्य-भूत-स्प्रियान्य-चक्षी।

I'll give the advices of freedom from four attachments, For those who see no point in what's not Dharma, And who hope to practice in keeping with it; I beg you now to listen well.

विष्ट्रायाः विष्यः वास्त्रायः स्त्रीयः । विष्ट्रायः विष्यः वास्त्रायः स्त्रीयः

|यद्यार्द्रेदःयःलेदःदःयदःशेशशःशेद। |यद्यःयःतुदःदःश्चःयःशेद।

A person who is still attached to this life is no Dharma practitioner.

A person who is still attached to the three worlds has no renunciation.

A person who is still attached to getting what they want is no bodhisattva.

A person who still grasps to things has no worldview.

|इट्ट्राक्ट्र्यंक्ट्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्यंक्ट्र्य

Here is the first. Give up attachment to this life. Anyone who keeps the ethical life, Or practices the three of learning, Contemplation, and meditation, Only for goals of this life has slipped Into someone who is no practitioner of the Dharma.

क्रियाः यक्ष्यः क्रींटः यदः यक्षितः र्वः क्षा विक्रः यः यञ्जीयः यदः व्रवः श्रम्भशः व्या व्याः स्रमः यञ्जीयः यदः व्याः श्रमः व्याः व्याः स्रमः व्याः व्याः यदः व्याः व्याः व्याः

Suppose that first we talk about The ethical life. If you keep it, You've planted the roots of a higher life. You stand on the stairway to freedom. You've found the antidote that cures Every form of pain.

निर्द्धभाषातः स्वीता स

There's no way you can do without
Living the ethical life. But if you do so
Because you're attached to goals of this life,
Then you've planted the roots for living in
The eight worldly thoughts.
You'll disparage those whose ethics are less.
You'll feel jealous of those who keep
Their ethics well. The ethics you follow yourself
Will be done for the recognition of others.
You will plant the seeds for the lower realms.
You will slip into being a person
Whose ethical life is a sham.

A person who follows the arts of learning
And contemplation gains resources
That will allow them to reach all knowable things.
People like this in the world are a lamp
That dispels the darkness of ignorance;
They're guides who show us the way to go,
And possess the seeds that will bring them
The Body of Reality.

विष्याच्यायाः भित्रः भ्रम् । विष्याच्यायाः भ्रम् । विष्याच्याः । विष्याः । विष्याच्याः । विष्याचः । विष्याचः । विष्याचः । विष्याः । विष्याचः । विष्याः । विष्याचः । विष्याः । विष्याः । विष

There's no way you can do without Learning and contemplation. But a person Whose learning and contemplation are done Attached to worldly kinds of goals Is only gaining the resources which Will allow them to reach the state of pride. They will speak badly of those whose learning And contemplation are less than theirs. They will be jealous of others Whose learning and contemplation are good. The people around them, and all they own, Will never be very stable. They are planting roots to grow As a birth in the lower realms. They have slipped into learning and contemplation That is lost to the eight worldly thoughts.

বিষ্কুষ্ণ নামুষ্ণ নাম বিষ্কুষ্ণ নাম বিষ্কুষ

Every person who follows the practice Of meditation gains a medicine That removes the mental afflictions. They plant the roots of freedom, They plant the seeds of enlightenment.

There's no way you can do without
Learning to meditate. But a person
Whose meditation is focused upon
Achieving worldly kinds of goals
Is a person who in the midst of the forest
Is living in a downtown crowd.
The prayers that they recite
Are worthless blabber.
They put down those who study and contemplate.
They feel jealous of others who meditate.
Their meditative concentration
Has slipped into one-pointedness of mind
Upon these same eight worldly thoughts.

If you wish to reach to nirvana, then You must also seek to eliminate All attachment to the three realms. To abandon your attachment to These three, you must now seek To remember all the problems here In the vicious circle of suffering.

नियार्थं व्याग्यार्थं व्याग्यार्थं व्याप्ता । वित्रां वित्रां

First comes the pain of pain;
The sufferings of the lower realms.
If you really think them over,
Your efforts in the spiritual life
Will consume every atom of your being.
If they suddenly happened to you,
You would never be able to bear it.
He who fails in accomplishing
The virtue of giving up anything
That hurts another being
Is a farmer plowing the fields

Of the lower realms for himself; And pity the man or woman Who ends up in those realms.

विष्ट्र-विश्व व्यक्ति विष्टि विष्यक्ति विष्य विष्टि विष्टि विष्य विष्य विष्य विष्टि विष्य विष्य वि

Think about the pain of change.
People in the higher births
Fall to the lower realms.
The King of the Gods
Becomes a normal person.
The Sun and the Moon
Pass into darkness.
The Emperor of the World,
The Mighty One of the Wheel,
Turns into someone's servant.

निःख्राः वान्ते वा वा स्थाः क्षेत्रः वा निःख्राः वा वा स्थाः वा स

You can believe that all these things exist,
Because they are spoken in the Word of the Buddha.
Most ordinary people though
Still cannot grasp that they are true.
Look then around you, at the world
Of human beings you can see.
Rich men turn to poor.
The arrogant are humbled.
Masses of people
Are whittled down to one alone.
These and everything like them
Are simply beyond our minds.

विक्याम् निक्याम् स्वान्य स्व

Think of the universal pain.
The things you have to do
Will never end.
It hurts to be around many people,
And it hurts to be around few.
It hurts to have money,
And it hurts to be hungry.
Everyone alive is standing in line,

And the line moves to the final end.
When they reach the front of the line,
Everybody dies.
But the lines don't end there.
You join the back of the line
In the next realm you must go.
Pity the man or woman
Who feels any attachment
To the mind and body of a being
In this vicious circle of pain.

୲ୡ୕ୡ୕୳୷ୠୖୡ୴ୠ୴ୠ୴୷ୢୄୗ୲୵ୠୄ୵୴ୄ ୲ୡୢ୲୵୕ୡ୕୷୕୕ୣ୕୕୕୕୕୕୕୕୕୕ ୲ୡ୕ୡ୕୳୷ୠ୕ୡ୴ୠ୷ୠ୷ୠୄ୕୷

Freeing yourself from all attachment is nirvana. Nirvana is happiness itself. I sing to you of the joy Of freedom from two attachments.

| प्रमान्त्रियाः सुः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स्ट्रान्तः स | प्रमान्त्रस्याः प्रमुख्याः स्ट्रान्तः स्

It's useless to reach freedom by yourself. Every living being in all three realms Is your father and mother. Pity the man or woman Who thinks only of their own happiness And leaves their father and mother Smothered in suffering.

বিশ্ব বিশ্র বিশ্ব বিশ্র

বিশ্বর্থ বিশ্বরাধ্যর বিশ্বর বিশ্বর

Let all the pain of the three realms
Ripen upon me.
Let every living being
Take all of my goodness.
By the mystic power of this good deed,
May every living being
Reach their own enlightenment.

It doesn't matter who or where you are;
As long as you still grasp to things
And believe they have some nature of their own,
You will never be liberated.
The details go like this:
If you hold that things exist as they seem,
You will never go to freedom;
If you hold that things then can't exist,
You will never find a higher birth;
And you could hardly hold to both.
Live then happily in that place
Where neither is the case.

Jર્જે અંગુર એઅઅ ગુૈ : ર્ક્કેટ પ્લુવ પ્લેર J

।श्रेम्रसःक्षेत्रःग्रीःस्टाःस्यासःस्यासः ।वर्गुदःचित्रेते ग्रीत्रःस्यास्यःसःस्याःस्यः ।सुःत्रःचित्रःग्रीःस्याःस्यासःस्या

Every object that exists
Is a world of the mind.
Don't go looking for
Some builder of the universe,
Some god who made all things.
Live now happily
In the nature of your mind.

विद्नित्यक्षीः स्टायान्य विद्ना । विद्नित्यक्षियायः विद्नित्यः स्ट्रीयः विद्यान्ते । विद्नित्यः स्ट्रीयः स्टायाः विद्याः विद्यान्ते । विद्नित्यः स्ट्रीयः स्टायान्ते ।

All the things that appear to you Are as real as a magic trick; All of them occur In dependence on something else. How could anyone really hear These words we have to say? Live now happily In a place of wordlessness.

विष्यः स्वीक्षः स्वायः स्वर्णे द्रायः स्वित् । विष्यः सः स्वर्षः स्वर्णे स्वर

By the virtue of the virtuous deed I've done in teaching these four kinds Of freedom from attachment, May every living being there is Be sent to a world of enlightenment.

शःश्रुदे: न्यून: तर्शा॥ विषय: प्राचि: प्राच: प्

These words of advice, known as "Freedom from the Four Attachments," were written by the deep practitioner Drakpa Gyeltsen at the glorious monastery of Sakya.

्रा । र्से ह्यें ट : द्र स्था स्थाय दे : त्रिस : स्था ।

Herein Contained are the Instructions on Developing a Good Heart Named "The Celestial Mansions"

<u>्</u>रा क्षेत्र्ञ्

Om svasti!
Om! Let there be goodness!

।स्यायित्वित्यः स्यायाः स्यायाः ।याद्वितः स्यायः वित्यायाः स्यायाः ।स्यायाः वित्यः स्यायः स्यायः स्यायाः ।स्यायाः वित्यः स्यायः स्यायाः स्यायाः

The true sign that they have succeeded In developing the good heart Has come to any person who Is full of twelve spiritual qualities

As the Ganges is full of drops of water And the way the expanse of the whole night sky Is covered with the celestial mansions.

["Celestial mansions" is a code word for the number twelve, since there are twelve major constellations in ancient Asian astrology as well.]

१धीर-केश्वास्त्र-दि-त्यायः देवः द्वा १योवदः यः वियः केदः यविदः श्रीः वदा १द्यः यरः दुदः दुरः दुद्यः द्वा १द्यः यरः दुदः दुरः दुद्यः द्वारः उदा

Now you can always count on them,
They always repay the kindness received.
They lend a hand to all who come,
And are soft and gentle to everyone.
They are courteous in their behavior to others,
And act as a servant to all.
They listen well what needs to be done,
And greet you with a joyful smile.

|यार्ष्यः प्रदेयः श्राःयः श्रुरः र्ययः वयुरा |देगः विदः प्रवेशः श्रीदः स्वायः द्वदः से। |द्वाः विदः प्रवेशः श्रीद्वाः स्वायः स्व

They use with respect resources we share, And their courage is always evident. Their places are clean and simple, They are getting their paradise ready, And the Dharma has captured their hearts. People like this are truly kings Of the great soaring lords, the garudas; They will pass with speed to the heaven Where the Youthful Guide holds court.

[The "Youthful Guide" refers to Manjushri, the Angel of Wisdom, in his form as a vigorous young man.]

শ্ৰম্মই.তু

Sarva mangalam! May goodness ever prevail!

In his explanation of Freedom from Four Attachments, the holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen describes the suffering of the three lower realms, and says we should "pity the man or woman who ends up in those realms." The following quotation, from Lord Buddha himself, is used by Je Tsongkapa and other eminent Lamas to explain just where these realms really exist:

वित्रं नः ने द्वा क्षा यह स्वा द्वा क्षा यह स्वा क्षा विषय क्षा क्षा विषय क

Lord Buddha spoke the following, in the Sutra Requested by Upali:

When I taught you of the terrors
Of the realms of hell,
Many thousands of those among you
Were frightened and dismayed.
But I tell you now,
That those people who die and travel
To these terrible realms of pain
Don't even exist at all.

There is no one to hurt you,
No one to cut you with a sword,
No one to thrust a spear through your body;
Everything that you see happening to you
Within these realms of terror
Is only a projection;
There are no instruments of pain there.

१श्वः र्क्ष्याश्राधितः त्रावः श्रे त्रिं त्राप्तः विद्वतः श्वेतः ।

। याश्रेतः श्वेः त्राप्तः व्यव्यवः श्वेतः व्याः ।

। याश्रेतः त्राप्तः त्राप्तः व्यावः श्रेतः त्राः ।

। त्राः त्राः क्ष्याः प्रवेः त्राप्तः याव्याः याः थेतः ।

। क्ष्याः प्रवेः त्राप्तः व्याः त्रीशः यव्याः स्रोतः ।

। क्ष्याः प्रवेः त्राप्तः विश्वः विश्वः स्राधः यह्याशः हो।

Flowers blossom in a rainbow
Of pleasing, elegant blooms;
Mighty structures crafted of pure gold
Steal your heart away.
But here too no one ever came
And stopped to do construction;
All of these were also built
By the single act of projection—
The whole world is but a creation
That comes from your projections.

्री। ह्या.त. कुष. तृत्तुं हुँ ट. अकूष. क. ट. तृत्र र. जू. चर्षिया श. हूं।।

Herein lie the instructions on developing the good heart entitled "The Wheel of Knives"

This work on developing the good heart was presented to Lord Atisha (982-1052) by the Indian master Dharma Rakshita. The selections found here are taken from a version in the Dharmsala edition of The Compendium of Texts on Developing the Good Heart, pp. 96-110. Please note that many different editions of the texts exist, with spellings that sometimes vary greatly; we have used some of these in the present translation where it appeared more correct.

। दर्गोदः सर्केना मासुसः या सुना वर्कवा वे।

I bow down to the Three Precious Jewels.

। द्या में या बद त्या द्या पा अर्के ब करे त्य में र त्यें लेश ग्रुपा

Here is "The Wheel of Knives," an instruction which strikes the enemy at his heart.

विं में मिने महित मिने न ता सुमा वर्ष वा वें।

I bow down to the Angry One, the Lord of Death.

| पर्यः र्याः प्रदेरः ग्रीकाः सः योः पर्यः पः स्रो। | सः येतः क्र्यां काः संस्थाः रायायः प्रसः स्थाः प्रश्चीरः ग्रीः | स्थितः ग्रीः स्थाः सः प्रायावाः प्रसः स्थाः स्थाः ग्रीरः ग्रीरः । | पर्यः रियाः प्रयावाः श्वः सः योः ग्रीः पः वा

Peacocks wander in the midst
Of a forest of poison trees;
A garden of healing herbs and plants
May be something lovely,
But peacocks have no love for them—
They live off poison itself.

|र्स्याःचर्चराःद्वार्थःस्याशःशुःश्रेसशःद्वाःयःस्याः |प्रयः त्वाःदेःक्याशःयः स्थः व्याः स्याः |प्रयः त्वाःदेःक्याशःयः स्थः व्याः स्याः |प्रयः त्वांद्वः प्रयाशःशः स्थः व्याः स्याः स्थाः |प्रयः त्वांद्वः प्रयाशः श्रेष्ट्याः प्रयाः स्थाः

Bodhisattva warriors are the same:
A garden of comfort and pleasures
May be something lovely,
But the warriors have no attachment for them—
They live off a forest of pain.

The kings of cowardice who pursue Comfort and pleasure find themselves Transported instead to pain. Those mighty warriors who pursue Pain for others find themselves Forever surrounded by bliss, By the power of their courage.

Now in this place desire is like A forest of poison trees;

Bodhisattva warriors, like peacocks, Are strong enough to take it. Cowards though are like the crow, For these same leaves are death to it—How could those who only think Of what they want themselves Ever have the strength to eat This poison?

१८८.टे.धट्याताद्यात्त्र,याब्यात्यात्या १८वा.चा.च्यायात्यात्याः श्राच्यात्याः १८वा.चा.च्यायात्याः श्राच्यात्याः १८वा.चा.च्यायात्याः श्राच्यात्याः १८वा.चा.च्यायात्याः श्राच्यात्याः १८वा.चा.च्यायात्याः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्या १८वा.च्यायायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः १८वा.च्यायायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः १८वा.च्यायायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायायः श्राच्यायाः श्राच्यायः श्राचः श्राच्यायः श्राच्यायः श्राच्यायः श्राच्यायः श्राचः श्राचः श्राचः श्राचः श्राचः श्रा

The same is true with all the other Mental afflictions there are;
These are enough to threaten the life Of nirvana for those like crows.
The peacock bodhisattvas though Turn the poison forest of Their mental afflictions into opportunities, And food to keep them strong.
They leap then into the forest Of this vicious circle of life;
They make it an opportunity,
And thus destroy the poison.

।मालय-र्नेय-नगद-शुर-५८-५-१ स्ट-५८-१।

Realize now that grasping for yourself Is the henchman of the devil And keeps you here in this vicious circle, Helpless to help yourself.
Run now far from the state of mind That only wants what's good for me, That only wants what feels good, And happily take upon yourself Any hardship for others' sake.

|ग्रायाः हेः स्टायर्ट् द्रायहाः यात्र्याः स्ट्रीयाः विकाः स्ट्रीयाः यात्राः स्ट्रीयाः यात्राः स्ट्रीयाः यात्रा |हिः सूर्यः यद्याः याः यहितः स्ट्रीयः याः स्ट्रीयः स्

Whenever I feel myself being carried Away by what I want,
May I stop myself and give away
My own happiness to others.
Whenever those who've pledged to help me Instead do something very wrong,
May I say to myself, "It's because I failed
To keep my mind on goodness,"
And thus put my heart at ease.

Whenever my body is stricken By some unbearable sickness, It's because the wheel of knives Has turned on me again: The karma of doing harm To the bodies of other people. From now on then I'll take upon My own body all the sickness That comes to anyone at all.

|८.४.ईच्।चर्चतामाःयोश्वरः त्यः धट्या |त्यश्चर्यः मक्ष्यः कः रटः त्यः वृद्यः त्यः प्रेम् | |दश्वः त्यरः चित्वः च्चीः श्रेभशः क्चितः त्यो व्यश्वरः तः प्रेम | |रटः चीःश्वभश्वः त्यः त्याः वृद्यः त्याः व्याः व्याः

Whenever I feel any pain
Inside of my own thoughts,
It's because the wheel of knives
Has turned on me again:
Beyond a doubt it's the karma
Of upsetting other people.
From now on then I'll take on myself
The hurt that others feel.

|८.४.५४४५४५४५४५४५४५४५४५४१ |त्रमाद्य, प्रमुख्य, श्रम्भः श्रमः श्रम

Whenever I find myself tormented By feelings of thirst and hunger, It's because the wheel of knives Has turned on me again: The karma of burdening others financially, Of thieving, of stealing, of failing to share. From now on then I'll take on myself The hunger and thirst of others.

Whenever I suffer in the service Of another whose authority is more, It's because the wheel of knives Has turned on me again: The karma of arrogance towards those Who are less than me, And forcing others to do my work. From now on then I'll force another, I'll force my own body and life, Into the service of others.

Whenever an unpleasant word from another Comes and reaches my ears, It's because the wheel of knives Has turned on me again:
The karma of mistakes I've made In different things I've said, Divisive talk and such.
From now on then the only thing That I'll talk bad about Is what I say that's wrong.

|ग्राट:प्यट:स्रान्याध्यःत्र:स्रुकायःस।

१८.४.२च.और.च.६च.तर.७च.चश्च्रात्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्या १४१८च.और.च.भूष्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र

Any time a single thing
Strikes me as something unpleasant,
Is because the wheel of knives
Has turned on me again:
The karma of constantly seeing my world
As something less than totally pure.
From now on then I'll devote myself
To seeing things only as purity.

| सर्नेर-व्रक्षेत्रवर्देन क्ष्याः त्वा व्यव्यक्ष्याः । स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्वर्याः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्

To put it in a nutshell,
Anything that ever falls
Upon us that we never wanted
Is just the same as a blacksmith
Who accidentally kills himself
Forging a sword for someone.
It's all because the wheel of knives
Has turned on us again;
Decide then that from now on
You'll be careful not to commit
A single negative act.

|८४:श्र्टायादशःशुःश्रुवाःवश्रूवाःश्रुटःवःष्पटः।

| त्राच्यास्त्र प्रत्ये प्रस्तात्य प्रत्ये प्रस्तात्य प्रस्तात्य प्रस्तात्य प्रस्तात्य प्रस्ति । व्यव्य प्रस्ति प्रस्ति प्रस्ति । व्यव्य । व्यव्य

When a person goes to the lower realms And goes through all the pain there, It's just the same as an archer Who accidentally kills himself With an arrow of his own. It's all because the wheel of knives Has turned on us again; So come, decide, that from now on You'll be careful not to commit A single negative act.

The following chart is derived from the lojong text on developing the good heart entitled "The Wheel of Knives" written by the Indian master Dharma Rakshita who lived about a thousand years ago.

PROBLEM	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
Your body is stricken by some unbearable sickness.	Doing harm to the bodies of other people.	Take upon your own body all the sickness that comes to anyone at all.
You feel any kind of pain inside of your own thoughts.	Upsetting other people.	Take on yourself the hurt that others feel.
You are tormented by feelings of thirst and hunger.	Burdening others financially, thieving, stealing, and failing to share.	Take on yourself the hunger and thirst of others.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
You suffer in the service of another whose authority is more.	Arrogance towards those who are less than you, and forcing others to do your work.	Force your own body and life into the service of others.
You hear unpleasant words from others.	Mistakes you've made in different things you've said, divisive talk and such.	Talk bad only about what you yourself say that's wrong.
Things strike you as something unpleasant.	Constantly seeing your world as something less than totally pure.	Devote yourself to seeing things only as purity.
You find yourself without anyone to help you, no friends of your own.	Leading away those who were close to another.	Never act in a way that makes others lose the ones who are close to them.
Not a single spiritual kind of person likes you in the least.	Giving up spiritual friends, and associating with people who have no noble thoughts.	Give up being close to people who have no interest in the spiritual life.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
You suddenly lose all that you need to live on.	Laying to waste the things that others depend on to live.	Find ways to supply for others the things they need to live.
You can't think clearly, and feel depressed at heart.	Leading others to constantly do bad deeds.	Avoid ever being a reason for others to do something wrong.
The things you try to accomplish never seem to work out, and you feel upset to the core.	Obstructing the work of holy beings.	Give up ever being a hindrance to holy beings.
No matter what you do, your Lama never seems pleased.	Hypocrisy in your practice of the Dharma.	Try to be less insincere within your spiritual life.
Everyone around you seems to criticize your every move.	Not caring from your own side whether you're good, or how what you do affects others.	Avoid doing any actions that are inconsiderate.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
As soon as you bring together a group of people around you, they begin to strive against one another.	Wishing ill on others, and splitting people into sides.	Never wish ill on others, and only do them well.
Those closest to you turn instead to enemies.	Hiding within yourself thoughts to bring others harm.	Try to lessen your tendency of planning to trip up others.
Serious sickness comes to you, such as pneumonia, fevers of death, cancer, or water filling your limbs.	Breaking the rules and sullying yourself by the act of wrongly using those things that were supposed to be used for Dharma.	Never do anything like stealing objects meant for Dharma use.
You are stricken by migraines that wrack your body.	Doing those things that you pledged to never do.	Avoid every non-virtuous act.
You are yourself unable to understand a single thing.	Following spiritual paths that are better left behind.	Spend your time in learning and the rest, in pursuing perfect wisdom.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
You are overcome by sleepiness as you try to do your spiritual practices.	The karma of behaving in a way towards the Dharma that block your future understanding.	Undertake any kind of hardship for the sake of your spiritual life.
Your own mind seems to enjoy the mental afflictions within it, and constantly wanders away.	Failing to think of the fact that you'll not be here long, and the many other problems of this vicious circle of life.	Try to feel more tired of living here in the cycle of pain.
All the activities that you begin go steadily down, then fail.	Disregarding the laws of karma itself, as well as the consequences of the things you do.	Try your best to collect good karma.
All the attempts you make to honor and offer to holy ones seem to go awry.	Putting your hopes in the negative side of things.	Reject all negativity.
You are unable to seek the help of the Triple Gem.	Not believing in the Buddha, an enlightened being.	Place yourself only in the care of all three of the Jewels.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
You are attacked by worries, by obstacles in your mind, and spirits come to haunt you.	Doing wrong deeds towards Angels and around the teachings of the secret word.	Stop all the negative thoughts that wander throughout your mind all day.
You have no place to stay, and wander helplessly here and there like a bear lost far from home.	Forcing Lamas and such to leave behind their homes.	Never drive someone from the place they live.
Disasters like frost or hail or anything of the like appear.	Failing to properly keep your pledges and other such codes.	Keep your pledges and so on pure and clean.
Your want for things is great, but you're unable to pay for them.	Failing to give to others, and offer to the Jewels.	Work hard to make offerings, and to give.
You look ugly to others, and those around you insult you for it.	Making holy images without taking the proper care, and letting anger drive you into a state of turmoil.	Craft holy images correctly, and learn to endure with patience.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
No matter what you do you find your peace of mind disturbed by likes and dislikes.	Allowing yourself to wallow in negative states of mind.	Reject all feelings of "you against me."
Whatever you undertake fails in the aim you'd hoped for.	Holding in your heart a harmful way of seeing things.	Whatever you do, do it for the sake of others.
You practice Dharma as much as you can, but still cannot control your mind.	Seeking ways to be important in a worldly way.	Hope only for freedom, devoting yourself to it.
You second-guess your own virtuous thoughts.	Failing to care for others' feelings, making friends with anyone you meet, and pretending to be more than you are.	Take great care in choosing those you associate with.
Other people weave their wiles, and totally mislead you.	Thinking only of yourself, of pride, and of hoping for recognition.	Don't let on to anyone all the personal qualities that you've been able to gain.

Problem	CAUSE	ANTIDOTE
All the teaching and learning of Dharma that you do has degenerated into feelings of liking and dislike.	Failing to consider deep within your thoughts all the trouble the demons can bring.	Watch for things that can hurt your practice, and give up all of them.
All the things that you've done right suddenly turn to something wrong.	Repaying kindnesses that others have done for you with the very opposite.	Bow your head and with the utmost respect return each kindness granted.

रि.संर.जयाश्वास्त्राच्यां म्याच्यां म्याच्यां

Since this is the way things are,
I've finally realized
Just who my enemy is.
I've caught the thief who lay in wait
And deceived me with his trap.
He's a masquerader fooling others,
And fooling himself as well.
I see it now!
He's the habit I have
Of grasping to myself,
And of this there can be no doubt.

। मूँ तरा प्रवेद सके प्राची क्षा मान्य क्षेत्र।
। प्रवेद स्वादेश क्षित्र विषय स्वाद स्वाद

Now let's see the wheel of knives,
Of karma, cut his skull!
O Angel of Wrath,
Now cut his skull, cut thrice!
Stand like a god on widespread legs,
A knowledge of two truths;
Stare in hatred with two eyes,
Of method, and of wisdom;
Open your jaws and show your fangs,
Four powers of confession,
Sink them deep within the flesh
Of this, my hated foe.

| र्यात्र्यात्र्यं विष्यात्र्यं विष्या | विष्यं विषयं विष्यं विषयं विष्यं विषयं विष्यं विष्य

I call on the King of the secret knowledge
And secret words that work
To torture all these enemies.
There is no freedom here in the woods
Of the vicious circle of life.
Take up in your hands the wheel of knives,
Take up the wheel of karma,
Speed to the side of my foe,
The cruel one, evil demon that he is,
This grasping to myself,
Broken vows and promises,
Waster of my life and others,
Go and fetch him here.

|र्या.यर्या.योतुर.अयु.श्रुंट.ज.श्री.र.ला |ज्संट.युर.ध्या.युय.श्र्या.र्या.यर्या.श्रुंट.ज.यश्रुंश| |मुंच.श्र्या.युंच.श्र्या.र्या.यर्या.श्रुंट.ज.यश्रुंश| |सिया.श्र्या.सिया.श्र्या.सुंच.योतुश.हा.योतुर।

Fetch him, bring him,
Lord of Anger, Lord of Death;
Strike, strike now,
Strike this highest foe in his heart;
With the roar of hell
Smash now the skull
Of my misperceptions,
The ones who have wasted my life;
Bring your death
To the heart of this butcher,
My greatest enemy.

१५८५ में १५८ में १८ भी १८ में १८

Huung huung!
Mighty Angel, show your mystic power.
Dza dza!
Force the enemy to swear his allegiance.
Phet phet!
Break I beg you all my chains.
Break and smash!
Cut the ties that make me grasp.

।र्द्र-र्त्वेद-धे-द्र-विना-विना-द्वाय-द्र-निव्दा ।यह्य-द्वाद्व-धे-द्वा-विद्य-द्वा-ध्वेद-द्वा-ध्वेद-विना-विना-।यह्य-द्वा-क्ष्य-ध्व-ध्व-द्वा-ध्वेद-क्षय-य-विद्य-।द्वा-क्ष्य-विना-विना-द्वा-द्व-निव्य-द्व-विव्य-द्व-विना-विना-विना-द्वा-विव्य-द्व-विव्य-द्व-विव्य-विव्य-द्व-विव्य-विव्

Come to me, Angel of Wrath, Lord of Death; Take this pitiful sack filled with five poisons, Mired by the force of karma and afflictions In this filth of the vicious circle of life; Come, I beg you, come right now, And rip this bag to shreds.

|८४.श्र्ट्र्यायिश्यः द्रश्च्याः यः यश्च्यः यादः। |द्यः प्रदेशः विश्वः यदः अर्थेः यः क्ष्यं यः यश्चे याः यश्चे |द्यः प्रदेशः विश्वः यदः अर्थेः यः क्ष्यं यः यश्चे यः यश्च

He would escort me
To the terrors of the three lower realms;
I don't know enough to be afraid of him,
I run to the things that would take me there.
With the roar of hell
Smash now the skull
Of my misperceptions,
The ones who have wasted my life;
Bring your death
To the heart of this butcher,
My greatest enemy.

।श्ची-तर्र्नाकित्यादे श्ची-क्ष्यायायाया ।श्चित्रः द्वीनः हेन्यायदे स्थान्य स्थया श्चे स्थया स्थया श्चे स्थया स्या स्थया स्थया

He chases after happiness
But knows nothing of how
To make it come.
The slightest unpleasant thing
Is unbearable to him,
And at the same time he's full
Insatiable
Wanting all the wrong things.
With the roar of hell
Smash now the skull
Of my misperceptions,
The ones who have wasted my life;
Bring your death
To the heart of this butcher,
My greatest enemy.

|यरे.योवयात्राक्ष्यःय्यूटःत्र्यःयह्त्रमाःसहरःतर्

।वन्याः स्रोतः यसः ग्रीः सर्भ्यः तस्य व्याः स्रोतः स्रो ।वन्याः स्रोतः यसः ग्रीः सर्भ्यः वस्य व्याः स्रोतः स्रो

Come now
You of mystic might,
Lord of the body of emptiness,
Being of bliss who shatters
This hateful evil demon
Of grasping to some "self."
With the roar of hell
Smash now the skull
Of my misperceptions,
The ones who have wasted my life;
Bring your death
To the heart of this butcher,
My greatest enemy.

|दस्य स्वयः केत्र र्स्यः द्वा प्रदे प्रस्या प्रदे प्रस्य स्वर्धः केत्र र्स्यः केत्र प्रस्य प्रस्य स्वर्धः केत् |क्षेत्रः हे केत्र र्स्यः प्रस्य प्रस्य स्वर्धः क्ष्यः प्रस्य स्वर्धः क्षयः स्वर्धः क्षयः प्रस्य स्वर्धः क्षयः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्व

Come with mighty wrath
And make blood sacrifice of my foe.
Come with mighty wisdom
And destroy my wrong ideas.
Come with mighty compassion
And shelter me from my karma.
Come I beg you, obliterate
With finality this "self."

|रैवाबासम्बद्धारदिःयादेषायर न्युदः न्यूकेवा

Take all the pain of the entire world And lay it at the doorstep Of the one whose fault That all of it really is:
This tendency that I have Of grasping to my self.
And lay upon his doorstep too Every single mental affliction Every single one of those five Poisons of the mind That any single living being Has within their heart.

And so I have used the art of reasoning
To learn with certainty
Who it is that lies behind
Every problem in my life.
And if by chance he should arise
Once more and come to struggle,
To convince me of his view,
Then I beg you come and lay him to waste
In the middle of his eloquence.

१८-४-७-१५ व्यान्य व्यान्य व्यान्य व्यान्य । व्यान्य व्याप्य व

And so all the blame there could ever be Belongs to him, and him alone.

Think of the kindness that every living creature around you shows to you. Pray that you could take upon yourself the problems of every living thing. Take every good thing you have ever done and offer it to their happiness.

અાશુય્રાય તેં ર્ડ વરે ક્ષુત્ર વર્સુ દૃ શું ક્ષું દ વલુવાય શેં ા

Herein Contained are the Instructions for Developing the Good Heart Which were Passed Down through the Master Translator of Sumpa

🔻 गु:रु:ब:र्बा

I bow down to my holy Lama.

It happened that the accomplished saint named the Master Translator of Sumpa travelled to India. While there, he was able to study a great deal of the secret teachings. When it came time for him to return to Tibet, he took the leftover gold he had with him and set off first to the Seat of the Diamond [Vajrasana], so that he could make offerings to the site of the Great Enlightenment.

यार्ड्स्यायायार्क्स्र-प्राथहर्न् हिराचलुग्रायाया सुर्ध्यायायार्क्स्र-प्रायक्ष्म्रियायार्थ्यायायार्क्स्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्र-प्रायक्ष्म्य-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष्म-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्य-प्रायक्ष-प्रवक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रायक्ष-प्रवक्ष-प्रवक्ष-प्रवक्ष-प्रवक्ष-प्रवक्ष-

One day after reaching the Seat of the Diamond he spent some time at the Great Temple, walking around it in prayer, and sometimes pausing for a rest. There was a woman there as well, in red; as he watched her walking around the Temple too, he noticed that for awhile she would be stepping on the ground, and then for a stretch that she stepped in the air itself, and then on the ground once more.

देशः द्वीतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः भ्रेतः व्याः भ्रेतः व्याः भ्रेतः व्याः भ्रेतः व्याः व्यः व्याः व

Then there was a lady in green, and she walked at the side of the red, and she said but four things:

I don't feel so well today. I have this urge to get going somewhere. It would be better if people didn't have to die. Death is a frightening thing.

द्वरावीयायाः क्रियाः व्याप्तयायायाः व्याप्तयायाः व्याप्तयाः व्याप्तयायाः व्याप्तयायाः व्याप्तयायाः व्याप्तयायाः व्याप्तयाः व्याप्तयायाः व्यापत्तयाः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्तयः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्यः व्यापत्यः

The lady in red turned to the green, and with a sideways glance at the Master Translator said but four things in reply:

My dear, once you've learned to be satisfied with whatever comes to you, you will find happiness no matter what happens. Your problem is that you are never satisfied.

My dear, once you've learned to leave your mind in one place, you can go wherever you want. Your problem is that you've never learned to leave your mind in one place.

ૹૼ૽૽ૼૺ૽ૣ૽ૢૼૹૼૹૹૢૹૼઽૡઌ૽૿ઌઽૹૣઌઌ૽ૢ૽ૼૢઌ૽ૢ૿૽૽ૣૼૢ૽ૢૢૼ૱ૹૼૹૹૢૹૹૼઽઌૹઌૡ૽ૢૼૺૺૺ

My dear, once your mind has sunk into the Dharma, even dying is an easy thing to do. Your problem is that your mind has never sunk into the Dharma.

My dear, once you've realized that the mind is beyond all beginning, there is no death at all. Your problem is that you've never realized that the mind is beyond all beginning.

चर्मेट्र.ग्री.क्रेट्र.ट्र.लट्र्स्याक्ष.त्र.विट्र.तर.२४.क्रीक्ष.त.लुक्ष.याक्षेट्रक.सूर्। वियाका.

And with these words, all the sadness that the Master Translator had ever felt in his heart melted away. All the Dharma that he'd ever heard suddenly took on meaning. And he would say that, at that moment, he gained his greatest realizations.

यशिरश्रा। स्याश्चार्या भिष्याची स्वाप्ता प्रियाची प्रियाची प्रियाची स्वाप्ता स्वाप्

Here is what the lines mean. The Master Translator would say that the point about being satisfied with whatever comes to you means, among other things, that one must learn to be satisfied with whatever level of material comfort comes to you, since it concords exactly to the deeds of karma that you yourself have collected in the past. Don't be jealous of the good things that come to others. And never let yourself be sucked into events, whether they be pleasant or unpleasant.

यहेब्र-ब्रथाश्रेश्वराप्तराहेर्त्वेश प्रतासाहित्या प्रताहित्या प्रताहित्य प्

The point about leaving your mind in one place refers, among other things, to the fact that you must learn to understand the true nature of your mind, and keep it in its place, and then gain mastery over it—using the blessings of your Lama, and unexpected but skilful means, to do so.

र्बेम्या के सार्वा प्रति स्था के स्था के स्था के स्था के सार्वे के सार्वे के सार्वे के स्था के सार्वे के स्था के साथ के स्था के साथ का साथ के साथ के साथ के साथ के साथ के साथ के साथ का साथ का

The point about mixing your mind with the Dharma refers to that knowingness of the mind. You must learn to recognize the true nature of this Dharma.

की अप्रतास्त्री अप्रतास्त्री विष्यात्त्र के प्रतास्त्री के प्रतास के प्रतास

The point about realizing that the mind has no beginning refers to realizing how the mind begins. "Death" refers to it ending. There is no death anymore for a person who realizes that the mind has no beginning, and no ending, and no staying; and whose realization of these things goes on whether they are within deep meditation or just come out of it.

दश्या देश्याद्वीर पात्री है पर्व्यास्था देश स्त्रात्यास्था स्त्रीय प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्र प्राप्

Here is the lineage through which this teaching has been passed down to us. It was spoken first to the Master Translator of Sumpa by the pair of the Holy Angel—the Diamond Sow, Vajra Yogini—and the Lady of Liberation, or Tara. He taught it to the Sakya Pandita, who passed it on to that great and accomplished being, Tsotrangwa. He taught it to Kedrup Chuje, he to Ritru Rechen, he to Prajnya Bodhe, he to Dunshakpa Buddha Ratna, he to Kirti Shila, he to the Dharma Lord Gyalwa Sangpo, and he to the Dharma Lord Sunam Rinchen—who granted it, finally, to Konchok Bang.

२०। हि.स्.ज. ५०. ५ स्थ. प्रत्ये ४. श्राचा थेश. ग्रीश्राश्चा श्राचा श्री ४ श्री १ श्राचा थेश. श्री ४ श्री १ श्र

Herein Contained are Advices
Granted to Lord Atisha by Two Angels
Who Said to Him Simply,
"Practice the Wish for Enlightenment"

इ.स.स्यार्

I bow down to my precious Lama.

त्र। कुंद्र-तुंश-बुंद्र-स्य-अंद्रन्य-सुंद्राया-कुंद्र-स्य-सुंद्र-सुंद्

On a very special day once Lord Atisha was training his mind in the Wish for enlightenment, bodhichitta, while circling a holy place on foot. Off to the east then, up in the sky in the direction of the Seat of the Diamond—site of Lord Buddha's enlightenment—he saw two women. Their bodies were something just beyond a human form, but something just short of the divine; and they were covered in precious jewels.

यव्यम्याद्यात्यः स्वर्धः द्वात्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर

The younger of the two made as if to ask a question of the older:

What method would a person have to train themself in, if he or she hoped to reach to their Enlightenment most quickly?

And the older of the two replied, in the way of the Secret Word, and said to the other:

A person who hoped to reach to their Enlightenment most quickly would have to practice the Wish for Enlightenment.

तुर्कोर्गिकेशः र्सेवाया प्राप्ति मिन्नेरा उत्रापीतः स्रा

They say that the two women were the Lady of Liberation and the Woman of Ferocity.

शक्र्यात्वरस्या।

ह.च्या नेमाह्मस्याया वेश्वर्यात्वरम्या नेमान्यस्य निमान्यस्य नेमान्यस्य नेमान्यस

This teaching was passed on from Lord Atisha to Geshe Tunpa. He taught it to Chen-ngawa, he to Jayulpa, he to Tsangpa Rinpoche, he to Langlungpa, he to Sanggye Gompa, he to Samtse Rinsangpa, and he to Sanggye Gampa Janchub Kyab. Yeshe Shab granted it to Shila Vadzra, he taught it to Dunshab, he taught it to Buddha Ratna at Laloy Gunpa, he taught it to Kirti Shila, he taught it to Jaya Bhadra, and he taught it to Punye Ratna. Punye Ratna, finally, passed it on to Gyalchok Konchok Bang.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Nine: What the Buddha Really Meant, Part One

The following selection is taken from the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical Commentary on Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal (Drangba dang nges-pa'i don rnam-par 'byed-pa'i bstan-bcos Legs-bshad snying-po), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); ff. 1a-3b in the ACIP digital edition (catalog number S5396), and pp. 1-7 in the ACIP Indian paper edition. The translation is based upon an oral teaching of the text by Geshe Tupten Rinchen of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. Please note that Je Tsongkapa's root text is extremely difficult, and is best studied with the accompanying ACI tapes.

विष्यायत्रः ह्रीयः विष्यायः विष्यायः । विष्यायत्रः ह्रीयः विष्यायः विषयः व

Herein contained is the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical Commentary upon the Subject of Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal

Iય.જ્ઞુ.ચી.વી.વી.ક્ષેફ્ટ.ક્ષે.ડિંગ્નો

I bow down to Gentle Voice, my Lama.

|है:भूर:रु:तस्याश्रायःध्यात्वितःभूरःयोशःबुश्यःयःयशा |भूरःपश्चित्रःभुःवःभ्येरःयदेश्वःख्या |भूरःपश्चित्रःयश्चेःवःभ्येरःयदेश्वःश्चित्रःया |हे:प्रवाःश्चवशःहःस्वरःवशःश्चवशःर्ख्यःररः। |हेयशःयःवश्चःरवाःवीशःदेःवह्रःयरःसहर।

Now the Sutra Requested by the Realized Being Rashtrapala says,

Different beings must wander here Because they have no knowledge Of the ways of emptiness, Of peace, and of things that never began. Those with compassion use skillful means And millions of different reasonings To bring them into it.

१३८१:र्क्रशः इस्रशः ग्री:दे:पित्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः द्वार्थः प्रमायः प्रमायः प्रमायः प्रमायः प्रमायः विद्यार्थः क्षेत्रः प्रमायः प्

What these lines are saying is that the real nature of all things is something which is extremely difficult to perceive; and that if one fails to perceive it, one can never be freed from the circle of suffering. Our compassionate Teacher has seen these things clearly, and thus undertakes to bring beings on to a grasp of this real nature, using a great many skillful means, and a great many different types of reasoning.

द्यः स्त्रीत् स्यात् स्त्रीत् । त्यात् व्यात् व्यात्यात् व्यात्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यात् व्यात् व्यात् व्यात् व्यात्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्य

For this reason, those with the capacity of insight should make great efforts in the various means of coming to a grasp of just what the real nature of things is. This, in turn, depends upon the ability to distinguish between what is figurative and what is literal among that highest of all spoken words—the speech of the victorious Buddhas.

न्यात्रेश्वात्र्यात्रात्त्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र यात्रुद्रश्यात्रेत्रात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र् वात्रुद्रश्यात्रेत्रात्र्यात्र

The distinction between these two is not something that words themselves have the power to draw, saying "This part is figurative, and this part is literal." Otherwise it would have been a useless exercise for the great innovators to compose commentaries exploring the true intent of the teachings, undertaking to make distinctions between what was figurative and what was literal. Neither would there have been spoken, in that highest of spoken words itself, so many conflicting versions of how we decide what is figurative and what is literal.

And look finally at the fact that—even if a scripture does say that "This is this way, and that is that way"—this still does not enable us to decide that it really is. If it is thus the case, throughout the teachings in general, that we cannot draw any unquestionable conclusions from such statements, then why should it be true—in this more particular case—that we can conclusively establish the distinction between the figurative and the literal from any particular reference that says, "This is the one, and this the other"?

देवः ख्रेरः माश्रुदः रवः ग्रीः द्वदः देशः वद्येदः धरः ख्रुदः वश्रुदः यदः ख्रीः माश्रुदः रवः ग्रीः देवः मालवः द ददः देशः ग्रीः दर्भोद्दशः धः वग्रुधः वद्येदः धरः देवः ग्रीः माश्रुदः रवः ग्रीः देवः मालवः द् तर्चन्यायाम् निर्म्वा व्यवन्य प्रत्यायाम् विष्या विषया विषया

Therefore we must go about our search for the true intent of the teachings by following the two great innovators—those who the scriptures foretold would be able to draw the distinction between the figurative and the literal. It is they who have unravelled for us the idea behind the figurative and the literal; it is they who have used true reasoning to establish, in a perfect way, those teachings which are literal—by finding proofs against any attempt to interpret them in some other light; and proofs in support of their being something literal, not something figurative, not something we could say refers to something else. In the end, we must learn to make this distinction through immaculate reasoning alone.

त्रेन्द्रस्य प्रते स्रीत्रः भी व्याध्य प्रत्य स्रोत्रः स्रोत्त्र स्रोत्त्रः स्रोत्ते स्रोते स्रोति स्रोते स्रोते स्रोति स्रोते स्रोते स्रोति स्रोते स्र

And this is true because anyone who espouses some philosophical system that contradicts reason could never be called a perfectly credible person; and because the very nature of things is, moreover, something that must be established by reason grounded in accurate perception.

প্রথান্যধূদ্র র্মা

Lord Buddha himself saw the truth of this highest form of meaning, and thus spoke the following:

Whether you are a monk or some other thinker, You must accept my words only after you've finished A careful examination of them, testing them like gold— In the fire, by cutting, and using the touchstone too.

र्ने में में का की बन प्रकार के का करें के प्रवेश के में में में का का कि का

And so it is that we proceed, in our task of distinguishing between the figurative and the literal, in two steps, presenting first the ideas of the side that uses the *Commentary on the True Intent of the Sutras* to help draw this distinction, and secondly the ideas of the side that uses the *Sutra Taught at the Request of Never-Ending Wisdom* to do so.

न्यायानवे र्व्याया। न्यायानवे र्व्याया।

The first step has two parts of its own: setting forth what the sutra says, and showing how its meaning is commented upon.

The first of these parts has four further divisions: a question meant to clarify apparent contradictions in the sutras; an answer that clarifies these apparent contradictions; an identification of the nature of the three real natures; and a statement, offered by the bodhisattva, of the conclusion reached by these points.

दरार्याके प्रमानका वर्षेत्राक्ष्या क्षेत्राक्ष्या क्षेत्राक्ष्या क्षेत्राक्ष्य क्षेत्र क्

मक्ष्रक्षरक्षर्भः विद्यान्य स्थान्य स्

Here is the first. We find the following in the Commentary on the True Intent:

O Conqueror, you have in many of your presentations made statements that the heaps have some definitive characteristics of their own. You have also spoken of their characteristic of beginning, and their characteristic of being destroyed, and of eliminating and comprehending.

यः न्दः अरुष्णे हे स्वायः ने प्रतिष्ठ प्रतिष्ठ । इत्या । स्वायः द्वायः । स्वायः स्वयः । स्वयः । स्वयः स्वयः । स्

You also stated that the way in which the heaps exist is the same for the doors of sense, and for things that occur through interdependence, and for everything up to the different kinds of sustenance.

र्राविष्ठ्रातुःश्चरः द्रश्चार्यात्रेद्रायः इस्रश्याण्चीः स्टरः वीः स्राद्धः विष्ठायः प्रदरः विश्वायः विश्वयः विश्वय

The question continues in the same pattern through the truths:

. . . And you stated that these truths were something that had definitive characteristics of their own, and were something which we should comprehend, and something we should eliminate, and something to bring about, and something to practice. And then you spoke of the categories as having some definitive characteristics of their own, and so too did you speak of the various categories, and the many categories, and of eliminating and comprehending.

यर्श्वायाः भेर्न्याद्यादः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वयाः स्वयाः स्वयः स्वयः

The question turns too through the different groups among the 37 qualities of enlightenment:

. . . You spoke too of these qualities as having some definitive characteristics of their own, and you spoke of their nature of being inconsistent, and of being an antidote, and of the growth of what has not grown, and of the staying of what has grown, and of there being no separation, and of coming back, and of increasing, and of spreading.

यर्श्यात्त्र्व्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्यायायायायः वित्यात्त्र्यात्यायायः वित्यात्त्र्यात्यायायः वित्यात्यायायः वित्यात्यायायः वित्यात्यायायः वित्यात्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायायः वित्यायः वित्य

And you said, O Conqueror, that no existing thing could have any nature of its own; you said that no existing thing ever began, or stopped; you said that they were, from the very beginning, in a state of peace; you said that they were, by nature, something that was completely beyond all grief.

What was it, O Conquering One, that you were truly thinking of when you said that no existing thing could have any nature of its own, and said that no existing thing ever began, or stopped; when you said that they were, from the very beginning, in a state of peace; when you said that they were, by nature, something that was completely beyond all grief?

यर्याः स्ट्रां सुः सुः सुः स्ट्रां विश्वः याशुरशः श्री।

And so this is what I ask of you, O Conquering One: was it really that which the Conqueror had in mind when you said that no existing thing could have any nature of its own, and said that no existing thing ever began, or stopped; when you said that they were, from the very beginning, in a state of peace; when you said that they were, by nature, something that was completely beyond all grief?

यीक्षः ब्रिक्षः क्र्री।

सक्ष्यः क्षेत्रः क्ष्रीः प्राक्ष्याकाः क्ष्रः याक्ष्यः क्ष्रः याक्ष्यः क्ष्रः याक्ष्यः क्ष्रः याक्ष्यः व्याक्षः व्याक्यः व्याक्षः व्याक्षः

The point of this question is as follows. In some sutras, Lord Buddha said that no existing thing had any nature of its own, and so on. In other sutras though he said that the heaps and so on did have their own definitive characteristics, and so on. The bodhisattva knows that—if we take these two types of statements on face value—then they contradict each other; but that it cannot be the case that they do. Therefore he is asking Lord Buddha what he really had in mind when he said that no existing thing could have any nature of its own, and so on. The bodhisattva is, by implication, asking just what Lord Buddha meant by phrases such as "existing by definition" and the like.

गुर-पर्याश्वर्त्त्रवित्रः स्त्राधित्रः स्त्रः स्त्राधितः स्त्रः स्त्रः

The term here "definitive characteristic" or "definition" [in "having definitive characteristics" or "existing by definition"] has been explained in the great Chinese commentary and elsewhere as referring to the particular verbal definition of a thing. This idea though is incorrect, since—for one thing—the sutra itself clearly refers to the idea of existing *by definition* in the parts where it talks about constructs. Furthermore, even constructs have their own particular verbal descriptions which are used to define them; so if this were the meaning of "definition" here then there would be a problem if we went on to describe them as not having any nature or definitive characteristics of their own.

त्र भुः भुः यह्न द्रा । व्युत्ता व्युत्त

Various commentaries have described the phrases "various categories" and "many categories" otherwise, but if we refer down to what comes later in the sutra itself then we should take them to mean the eighteen categories and the six categories, respectively. The phrase "being no separation" refers to not losing something.

याक्षेत्रायायावित्रेत्र। देश्वेत्रेत्रायाद्यायाद्यायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रायावित्रायाद्यायावित्रा

The second division, an answer that clarifies apparent contradictions in the sutras, has two further sections of its own: an explanation of just what "lack of a self nature" it was that Lord Buddha had in mind when he said that nothing had any nature of its own; and what it was that he had in mind when he said "nothing grows" and the like.

We cover the first section in three steps: a brief presentation, an expanded explanation, and illustrations for the points covered. Here is the first.

नर्वात्स्यः वर्ष्यायः यास्य देवः न्यः याद्यः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः विद्यः विद्य

Lord Buddha replies by saying that, when he stated that nothing had any nature of its own, he was actually referring to all three lacks of a self nature; as the *True Intent of the Sutras* itself reads,

Listen, Paramarta Samudgata. When I said that no existing object at all had any nature of its own, what I was referring to was three different lacks of a self nature that existing things exhibit. These three are the quality of lacking any definitive nature, the quality of lacking any nature of growing, and the quality of lacking any nature of being ultimate.

श्रेन्यः भ्रेन्यः स्थाया सुरुषः या न्यून्यः स्थाया सुरुषः प्रिन्यः स्थाया सुरुषः सुरु

The *Abbreviation* also says:

What was it that the Conqueror had in mind when he said that no existing thing had any nature of its own? I will tell you; he spoke of that to disciples of varying capacities, and what he had in mind was the three different kinds of a lack of self-nature. . .

१८म्टिश.यम्.म्य. ह्रम्.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्ग.यम्बर्गःयम्बर्गःयम्बर्गःय

याश्चर्यायाः विष्यायाः विष्यायः व

The *Thirty Verses* says as well:

There are three different forms of this self-nature; And what Lord Buddha had in mind When he said that no existing object Had any nature of its own Was that there were on the other hand Three different lacks of a self-nature too.

Let us consider, in light of these different references, the explanation by certain people that—when Lord Buddha stated, in sutras such as those on the perfection of wisdom, that no existing object had any nature of its own—he was thinking only of every existing object belonging to the deceptive type, and not of those belonging to the ultimate type. Anyone who holds this position thus contradicts both the *Commentary on the True Intent* and the classics of Master Asanga and his brother; they have moreover left behind them the system followed by the realized father and his spiritual son [the realized being Nagarjuna, and Master Aryadeva], and all the others as well.

यद्भः स्टेश्यः दर्योद्दर्शः द्वार्थः द्वार्थः द्वार्थः स्टेशः स्

When the bodhisattva asks Lord Buddha what he had in mind when he said that objects had no nature of their own, he is really asking two different things: what Lord Buddha meant by the expression "no-self-nature," and how it is that nothing has any such nature. The answer by Lord Buddha addresses both of these points as well, one after the other. We begin by explaining the first.

यश्चित्रश्च स्थान्य विद्या वि

Consider all the infinite variety of objects that Lord Buddha was referring to when he said that none of the existing things from physical matter up to the omniscience of an enlightened being had any nature or quality of its own. Lord Buddha grouped them into three different types of things with no nature of their own, for two reasons: first because they are all subsumed by these three types of things with no nature of their own, and secondly because it would then be easier to teach disciples how it was that they lacked any nature of their own. And this is because every existing object, whether it be something of the ultimate kind or the deceptive kind, is included within one of these three types.

होन्यः सह्रान्त्र्वाक्ष्यः प्रत्यः क्ष्यः व्यान्तः व्यानः व्यान्तः व

Here's another reason why this is true. Lord Buddha stated, in the sutras of the Mother and others as well, that none of the individual members of the following groups had any nature of being a thing: neither the five heaps, nor the eighteen categories, nor the twelve doors of sense. He said none of them had any nature of being a thing, none had any quality of its own, and none had any nature of its own. More specifically, he mentioned by name all the

different versions of the ultimate: emptiness, the sphere of being, the way things are, and so on—and then he went on to say that none of them had any nature of its own. What person in their right mind then could ever say that there were no things of the ultimate type among those objects of which Lord Buddha spoke?

याक्षेत्रायाची। यात्रानिः देश्चेत्रित् स्त्रीत् यात्रायाच्यात्र स्त्रीत् स

Here next is the second step: the expanded explanation. Now you might think to yourself,

Consider all those things that Lord Buddha was talking about when he said that nothing had any nature of its own. Suppose they are all included within the three different types of things that have no nature of their own. What then are these three types of things, and how is it that they lack any nature of their own?

Let's begin by explaining the first type of thing that has no nature of its own. The *Commentary on the True Intent* says,

Suppose you ask what we mean when we speak of the quality of being a thing that "lacks any definitive nature." Here we are referring to those things that display the attribute of being a construct.

ने छिते श्वीर लिन। यने श्वर ने ने श्वीर प्रत्य महास्य स्थायर प्रत्य स्थायर स्यायर स्थायर स्थाय स्थायर स्थाय स्थायर स्थाय स्थाय स्थाय स्थाय स्थायर स्थाय स्था

And why do we speak of them as such? It is because of the fact that these things display the attribute of being established through names and terms; they are not things which abide by definition; thus can we say of them that they "lack any definitive nature."

श्री स्वाप्त स्व स्वाप्त स्वा

The question and answer that appear in the first two sentences serve to identify constructs as what are being referred to when we speak of "things that lack any definitive nature." The part that begins with "And why do we speak of them as such?" serves as an answer to the question of what reason there is for us to describe them as such. Then Lord Buddha answers by giving us two reasons: one from the negative point of view, where he says that these things do not exist by definition; and one from the positive point of view, where he says that they are established through names and terms. The way in which the sutra approaches the question from these two different aspects can be understood to apply to the latter two attributes as well.

The definitive nature of their own which constructs lack refers to their existing, or abiding, by definition.

यदीर-र्रा निक्र क्षेत्र मुक्ष भ्येत् स्थित् स्थ यत्विया स्था प्रति प्रति स्थित् स्या स्थित् स्या स्थित् स

Here the question of whether something is said to exist by definition or not hinges on whether or not it is established through names and terms; and it is not necessarily the case that those things which are so established even exist at all. What is meant by this "establishing" is furthermore quite different from what the Consequence group means when it says that all existing objects are

established by virtue of terms that are names; and what it means then to exist by definition or not is also something different.

द्वीसासूर वहें वा प्रे प्रें र्री। सर्वन ग्रीसासून पहें वा प्याप्त प्रें राप्त प्रें राप्त प्रें राप्त प्रें वा प्रें राप्त र

It is however the case that—if one is holding things to exist definitively as it is described in this school—one is also holding things to exist by definition as it is described by the Consequence group; whereas with a certain number of objects one may still hold them in the latter way yet still not hold them in the former way.

Here is what the second lack of a self-nature refers to. The *Commentary on the True Intent of the Sutras* says:

Suppose you ask what we mean when we speak of the quality of being a thing that "lacks any nature of growing." Here we are referring to those things that display the attribute of being a dependent thing.

निश्चर्याः वित्रा यन्तिः स्वर्ताः निष्ठाः निष

And why do we speak of them as such? It is because of the fact that these things have occurred by virtue of other factors, and not all by themselves, that we say of them that they "lack any nature of growing."

म्बर्नित्राक्षेत्रक्षुते क्रुं नवे दे चेवस दे चेत्रित्रों स्क्रुं निक्रुं निक्रित्रों स्वर्मा केत्रों साम

ध्येत्र प्रश्नालेश मासुद्रश प्रशायद्या केट् ग्रीश ह्री पर्दे।

Given the phrase about "not all by themselves," the nature of growing that dependent things lack, or their growing through some nature of their own, refers to their growing all by themselves.

This would be a kind of growing where they grew independently, for as the *Abbreviation* says,

Because things which are factors occur through interdependence, we say that they grow by virtue of their conditions; when we say that these are the type that "lack any nature of growing," we are talking about their growing on their own.

याल्य प्रवास्त्र प्रवास्त्र त्या क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र त्या क्षेत्र

Remember, this is a system which says that dependent things were spoken to lack any nature of their own because they have no nature of growing in this way; that is, through some quality of their own. They do not though say that something has no nature of its own just because it does not exist by definition.

There are two different ways of establishing the third lack of a self-nature; here is how we establish the fact that dependent things have no nature of being ultimate. The *Commentary on the True Intent* says:

Suppose you ask what we mean when we say that things "lack any nature of being ultimate." Consider those things which occur through interdependence; those which lack any nature in the sense that they lack any nature of growing. These are as well that which lacks any nature in the sense of lacking any nature of being ultimate.

दार् में के देश होता कि स्वास्था के स्वास्था स्वास्था स्वास्य स्वास्था स्व

And why do we speak of them as such? Listen, Paramarta Samudgata. What I have professed so thoroughly is that the "ultimate" refers to the part of things which is the object of [the path of] total purity. Because those that display the attribute of being a dependent thing are not the object of [the path of] total purity, we can speak of them as that one that lacks any nature of being ultimate.

It is because dependent things do not exist as things which have any nature of being ultimate that we can speak of that which does not have any nature of being ultimate. The point here is that "ultimate" refers to anything which, when you focus on and meditate upon it, your spiritual obstacles are brought to an end. Dependent things though cannot be described as such, since they

do not have the power to help you purify yourself of your spiritual obstacles if you focus on and meditate upon them.

केंद्र अन्तर्भाव स्वार्थ स्वा

"Now why," one may ask, "do you not also establish constructs as being something which has no nature of being ultimate?" It's true that—if we were to establish something as being such solely on the basis of its not being an object of [the path of] total purity—then we would have to do so. It is due to the fact that we are attempting to stop wrong ideas though that we do establish dependent things as things which—because they are not objects of [the path] of total purity—have no nature of being ultimate; but do not establish constructs as things which are this way.

है:स्र-'ले'क। यालक्-द्रवार्थायाः भी त्याप्त्रीक्षायाः ने प्राप्त प्रत्याक्ष्यः विकास्य प्रत्याक्ष्यः विकास्य विकास विकास

Why is this the case? Suppose that a person came to an understanding that they could purify themselves of their spiritual obstacles by focussing on, and then meditating upon, the fact that dependent things are empty of [certain] constructs. It is possible then that they might entertain the thought that—because to go through this process they had to focus upon dependent things as an example—then these same dependent things would be objects of [the path of] total purity. This in turn would mean that these dependent things were ultimate. A person would not though entertain this same thought about constructs.

र्नेज्ञरायरित्रेर्भुत्रित्रेर्ते सेन्द्रित् सेन्त्रित् सेन्त्रायर स्वायाय प्रति स्वायाय स्वाय स्वयाय स्वया

There is in actuality by the way no problem that this particular thought might be correct. It's similar to the case where a person is able to stop his tendency of believing that sound is an unchanging thing once he has perceived that it is a changing thing. There is no contradiction in this example if one were to say though that you would not stop your tendency of believing that sound is an unchanging thing [simply] by focusing on sound.

यीवर्गिरः रूप्तरायविष्ठः र्गीयात्रः यीवात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्यः त्यात्रः त्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्रः त्यात्यः त्या

Despite the fact that dependent things do not exist as something ultimate in the sense of being ultimate by virtue of being the object of [the path of] total purity, there still remains the question of whether they exist as something ultimate in other senses; we will cover this further on.

This second way of establishing something as a thing that lacks any nature of being ultimate is, further, described as follows in the *Commentary on the True Intent*:

Moreover, we also refer to that attribute of totality which things have as being their "quality of lacking any nature of being ultimate."

And why do we speak of them as such? Listen, Paramarta Samudgata. We refer to that lack of a self-nature of objects which all things have as being their "lack of a nature of their own." The "ultimate" is delineated by being that simple lack that every existing thing has of any nature of its own; and this is why we can speak of the quality of lacking any nature of being ultimate.

च्यार्न्द्रम्यायाः क्रियाः क्रियः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियाः क्रियः क्रियाः क्रियः क्

Totality in the sense of the lack of a self-nature of objects which all things exhibit is an object of [the path of] total purity, and is thus on one count something ultimate. But it is also delineated by the lack that things have of any self-nature of the person, by this simple absence of something; and this is why we can speak of all things as "lacking any nature of their own." This too is a reason why we can say that things "lack any nature of being ultimate."

यशिरश्चिरः। हुर्म् कुर्म् अर्म्स क्ष्रियः क्ष्र

This point is supported by the Commentary on the True Intent where it says,

If the characteristic of being a factor and the characteristic of being ultimate were unconnected, then there is no way that the simple lack of a self-nature to factors and their simple lack of a nature of their own could be their attribute of being ultimate.

The point is also supported by the fact that, in the sections where an illustration is used, it is stated that the lack of a self-nature is established in the same way as we establish empty space; that is, as being the simple lack of any physical matter. It is therefore extremely clear that totality, in the form of the lack of a self-nature to objects, is established for produced things as being the simple absence of their imagined self-existence: the raw exclusion of some self-nature to objects.

It is a complete contradiction on this subject to assert, on the one hand, that the descriptions of thusness in this sutra are to be taken as literal; and on the other hand to assert that this changeless totality is a self-standing, positive object: one which is not established simply as the result of a process of exclusion—the simple exclusion of what we deny when we speak of "no-self," and something which we picture as an object in our minds only by relying on the act of excluding what we deny by "no-self."

พับ พักสุมสาญารัส รุมสาญารัส รุมสาญาสุดานามิรานสาญาสาญารักษ์ หาย พักสุมสาญารัส รุม หาญาสาญานามิรานสารักษ์ หาญารุกฤกานสิงาน กาม หาย พับ พับ

Remember that this is a school where we say that totality is a the simple exclusion of a self-nature with regard to all things; and this is why Lord Buddha spoke of the "lack of a nature of being ultimate." It is not though the case that the school asserts that this absence has no nature of its own for the reason that it has a nature that lacks any quality of existing by definition.

याशुस्रायाश्ची दें र्वे हिन्सेन स्यायाशुस्राये निन्दे निन्दे त्या दे त्या दे त्या है निव्याय स्था दे त्या वदी है निव्याय है निव्याय

Here finally is the third step: illustrations for the points covered. These three lacks of a self-nature can be described with three different illustrations. The *Commentary on the True Intent* begins by saying,

You can view the quality of lacking any definitive nature as being like the illustration of a flower that grows in mid-air.

र्देश्-त्रभः याद्रान्त्रात्त्र व्यवस्था देः त्यात्वदेश विकारम् स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त स्थान्त्र स्था

It is, O Paramarta Samudgata, like this: you can view the quality of not having any nature of growing as being like the illustration of a magic show. And as for the quality of not having any nature of being ultimate, you can view it in yet a different way from those.

र्स्त-प्राचित्रान्तः विश्व हो। विश्

It is, O Paramarta Samudgata, like this: you can view this quality as being like the illustration of empty space, which is delineated

by being a simple lack of anything with a physical nature, and which extends to all things. The lack of having any nature of being ultimate is the same: this particular quality is, in a way different from those others, delineated by being a lack of any self-nature to objects, and also extends to all things.

यर त्यीर जालूर अर्थेट्य यीय भी रेता हुं यो त्याले ये स्वास्त्र स्

Saying that constructs are similar to a flower that grows in mid-air is only meant to illustrate how they exist merely in the imagination; the point is not to give an example of something that doesn't exist in the universe. The way in which dependent things are similar to a magic trick we will explain later on, and the point of the illustration used for totality is clear from the context in which it appears.

द्रिक्षः स्राध्यः स्राध्यः स्राध्यः स्राधः स्राधः

This is the way one should explain how it is that things lack any nature of their own when the sutra speaks of a "lack of any nature of their own." If on the other hand one were to say that "lacking any nature of their own" meant that none of the three natures existed by definition, then you would be expressing the belief that the sutras which state that nothing has any nature of its own are to be taken to mean exactly what they say. This would amount to espousing the view that nothing exists, or the view that everything has discontinued. This in turn would be discounting the existence of all three of the natures; and we could say then that you had turned into one of those people who holds the view that nothing has any definitive characteristics at all.

दर्ने सूर माल्य न्वर रदर रामी अर्ब्य केर ग्रीश मुवाय रामे निर्म केर सम्भे न रदर दवाया या सी

२८.घश.ट्र.या.वेश.श्री.पर्वीर.घटु.याया.स्र्या.स्र्यीतः स्ट.च्यी.शक्ष.क्रेट्.ग्रीश.स्र्ट्र.य.

How this works, according to this school, is the following: if it were not the case that there were any dependent things that existed by definition, then they could never grow or stop—and one would thus be discounting their existence. If there were no examples of totality that existed by definition, then this could never be the core nature of every functional thing.

यायाः हे : रूटा यो स्वर्ध रहेट् ग्रीका साम्यायाः स्वर्धः वर्दे वका सुः है : सूर व्याप्त स्वर्धः सुरा स्वर्धः व यायाः हे : रूटा स्वर्धः सुरा ग्रीका साम्यायाः सुरा वर्दे वका सुः है : सूर व्याप्त सुरा सुरा सुरा सुरा सुरा सु

Suppose, on this point, one were to raise the following question:

I can see how—if one were to hold the viewpoint that they did not exist by definition—one would be discounting the existence of the two natures. How is it though that you would be discounting the existence of constructs?

यम्बाकात्मान्त्रेक्षान्तरः वीक्ष्यं स्त्रेत्वाकात्मान्त्रः विक्षान्त्रः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्त्रः विक्षान्तः विक स्वत्राचित्रः विक्षान्त्रः विक्षान्त्रः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक् यम्बाकात्मान्त्रः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्षान्तः विक्

The point is that, if it were the case that the two natures did not exist by definition, then they could never exist at all. And if they did not exist, then there would be no object towards which we apply the constructs, and none of the terms that the one who applies the constructs uses. Constructs themselves then would become something that did not exist at all.

दयायाश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्ता विज्ञान्य विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्ते विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वर्त्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता विश्वरत्ता वि

दर्यायश्वर्षायाचि रहें लिया के सामी हें द्राया श्रुप्त है । चलिता चि तर स्वर्ष स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर

In this same vein, the Commentary on the True Intent says:

I will explain to you my true intent. It may be the case that you believe in things, that you fail to grasp fully the profound and pure way that things really are. And then you will come to believe, firmly, that I only meant exactly what I said about the nature of all things when I said the following:

None of these things at all has any nature of its own; and they are no other way. None of these things at all ever grows; and they are no other way. None of them ever stops; and they are no other way. They are extinct, and have been so from the very beginning; and they are no other way. They have, by their very nature, gone completely beyond the state of grief; and they are no other way.

If one were to start from this point, it would amount to espousing the view that nothing exists at all, and the view that nothing has any definitive characteristics at all. And once one reached the point of espousing the view that nothing exists, or that nothing has any definitive characteristics, then one would be discounting the existence of all things, from the point of view of each and every one of their attributes. This is true because one would then be discounting the existence of the attribute of having constructs for every existing thing; and one would also be discounting the existence of the attributes of having dependent things and having totality.

शक्ष भेत्र स्वास्त्र म्यास्त्र म्यास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वा

And why would this be the case? Listen, Paramarta Samudgata. The point is that—if something displays the attribute of having a dependent thing, and the attribute of having totality—then we can understand it to display the attribute of having constructs. This being the case, anyone who holds the opinion that the attribute of having a dependent thing and the attribute of having totality have no definitive characteristics at all would also be discounting the existence of the attribute of having constructs. Such a person, we would then have to say, would be discounting the existence of all three of the attributes.

र्देन'यान्ने'ही'पिलेन'लेन'याने प्राप्त स्त्राने स

What does the "what I said" refer to in the sentence about "believing that I meant exactly what I said"? It refers to statements in the sutras where Lord Buddha taught that nothing has any nature of its own: where he stated that all existing things are devoid of any nature which they have; void of any nature of their own; void of any nature of existing by definition. Any school that believed that these were to be taken just as they were spoken would be, in this context, a school that "believed that I meant exactly what I said."

वलि'य'त्य'मिष्ठेश। अर्दे'न्मेंद्र'य'द्रा नेते'र्देब'दुर'=र'वत्र्द्र'यर्दे। ।द्रायेंद्री

Here now is the fourth division from above: a statement, offered by the bodhisattva, of the conclusion reached through the preceding points. We proceed in two steps: a presentation of the relevant passage of the sutra, and then a brief explanation of its meaning. Here is the first.

दे.क्षेत्र.व.वाश्वर.त्रवाताः क्र्याः वेशायतः व्यक्तिः वे । वित्र वाश्वरः व्यक्तिः विश्वरः व्यक्तिः विश्वरः व्यक्तिः विश्वरः व्यक्तिः विश्वरः विश्वर

We see then that Lord Buddha has taught, in his highest of all spoken words, three different groups of sutra: one in which he said that every existing thing does exist by definition; one in which he said that no existing thing exists by definition; and a third in which he made fine distinctions between things, saying that some exist by definition, and some do not.

We see further that these various sutras can be grouped into two categories: those that do and those that do not make fine distinctions between the different ways in which things have no nature of their own at all. Those that do make these distinctions do not need to be interpreted further, and are therefore considered literal. Those that do not make these distinctions must be interpreted further, and so are considered figurative. There are two groups of the latter, and so we can say that two of the groups of sutra are figurative, and one is literal. All this we can understand by implication, from the discussions that have appeared earlier.

चवः द्र-देशःशुःवशुः रर्द्वः देश्वेनः दुशः भ्राः देशः यादः श्चेन्द्रशः विषयः श्वेशः विषयः विषयः

चीर-तालचाना चार्-तालचाना चार-तालचाना चार-ताल

This way in which we speak of the three historical turnings of the wheel as being either figurative or literal, this point that we arrive at through implication from what has come before, is expressed to the Teacher by the bodhisattva Paramarta Samudgata in the following words from the Commentary on the True Intent:

O Conqueror, you taught first in the land of Varanasi, in the forest full of wild animals, the wood of the saints; you imparted a teaching on the subject of the four realized truths to those who had entered, perfectly, the way of the listeners. And in doing so you turned, perfectly, a wheel of the Dharma which was amazing, and awe-inspiring; one which no being—neither god nor man—had ever turned accurately in this world ever before.

And Conqueror, this perfect turning of the wheel of the Dharma was one which had something higher; it was one which left an opening; it was one which had to be interpreted further; and it was one which could serve as a basis for contention.

पर्रमाय्य त्वामाया मुम्नाया मुद्दार्य केता मुन्ति । मान्य सम्मानि । स्वास्त्रम् । मुन्ति । स्वास्त्रम् । सुन्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । सुन्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वासि । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वास्ति । स्वासि । स्वास्ति । स्वासि । स्वासि । स्वासि । स्वासि । स्वासि । स्वा

यिद्यात्रात्त्रे स्थानी तित्त्र त्यां योष्ट्रियाय में स्ट्री यहित्र त्यां स्थानी स्थानी वित्र त्यां स्थानी स्थानी

And then, O Conqueror, you turned the wheel of the Dharma a second time, for the benefit of those who had entered, perfectly, the greater way. This time you took an appearance of speaking of emptiness, doing so by bringing up first the fact that no existing thing could ever have any nature of its own—and then going on to the facts that nothing could ever grow; and that nothing could ever stop; and that everything was extinct from the very beginning, and that everything was, by its very nature, completely beyond all grief.

This turning of the wheel of the Dharma was one which was ever so amazing, and ever so awe-inspiring. And Conqueror, this turning of the wheel of the Dharma as well was one which had something higher; it was one which left an opening; it was one which had to be interpreted further; and it was one which could serve as a basis for contention.

And then, O Conqueror, you turned the wheel of the Dharma a third time, imparting a teaching to those who had entered, perfectly, every one of the different ways: you spoke to them of how to make the fine distinctions. And you did this by bringing up first the fact that no existing thing could ever have any nature of its own—and then going on to the facts that nothing could ever grow; and that nothing could ever stop; and that everything was extinct from the very beginning, and that everything was, by its very nature, completely beyond all grief. This too was a turning of the wheel which was amazing, and awe-inspiring.

विश्वान्त्र वर्षण्येश क्ष्यां विद्य त्या विष्य प्रति विद्य विद्य प्रति विद्य

But Conqueror, this turning of the wheel of the Dharma was one which had nothing higher; it was one which left no opening; it was one which could be taken literally; and it was one which could never serve as a basis for contention.

	First turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Second turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Third turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
Name	The Turning of the Wheel on the Four Truths	The Turning of the Wheel on How Nothing Exists by Definition	The Turning of the Wheel on Fine Distinctions
	denshiy chunkor	सर्वरहिंद्रस्तिः दिव्हिं tsennyi mepay chunkor	lekchey chunkor
Period	First period 58.55.31 du dangpo	Second period	Final period 5 N'

	First turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Second turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Third turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
Place	Sarnath, near Varanasi H'A'R' waranasi	Vulture's Peak, in Rajagirha J.ガラスランスランス jagu pungpoy ri	Vaishali いた私でいるより yangpachen
Disciples	Those of the lower way পুর্রের্মান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যা	Those of the greater way ইম্কুর্ tekchen	Those of all ways (meaning certain ones of the higher way)
Basic subject matter	The four realized truths	Emptiness	The three attributes
	दस्याश्वास्त्रीयदेश्वर्थः प्रति	र्शेट प्राप्ति । tongpa nyi	มธ์สฺหิรฺฑมูมุ tsennyi sum

	First turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Second turning of the wheel of the Dharma—	Third turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
View	Every existing thing exists by definition	No existing thing exists by definition	Some things exist by definition, and some do not, and we must make fine distinctions between them
	क्षेत्रःगुरुःगुरुःध।	क्रेन्गीश्वायाया	র্কুঝ'রুঝঝ'ঝ'ম্ম'স্থার্কর'
	chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi druppa	chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi ma druppa	ক্টিব্যূত্রীব্যমান্ত্রবামা
			यर-स्री
			chu nam la ranggi tsennyi kyi deup madrup lekpar
Figurative or literal according to the Mind-Only School	Figurative	Figurative	Literal
Figurative or literal according to the Middle- Way School	Figurative	Literal	Figurative

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVIII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Reading Ten: What the Buddha Really Meant, Part Two

On the Different Methods of Interpretation

The following selection is taken from the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical Commentary on Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal (Drangba dang nges-pa'i don rnam-par 'byed-pa'i bstan-bcos Legs-bshad snying-po), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); ff. 13a-14a in the ACIP digital edition (catalog number S5396), and pp. 31-34 in the ACIP Indian paper edition. The translation is based upon an oral teaching of the text by Geshe Tupten Rinchen of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. Please note that Je Tsongkapa's root text is extremely difficult, and is best studied with the accompanying ACI tapes.

यात्यात्येयाकात्तरः इक्षात्तरः खें तदः त्रिं रायः विष्णः त्रिं । क्षात्र्वात्त्रीत्यः केषात्रः त्रिं त्रिं

Here is the second part from above: a brief explanation of the distinction between teaching which is figurative and teaching which is literal. The Chinese commentary refers to these different turnings of the wheel as follows. The first is the "Turning of the Wheel on the Four Truths," and the second is the "Turning of the Wheel on How Nothing Exists by Definition." The third is called the "Turning of the Wheel on Ascertaining the Ultimate." If we follow the actual wording of the sutra itself though we would refer to the third one as the "Turning of the Wheel on Fine Distinctions."

Now the way in which this particular sutra decides whether a teaching is figurative or literal hinges on the two of whether it makes certain fine distinctions or not. What it is that we are trying to decide is figurative or literal consists of all three of the teachings: the one in which it was stated equally for all existing objects that they have some nature of their own, one which exists by definition; the one in which it was stated equally for all existing objects that they have no such nature; and the one in which fine distinctions were made between them, stating that some did and some did not have such a nature.

The fact that these three are what we are trying to decide is figurative or not is extremely clear from the following:

- 1) from the fact that the question in which the bodhisattva is trying to rule out any apparent inconsistencies, and the answer that is given, relate to the various groups of sutra;
- 2) from the way in which three lacks of a self nature are set forth for every existing thing, and the statement about nothing having any nature of its own explained in terms of this treatment; and
- 3) from the way in which the three turnings of the wheel, delivered as they were during specific periods, are thereby understood as being either figurative or literal.

देवे धुर-त्राद्राद्राचेर पदेव पापले या प्रस्था वर्षा रदा वी सर्व के दार्थ र पा

Therefore what is being indicated as figurative with regard to the first wheel is that teaching which relates to the initial period, and which starts off from the four realized truths to make statements such as that all existing things exist by definition; it is not though the case that we are referring to everything that Lord Buddha ever spoke during this initial period. Remember that he did, for example, make statements during this initial period such as his advice to the Group of Five at Varanasi urging them to "be sure to wear your lower robes in a neat circle." This is not the kind of teaching that we are concerned with here, the kind that we have to analyze to find out what it means.

देन्तित्र, योश्वर्यात्राच्यात्र, यो द्वारात्राच्यात्र, यो श्वर्यायाः यो यो श्वर्यायाः यो श्वर्यायः यो श्वर्ययः या श्वर्ययः या या यो श्वर्ययः या श्वर्ययः या या या यो श्वर्ययः या या या या या या

Just so, the second turning of the wheel is defined here according to whether Lord Buddha made statements such as the one about nothing having any nature of its own. There are other groups of sutras that do also relate to the second period of Lord Buddha's teaching, but which are not taught from the point of view of things not having any nature of their own, or the like. But since these are not the kinds of teachings about which one might have questions of the kind that arise in the section of the sutra where the bodhisattva tries to clarify some apparent inconsistencies, they need not be clarified here as teachings which are figurative.

श्चीर्यः व्यान्त्रात्त्र्वात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्र म्यायाः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त्र विद्यात्त्रः विद्यात्त

मासुरसःगुराने सर्ने विदेशारे सार्ने दानु हें दाया हो दाया विदारें।।

The third turning of the wheel that is explained as being literal too is the one mentioned before: the teachings in which those fine distinctions are made, and not just everything that was spoken. This fact is made exceedingly clear in the sutra itself. Lord Buddha, for example, did as he was just about to enter his final nirvana give a teaching on what he declared would be appropriate monastic behavior entitled the *Summary of Vowed Morality*. This is not though a teaching which this sutra is explaining as being a literal teaching.

सर्-तिश्वान्तिः स्वान्तिः स्वानिः स्वान्तिः स्वानिः स्वान

One may ask the following question:

What is it that this particular sutra hopes to accomplish by distinguishing the various turnings of the wheel into those that are figurative and those that are literal?

The sutra first seeks to prevent us from taking on face value those teachings which state either that all existing objects exist by definition, or that none exist by definition, without making any attempt to distinguish them into parts. It seeks to inform us that constructs do not exist by definition, but that the other two natures do exist by definition. It finally seeks to teach us that that form of emptiness represented by the absence of those constructs in dependent things is the ultimate object perceived by the path. This then is why the sutra states that the first two turnings of the wheel are figurative, and the final turning literal.

रेवे.ह्येर्।य.क्या.योश्राम्रेर्वरे.वरे.का.यम्ये.वर्ष.योश्रमःयाश्रमःयाश्रम्यः

द्रमायर खे. य. दे. क्रिंग् याची त्राचा त्राच त्राचा त्राच त्राचा त्राचा त्राच त्रा

Given all this, some have used the wording of this sutra to go on and claim that it proves that everything which Lord Buddha taught during all the periods is meant to be taken literally. These people would then have to say that certain statements which the Buddha made to attract those of other religions who still believed that things could have some self-nature are teachings that we are meant to take on face value. They also say that no object but the real nature of things is anything more than the simple delusion of a mistaken state of mind; these other things have not the slightest bit of an existing nature to them. They say finally that the meaning of "fine distinctions" is the distinction between what exists in truth or not, in the sense of being this one true thing: the real nature of things.

देर त्यीर म्स्रिश्च कार्यर देश ये स्ट्रिश में स्ट्रिश

Others have had the concern that—if they were to make the distinction between the figurative and the literal in the way in which this particular sutra does so—then they would be forced to make the same claims as the group just mentioned. Therefore they deny this aspect of the sutra, saying that this method of distinguishing between the figurative and the literal cannot be something meant to be taken on face value.

Neither of these two positions seems to have examined carefully how, in this sutra, the bodhisattva raises questions seeking to explain apparent inconsistencies in the sutras; or how the Teacher gives his answer; or how, based on this exchange, certain teachings are said to be figurative, and others literal. They simply seem to be different arguments about the period represented by the teachings which make the distinction between the figurative and the literal.

The following selection is taken from An Analysis of the Distinction between the Figurative and the Literal, a textbook used at Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery for the study of this subject. It was written by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), and gives both a good sense of the detail in which the monastic textbooks treat their topics, and also a great deal more information on the three turnings of the wheel in relation to interpreting what the Buddha has stated. Several typical dialectic sections are presented here (from folios 1a-5a of the original text), followed by a brief resolution of the questions raised (from folios 9a-10a). The text is used is the edition with ACIP electronic catalog number S0011.

यक्षिमः यक्ष्यः प्रत्यान्त्रम् विष्ट्रमः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्ष्यः यक्षयः यक्ष्यः यक्षयः यक्ष्यः यक्षयः यक्ष्यः यक्षयः यक्ष्यः यक्षयः य

Here is the second part [of the traditional presentation on the art of interpretation]: a more detailed treatment of how we comment upon the turning of the wheel of the Dharma in the sense of the physical teachings; that is, how we decide which teachings were literal, and which were figurative.

This part itself has two divisions: an explanation of the system of the Mind-Only School, and an explanation of the system of the Middle-Way School. The first of these has three sections of its own; here is the first of them.

क्रमायाच्या । प्रम्मायाच्यापाद्या दुमायमायमायास्य मास्य स्थित्याप्य स्थायाच्या स्थायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या स्थायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्याच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच्या । प्रमायमायाच । प्रमायमा

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

Any sutra that the Conqueror spoke during the initial period necessarily belongs to the turning of the wheel where he taught the four realized truths.

Any sutra that he spoke during the middle period necessarily belongs to the turning of the wheel where he taught that nothing exists by definition.

Any sutra that he spoke during the final period necessarily belongs to the turning of the wheel where he made fine distinctions.

Well then, is it the case that—if something is a sutra that the Conqueror spoke during the initial period—it necessarily belongs to the turning of the wheel, as described explicitly in the *Commentary on the True Intent*, where he taught the four realized truths, and so on?

[Why do you say that?]

Because your own assertion is correct.

दर्रिक्षः र्व्याः मुक्तिकः दर्मा या साध्येषः प्रदेशः सुः मुस्याः यदेः दिन्दः दर्भः मुस्याः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भः सुम्याः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भः सुम्याः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भित्यः वर्भः यदे । दर्भः यदे । द

[I agree that it is the case that—if something is a sutra that the Conqueror spoke during the initial period—it necessarily belongs to the turning of the wheel, as described explicitly in the *Commentary on the True Intent*, where he taught the four realized truths, and so on.]

But you can't agree, because the times when Lord Buddha turned the wheel of the Dharma, as described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*, are not defined solely on the basis of the period in which they occurred.

याक्षेत्रः यान्तरः यो। त्याव्यायः या। यर्डे अः व्याव्यायः यो। याव्यः यान्तरः यो। याव्यः यान्तरः यो। याव्यः यान्तरः यो। याव्यः यान्तरः यान्त

Here secondly is the position held by our own school. The definition of the first stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where Lord Buddha taught the four realized truths, is:

Those sutras of the lower way which were taught during the initial period, and in which the Conqueror expressed his message by taking—as the principal subject matter which he described explicitly—the four realized truths, intending the teaching for specific disciples belonging to the lower way.

A prime example of this turning of the wheel would be something like the following words of sutra:

O monks, this is the realized truth of suffering. This is the realized truth of the source of suffering. This is the realized truth of the end of suffering. This is the realized truth of the path to the end of suffering.

त्रभूभःतरः थ्री क्रियाः तर्भ्यः प्रश्नः यात्रः त्रीदः श्वदः त्रायः यात्रः वर्ष्याः यात्रः स्त्रः त्री। यात्रः

Suffering is something you have to become aware is happening. The source is something you have to eliminate. The end is something you have to bring about. The path is something you have to practice.

यम्यस्याः विकासम् विकासम् विकासम् विकासके स्थानिक स्थ

Suffering is something you have to be aware is happening; then there will be nothing left to be aware of. The source is something you have to eliminate; then there will be nothing left to eliminate. The end is something you have to bring about; then there will be nothing left to bring about. The path is something you have to practice; then there will be nothing left to practice.

The definition of the middle stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where Lord Buddha taught that nothing exists by definition, is:

Those sutras of the higher way which were taught during the middle period, and in which the Conqueror expressed his message by taking—as the principal subject matter which he described—the subtle object of emptiness, intending the teaching for specific disciples belonging to the higher way, and possessed of higher powers.

यक्षत्यावि दे। कुषाय विदाय सुषाया सुष्ठाया सुराया विष्या र या सूर्या विषय र या सूर्या विष्या र या सूर्या विषय र या सूर्या या सूर्या विषय र या सूर्या विषय र या सूर्या या सूर्य

A prime example of this turning of the wheel would be the longer, medium, and briefer versions of the *Mother of the Buddhas*; their abbreviation; and the *Heart of Wisdom*.

वर्ष्याक्ष्यः वर्षाण्येशः त्यावः व्यायः व्यः व्यायः व्यायः

Those sutras of the higher way which were taught during the final period, and in which the Conqueror expressed his message by taking—as the principal subject matter which he described—either the subtle form of a lack of a self-nature to objects, the grosser form, or both, intending the teaching for specific disciples belonging to the higher way.

A prime example of this turning of the wheel would be sutras such as the "Chapter Requested by the Bodhisattva Paramarta Samudgata"; the section of the "Chapter Requested by Maitreya" from the *Commentary on the True Intent* known as "Maitreya and the Reflection in which Single-Pointed Concentration Plays."

दे: न्याक्षे में प्याप्त के निष्ठा प्राप्त के निष्ठा के प्राप्त के निष्ठा प्राप्त के निष्ठा के प्राप्त के निष्ठा के प्राप्त के प्रा

The above are, by the way, only primary descriptions; if one were to eliminate all the problematic wording in them carefully, then the definition of the first stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where Lord Buddha taught the four realized truths, would be:

A sutra of the lower way, whichever of the three turnings of the wheel it belongs to.

न्व्रियात्व्रीयात्र्याम्बुद्यायदे त्व्रियः व्याम्बुद्यार्या वार्ष्यः वारान्वेव । केन्

The definition of the middle stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where Lord Buddha taught that nothing exists by definition, would be:

A sutra that (1) belongs to some one of the three turnings of the wheel as described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*, and which (2) was intended primarily for disciples belonging to the greater way, but of the kind who did not require a reinterpretation of the middle turning of the wheel through some teaching like the "Chapter Requested by the Bodhisattva Parmarta Samudgata."

क्र्यात्वर्यः क्रीः शक्ष्यः क्षेत्र। शक्ष्यः योष्ठिः वे स्ट्रमः स्त्रमः स्त्रीः वयातः व्यायः व्यः व्यायः व

The definition of the final stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where the fine distinctions were made, would then be:

A sutra that (1) belongs to some one of the three turnings of the wheel as described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*, and which (2) was intended primarily for disciples belonging to the greater way, and of the kind who did require a re-interpretation of the middle turning of the wheel through some teaching like the "Chapter Requested by the Bodhisattva Parmarta Samudgata."

Prime examples would be the same as above.

त्यायः श्रा याव्यायः विष्यायः विष्यः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यायः विष्यः विष्यायः विष्यः विष्यायः विष्यः विष्यः

Now there is a reason why the sutra says that the specific disciples for whom the final stage of the teachings, the turning of the wheel of the Dharma where fine distinctions were made, were "those who had entered, perfectly, every one of the different ways." The point is that the specific disciples for whom the first wheel was turned are capable only of grasping the system of the three attributes with regard to the version of the lack of a self-nature of persons that was presented during the first turning of the wheel. They are not capable of grasping the system of the three attributes with regard to the lack of a self-nature of objects treated by the middle turning of the wheel.

यद्मर स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र

Specific disciples for whom the middle wheel was turned are capable of grasping the system of the three attributes with regard to the lack of a self-nature of objects treated by the middle turning of the wheel with requiring any re-interpretation of this middle turning by any other sutra.

यद्मर्स्याच्च अद्धर्भ क्षेत्रः कषेत्रः कष

Specific disciples for whom the final wheel was turned are not capable of grasping the system of the three attributes with regard to the lack of a self-nature of objects treated by the middle turning of the wheel without a reinterpretation of this middle turning of the wheel through some teaching like the "Chapter Requested by the Bodhisattva Paramarta Samudgata."

यदिताः ये. खुयाः त्रुपः तर्तः क्रीं अष्ट्यः क्रीं अर्थः क्रीं अर्

When we say that they "are immediately capable of grasping the system of the three attributes with regard to the lack of a self-nature of objects treated by the middle turning of the wheel if they do rely on a re-interpretation of this middle turning of the wheel through some teaching like the "Chapter Requested by the Bodhisattva Paramarta Samudgata," the implication is that they are already a disciple who understands the system of the three attributes with regard to the lack of a self-nature of the person presented during the first turning of the wheel. And this is why the sutra speaks of those of "every one of the different ways."

Master Asanga on Avoiding the Two Extremes

The following selection is taken from the Essence of Eloquence, a Classical Commentary on Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal (Drangba dang nges-pa'i don rnam-par 'byed-pa'i bstan-bcos Legs-bshad snying-po), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); ff. 14a-18a in the ACIP digital edition (catalog number S5396), and pp. 34-44 in the ACIP Indian paper edition. The translation is based upon an oral teaching of the text by Geshe Tupten Rinchen of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. Please note that Je Tsongkapa's root text is extremely difficult, and is best studied with the accompanying ACI tapes.

यक्षिरायायायक्षिर्या स्वेतान्येदार्श्वायायात्रीयायात्रीयायायात्रीयायायात्रीयायायात्रीयायायात्रीयायायात्रीयायाय

Here begins the second major part in our discussion of the art of interpretation according to the *Commentary on the True Intent;* that is, an explanation of how this sutra is commented upon. We proceed in two steps: a description of how Master Asanga relies, primarily, on the *Commentary;* and a description of how he sets forth the meaning of thusness, based on this approach.

दाः निः तान्त्रेश क्ष्यं ने स्वार्थ क्ष्यं क्षयं क्ष्यं क्षयं क्ष्यं क्षयं क्ष्यं क्ष्यं क्षयं क्ष

Here is the first. In the *Compendium*, Master Asanga cites the chapters on the ultimate from the *Commentary on the True Intent*, saying—

You should understand the ultimate as having five characteristics, as described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*.

He also cites the chapters that treat the three attributes, in the words:

You should view the attributes of all existing things as these are described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*.

He further cites the chapters on how things lack any nature of their very own, the ones that relate topics like the question and the answer about apparent

inconsistencies in the sutras, and the distinction between teachings that are figurative and those that are literal, like this:

You should view, for every existing thing, the characteristic of lacking any nature of its own as described in the *Commentary on the True Intent*.

दर्योक्षः वश्चान्त्रः सम्बद्धः द्वानः सम्बद्धः सम्बदः सम्बद्धः सम्बदः सम्ब

Master Asanga further refers to the idea of the group of eight different kinds of consciousness, and the idea that—ultimately—there are three fixed tracks, both as they are spoken in the *Commentary on the True Intent*.

त्रायोध्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात

In others of his works—in the "Chapter on Thusness" from the *Levels of the Bodhisattvas*, in the treatise upon it, and in the *Compendium* as well—he makes his presentation using a great number of explanations which come from the *Commentary on the True Intent:* explanations which show how Lord Buddha stated that totality consists of the absence of constructs relating to the basic object and to its details, with regard to dependent things.

सर्रानुम्बर्गत्र-त्व्यास्त्रत्यास्त्र विदेशे देव मान्य त्याविष्य स्वर्गत्य स्वर्गत्य स्वर्णा स्वर्णा

Consider too the presentations of thusness found in the *Jewel of the Sutras*, in *Distinguishing the Middle from the Extremes*, and the various crucial points found in the commentaries upon these texts. They also are in very close agreement with the explanations found in our sutra, and so we can say that it appears that setting forth the meaning of this sutra forms the very foundation of this [Mind-Only] system.

Here secondly is our description of how Master Asanga sets forth the meaning of thusness, based on this approach of relying primarily upon the *Commentary on the True Intent*. Here there are three steps: a general presentation of how one avoids the two extremes; a more detailed refutation of the extreme of concocting things; and how here the distinction between the literal and figurative teachings of Lord Buddha is drawn.

और रे.के.चयु क्यार्टा रे.चाक्षेत्रायम्यात्र क्याय्या। रटा रे.रचा.जन्माविषः तयु चिष्टिः षेत्राचतर क्याय्या । रटात्राजायक्षिण ह्याँ रटात्राजायश्चिम। चिरान्नाष्ट्रायविरात्रयु क्याय्या चर्ने.च.ष्ट्रायायवर तयु क्या

The first of these has three further sections: the way in which the *Levels of the Bodhisattva* explains the point; the way in which the *Compendium* explains the point; and how other texts explain it. The first of these has two parts of its own: how a person who is concocting or discounting things views things, and how we refute them.

चतः र्श्वे विद्यायायय। है स्ट्रिं र्यो दि स्ट्रिं स्ट

Here is the first of these two parts. One may begin with the following question:

The Levels of the Bodhisattva makes the following statement:

How then do things exist? They exist in a certain way—in which they are free of the object of a mistaken tendency to concoct things, a tendency directed at something which doesn't in reality exist; and in which they are free of the object of a mistaken tendency to discount things, a tendency directed at things which are in reality pure.

Can you explain what "concocting things" and "discounting things" mean in this description that things exist in a way free of concocting and discounting?

देय्राश्चर्यः याश्चर्यः या व्याच्याः या व्याच्याः व्याच्याः या व्याच्

These two are explained in the Levels of the Bodhisattva as follows.

The way in which concocting things works was spoken to be like this: it is that belief in which you concoct something about the very nature of the words that are used to make constructions concerning physical matter and all other existing objects, and concerning physical matter and all other functioning things; about words that are, in fact, things which do not exist by definition.

Discounting things is like this; it is saying that the following do not, all in all, exist:

that which is the foundation, with the typical features, of the words used to make constructs—that which provides the basis, with the characteristics, of the words used to make constructs;

that which exists ultimately, through an identity beyond all expression; and

that which is a pure, functioning thing.

They are, in short, things that waste one's opportunity; you should understand that these two will cause you to fall from this spiritual way of discipline.

The beginning part of this second section constitutes a description of what it is to discount something; and the part including the words "waste one's opportunity" on down is describing how a person would then fall from the profound teaching of the greater way.

यन्त्रप्तिः । विर्म्णियः भ्रवश्याविष्यः प्रति । विर्म्णियः प्रति । विर्म्णियः प्रति । विर्म्णियः प्रति । विर्मणियः । विरम्पणियः । विर्मणियः । विर्मणि

The part that talks about "physical matter," continuing down to "functional things," is describing the object towards which a construct is directed. The part about "the very nature of the words that are used to make constructions" should be understood as referring to the nature [or attribute] of constructs, rather than to the words used in applying the constructs themselves; this point is made quite clear in works like the *Compendium*. You should keep in mind that—when this phrasing is used elsewhere in the *Compendium* as well—it should be read this same way.

क्षेत्रा वीश्वायम्बाश्वायदे दे दे दे है दि स्टावी अर्ध द है द ग्रीश र्थे द स्टावी श्राम्य दे दे रे विश्वास के दे हैं दे विश्वास के हैं के स्वाय है हैं स्वाय है है स्वाय है स्वाय है है स्

The act of concocting things then consists of a believing that this nature constructed through the use of words—something which in fact does not exist by definition—does exist by definition.

यम्याश्रासदः स्याः यो सर्व स्था यो यो वि दे यम्याश्रासदे स्याः यो सर्व स्था से दे दे वे श

पर्यायवर रे ग्रा्य यह्याय ग्री याद्याय याहिर्दे ।

The expression "that which is the foundation, with the typical features, of the words used to make constructs" is explained by the expression "that which provides the basis, with the typical features, of the words used to make constructs": the point is that we are talking about the object towards which the construct is directed.

ने केन नहें निर्मा के सुर प्रतेन स्था के भी स्था के स

And the act of discounting things then consists of holding the idea that this thing—which "exists ultimately," in a way which is "beyond all expression"—"does not, all in all, exist."

देन्द्रम्याव्यस्यावित्रम्याव्यस्याव्यस्याव्यस्य स्थितः देश्व विषयः यस्य स्थितः स्यतः स्थितः स्

Given all this, concocting things is where you say, "Constructs exist ultimately"; and discounting things is something where you say, "The other two natures do not exist ultimately." This is because the first of the three actually only exists deceptively, whereas the other two exist ultimately.

देन-द्रमायन-र्यिद्गाय-श्चिद्गाय-स्वाद्य-त्री-त्रि-स्वाद्य-त्री-स्वाद्य-स्वाद-

If we explain discounting things as being the view that something which in actuality does exist ultimately doesn't exist at all, then it would seem that we'd have to explain concocting things as being the converse; that is, as the view that something which in actuality does not exist ultimately, does exist. The position stated at this point though is that concocting things consists of holding that constructs exist by definition—which means holding them to exist ultimately. So although it's not stated clearly in the actual wording, the point of the text here is that—if something exists by definition—then it exists ultimately. Holding that constructs exist ultimately then, according to this view, constitutes the act of concocting things.

On the Meaning of "Ultimate" and "Deceptive" Reality

वाक्षेत्रायायात्रिका र्स्विवाकाः स्थान विद्वार स्थान स्था

Here next is how the *Compendium* explains the point of how to avoid the two extremes. We proceed in three steps: a presentation of the opponent position, some questions and answers concerning this position, and a refutation of these answers.

Here is the first. The *Compendium* includes a section that says:

Some followers of the greater way, intent on continuing to hold to their errors, make this claim:

In a deceptive way, it is true that all things exist. Ultimately though nothing exists.

These are the followers of the Middle Way, who speak of some distinction between different ways in which all things both do exist and don't exist, saying, "No single existing thing exists ultimately; and every one of them does exist nominally."

दे.वश्वादे.जा.वहीं श्रीत्र हेश्वाद्धीं विश्वाद्धीं वि

And when they say this we reply to them with the following question:

Then we ask you, venerable sirs, what does it mean to be "ultimate"? And what does it mean to be "deceptive"?

And suppose they answer like this—

"Ultimate" refers to that thing which is the lack of a self-nature that every existing object exhibits. "Deceptive" refers to that thing which is the tendency to see all these objects—which in truth have no nature of their own—as having some nature of their own.

र्श्वरः श्वरः विश्वरः विश्वरः देश्वरः देशे विश्वरः वि

And why is that? Because this tendency focuses on things that don't even exist and creates a deception, and makes up something, and declares something to be, and creates an expression.

This would describe how our opponents would answer if you asked them what the two truths were.

देश्यत्वदेशः देश्यत्वान्य्येषः देश्यः विष्णः विषणः विष्णः विष्णः

Here the question that is posed—"What does 'ultimate' mean?"—is one in which we are asking for a typical example of ultimate truth. It is not though a question about the "ultimate" that we say doesn't exist when we say that nothing existing ultimately; not a question about how something isn't. If it were, then it would be a mistake to answer that "ultimate" referred to the fact that no existing thing has a self-nature; and this is because, when those of the Middle Way say that something exists "as the ultimate," meaning "as the lack of self-existence exhibited by all things," this is not at all what they mean when they talk about something that could exist ultimately.

The question about "What does it mean to be 'deceptive'?" is as well a question about the state of mind to which something can be established as what we call "deceptive truth"; it is not a question about the "nominal" we speak of when we say that things exist "nominally." If it were, then it would be incorrect to speak of the "deceptive" where you hold that things have some nature of their own when—in fact—they have no such nature. Remember, this is the tendency to hold things as being true: and those of the Middle Way would say that the thing it believes in doesn't even have any nominal existence. And this is because, when you speak of things "not having any self-nature," the self-

nature that you say things don't have has to be referring to a kind of self-nature which is absent: to a self-nature that existed truly.

Interpretations of the Independent Group of the Middle-Way School

There is no one section of Je Tsongkapa's root text on the Essence of Eloquence that easily presents all the concepts of the Independent group of the Middle-Way School on the subjects covered in the course so far. We therefore begin a group of selections, many from monastic textbooks, which together give us a good overview of the relevant ideas.

The first part of the reading helps understand the differences between the Independent group, the Mind-Only School, and the Consequence group on the question of whether things exist from their own sides, with their own unique identities. The selection is taken from the Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom (Phar-phyin spyi-don) of Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), from the glorious Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery (ACIP electronic text catalog number SL0009, Part One, folios 12a-13b). Remember that most of the descriptions of "our own system" refer to that of the Independent group!

देवाराग्री: दवावा क्रूंत खेवाराज्ञ देवाराज्ञ स्वाराण्य स्वाराण स्वाराण स्वाराण्य स्वाराण्य स्वाराण स्वाराण्य स्वाराण स्वराण स्वाराण स्वार

Therefore the following is the final form of the idea denied by the reasoning which examines the ultimate:

Anything which existed from its own side with its own unique identity, rather than being simply established as existing by appearing to an unaffected state of mind.

त्त्रवाश्चित्र। यवियात्त्रत्त्रेत्र। यवियात्त्रत्त्र्याश्च्र्याश्च्रत्याश्च्रत्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्रत्यात्त्रत्यात्त्रत्यात्त्रत्यात्त्र यवियात्त्रत्त्रेत्र।

And this is true because the final form of the way in which physical matter and all other existing objects exist deceptively is through their being established as existing by a state of mind which is unaffected by short-term circumstances that would cause it to make an error.

याच्चित्रश्चित्

When we describe the state of mind which can establish that physical matter and all other existing objects exist, it is necessarily one which is not affected by some short-term circumstances which would cause it to make an error; it is not the case though that it would have to be a state of mind which was not affected by some long-term circumstances.

And this is because it is not the case that—when physical matter and other such existing objects appear to be things that exist by definition—this appearance is not something which is affected neither by short-term nor by long-term circumstances; and because it involves being affected by the innate form of the tendency to hold things as existing truly.

यीयःत्रश्राह्ण्याय्वेष्ठ्याः देश्याः हो।

याव्याः त्राय्याः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः व्याप्त्राः

Here we will explain how this school decides what the two realities are, using some metaphors as well. Two things have to be present with all of these objects: with physical matter and every other existing thing. From the point of view of what appears in the world, they must be established as existing

from our side—merely by virtue of their appearing to an unaffected state of mind. From the point of view of emptiness, they must be void of any kind of existence where the object exists from its own side through its own unique identity, rather than by virtue of its appearing to an unaffected state of mind.

And so two things have to come together for a functional thing like a sprout: it must be established as existing by virtue of appearing to an unaffected state of mind; and the sprout should exist from its own side through some identity.

चर्याः वर्षे स्ट्रास्त्राः हीः वर्षे स्ट्रास्त्राः वर्षे स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्र चर्याः वर्षे स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्राः स्ट्रास्त्रा

The first is necessary since—if it were not—then a sprout would have to be a sprout even to a person who had never been introduced to the idea that the sprout was called a "sprout."

The latter is necessary since—if it were not—then a sprout would be a sprout in exactly the same way as the horn of a rabbit is the horn of a rabbit: merely because we called it the "horn of a rabbit," or just because we imagined something called the "horn of a rabbit."

यवियाःश्याश्चात्रःश्चीयःतःश्चीयःतःश्चीयःत्रः योश्चितः याश्चितः स्वातः स्

Consider, by the way, the word "merely" when we speak of physical matter and all other existing objects as being "things which are established as existing merely by virtue of their appearing to an unaffected state of mind." Its use is

meant to disallow the idea that these things could be established by virtue of some unique identity of the object itself, rather than being established as existing by virtue of this appearing. It is not however meant to disallow the idea that things do not exist merely through names and terms.

ख्रायक्षर्म्यात्रेत्र्यः मार्यः प्रम्याय्यः प्रम्यः प

And this is true because, as the *Perfect Explanation*, an *Illumination of the True Thought*, has a part where it states—

Given the fact that those who belong to this school accept the idea that physical matter and all other existing objects do possess an identity that is not established merely through names and terms . . .

या व्याया अंत्राया के क्षेत्र त्याया के क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र क्षेत्र के क्षेत्

Now there is a metaphor which we can use for the idea that physical matter and all other existing objects are established as existing from our side—merely by virtue of their appearing to an unaffected state of mind, and for the idea that these objects exist through some identity of their own.

Think of a case where a magician makes a stick of wood appear as a horse or cow. Two things have to be present here. First of all, the appearance of a horse or cow there around the stick is something that is established as existing by virtue of the minds of the people whose eyes are affected by the magic words and powder, from their side. Secondly, an appearance must also be something coming from the side of the stick.

स्वाश्रास्थाण्येश्वायस्थाण्येश्वायाः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्व द्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वायः स्वाश्वायः स्वाश्वयः स्वाश्वय

The first requirement, being established as existing by virtue of the minds of the people whose eyes are affected by the magic words and powder, is necessary since—if it were not—then those in the audience whose eyes were not affected by the magic words and powder would have to see this appearance, whereas they do not.

देवे कें हे विद्यों देश दश्य ह सूद्य दु श्रूद्य प्याप्य द्यों शही शे द्यों शद हे विद्य शद स्विद्य स्य

In this same situation it is also necessary for the horse or cow to be appearing from the stick's side as well, since—if they were not—then the appearance of a horse or cow would have to occur even in a place where there were no stick; whereas it does not.

ने प्रति त्र त्र म्या स्त्र म्या स्त्र म्या स्त्र स्त

Physical matter—and all other existing objects—are similar, in that they are established as existing by an unaffected state of mind; and this is because they are constructed by virtue of an unaffected state of mind and names that fit.

स्यान्त्रास्त्रः स्र्रीतः यात्र स्वान्यान्यः यात्र स्वान्यः यात्र स्वान्यः यात्र स्वान्यः स्वान

न्वेंबायायायार्द्रसुमान्यार्द्रम्

They do not, however, exist from their own side through some unique identity of their own, without being established as existing by virtue of appearing to an unaffected state of mind. This is because—if they were to exist this way—then they would have to be some ultimate nature. And if they were some ultimate nature, then they would have to be something which is perceived directly by a certain unmistaken state of mind: that meditative wisdom of a realized being who is not yet a Buddha, and who perceives the real nature of things directly. The fact is though that they are not.

सेट.म्.च.सम्म.ज.इ.प्ट.स.मेट.टे.कैंट.च.टट.खेंच.त.च्छेम.ल्ट्रा मैं मामाय ग्रीम.इ.प्ट.स.मेट.टे.कैंट.च.टट.खेंच.त.च्छेम.ल्ट्रा

In this situation, where a magician makes a stick appear as a horse or cow, two things apply to the members of the audience whose eyes are affected by the magic words and powder: they stick is appearing as a horse or cow, and they believe that it is.

द्वीरक्षी त.री.चबुष.री.चबिषाकाक्ष्याकाग्री.क्ष्यादेशकाग्री.क्षेट.री.क्षेट.बुष.क्षेत्रायाक्षेत्र. ग्रीकाश्राचात्रात्रात्रीकाग्री.क्षेत्रात्रात्रीकाग्री.क्षेत्राचात्राद्देश्चिट.दी.क्षेट.विष.क्षेत्राचात्रीत्र व्यीट.क्षेत्र

The only condition that applies to the magician himself is that a horse or cow is appearing to him; he does not believe in them. And those members of the audience who showed up later—those whose eyes were not affected by the magic words or powder—have neither the horse or cow appearing to them, nor any belief in the horse or cow. These same three different permutations apply as well to physical matter and all the other existing objects.

Consider "common" people: those who have not yet had their first experience of the perception of emptiness. Both situations apply to them for physical matter and all other existing objects: these things appear to them to exist truly, and they believe in the way they appear.

पश्चित्रामास्त्राच्याः विद्यास्त्राच्याः विद्यास्त्राच्याः विद्याः वि

Consider now bodhisattvas who have reached one of the pure levels. Even though objects appear to their minds, during what we call the "subsequent period," as something which exists truly, they have no belief in them this way. And this is because neither situation applies to realized beings who are not yet Buddhas and who are perceiving the real nature of things directly; that is, physical matter and other objects do not appear to them as if they existed truly, and they do not believe that these objects exist that way.

यदेन्यराश्चीत्वा धर्म्यायराष्ट्रम्यराष्ट्रम्यः विकास विकास

The Consequence and Independent groups of the Middle-Way School hold the same belief about the following things; both schools hold them to be what is denied by the reasoning which examines the ultimate:

- a thing that could exist truly;
- a thing that could exist purely;
- a thing that could exist as thusness;
- a thing that could exist ultimately; and
- the thought where you hold that anything could exist in any of these ways.

र्ट्स्नी स्थान्य स्था

The Independent group does not however agree that the following are what is denied by the reasoning which examines the ultimate:

- a thing that existed from its own side;
- a thing that existed by nature;
- a thing that existed as a substantial thing;
- a thing that existed by definition; and
- the thought where you hold that anything like physical matter or the rest could exist this way.

चित्रपदेः सुर्। यह्नेत्रप्राच्याः स्थाः सुर्वाच्याः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाच्याः यह्नेत्रप्राच्याः स्थाः सुर्वाच्याः यह्नेत्रप्राच्याः यहित्। यह्नेत्रप्राच्याः स्थाः सुर्वाच्याः यहित्। यहितः स्थाः सुर्वाच्याः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः सुर्वाचः स्थाः स्था

And this is true because they believe that—if something exists—it must necessarily exist as the three left over after you exclude a thing that existed as a substantial thing. There is some discussion about the status of constructs; but they believe that, if something is a functional thing, it must exist as a substantial thing.

र्थः क्षेत्रः त्रीयः प्रम्यः द्वः त्रमः यात्रः त्रीयः याः क्ष्यः क्षेत्रः त्रीयः याः क्ष्यः विष्यः त्रीयः याः क्ष्यः विष्यः याः क्ष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष

Neither those who follow the Consequence system, nor those who follow the Independent system, accept that any of the following could be the final form of the idea denied by the reasoning which examines the ultimate:

- a thing that existed as the way things really are;
- a thing that existed as ultimate reality; and
- a thing that existed as the real nature of things.

र्देन'द्रम'यदेन'य'धेन'न'दे'यासुम'दु'युप'यस'विय'यदे'धेर'हे।

And this is true because—if something is ultimate reality—it must always exist as these three as well.

य्यायाः स्वास्त्राच्याः स्वास्त्राचः स्वास्त्राच्याः स्वास्त्

And this is true first of all because the *Perfect Explanation, an Illumination of the True Thought,* states that—when the commentary to the *Sixty Verses of Reasoning* describes nirvana as deceptive reality—what it means is that nirvana must be established as existing as ultimate reality with reference to a deceived state of mind. *Distinguishing between the Figurative and the Literal* also states that the real nature of things exists as the real nature of things; and *Opening the Eyes of the Good and Fortune* states that it doesn't automatically mean that something exists ultimately just because it exists as the real nature of things.

It would be correct to say then that there is a difference in subtlety between the Consequence and Independent versions of the final form of the idea denied by the reasoning which examines the ultimate. This is true first of all because the Independent group accepts the concept that things can exist by definition, through their accepting the concepts of an independent logical reason; of something that could grow from something other than itself; and of something that could exist as a substantial thing.

ब्रॅ्च-२र्धेद-त्येयात्र-त्यद्व-दच्चेद-ग्रीत्र-ग्राद-यह्मात्र-र-योत्र-सर्दद-हेद-ग्रीत्र-स्य-या्व-र-

The idea is moreover supported by the manner in which the schools explain the concept of what is literal and what is figurative. Master Bhavaviveka denies extensively the idea that the Mind-Only School explains the true intent of the middle turning of the wheel to be the concept that constructs do not exist by definition. And when Shantarakshita and his spiritual son explain the way in which the final turning of the wheel comments upon the middle turning, they explain it as meaning that constructs do not exist by definition in an ultimate way, but do exist by definition in a nominal way.

The following selection is drawn from the same text, the Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom (Part Five, ff. 9a-10a). It gives an idea of how valid the Consequence group considers the division of selflessness into three differing degrees of subtlety:

यिश्वायात्र्यं स्थायह्या । यिश्वायात्र्यं स्थायह्यायायायाः स्यायाः योश्यायाः स्थायाः स्थायः स्थायाः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्थाय

The Consequence group of the Middle-Way School draws a distinction between the lack of a self-nature of persons and of things, but only relative to the thing it is which is empty of them; they do not however make any distinction between more or less subtle versions of what it is we deny by the reasoning which examines the ultimate. Here in the Independent School though they recognize both these distinctions.

रेदु.रेयट.रे.येबार्या श्रे.यह्या.व्य.लुय.य.रट.मे.ब्रेय.तदु.ह्या.लूर्य.ग्रीबार्श्वट.यबा

And it is relative to this fact that they can say it's not necessarily the case that something is devoid of existing as a self-standing, substantial object if it exhibits the qualities of growing and stopping. They would also say that, just because something is a person, it's not necessarily the case that it is then devoid of this same kind of existence. And this is because both are disproved by the example of consciousness of the thought.

Consciousness of the thought is [considered to be] the person: Master Bhavaviveka proves this through both scriptural authority and reasoning, and the master we are dealing with here concurs with him.

We can discuss this question in terms of three divisions: reasoning based on contemplation; deep practice based on meditation; and the result of this meditation.

Here is the first.

Consider the heaps that we have taken on.

They are something which is devoid of being a person who existing as a self-standing, substantial object;

Because they exhibit the qualities of growing and stopping.

They are, for example, like a wagon.

श्ची त्रह्मा छत्र त्रोत्तर त्रों श्वास त्र श्ची मार स्वास त्र श्ची स्वास त्र स्वास त्र श्ची स्वास त्र स्वास त्

If something exhibits the qualities of growing and stopping, it cannot be something which exists as a self-standing, substantial object;

Because if something were the self-nature of a person it could never be something which exhibited the qualities of growing and stopping.

And this is true because, if something were this kind of a self-nature, it would have to be something which were unchanging, singular, and independent.

हेश्चित्रक्षेत्र्याक्ष्यः यात्रक्षेत्रः व्याप्तः व्यापतः व

Consider the fresh, unerring state of mind which grows from this type of reasoning, and which perceives a kind of emptiness which is the fact that the person is devoid of being a self-standing, substantial object. This is a deductive form of valid perception which has realized the lack of a self-nature to the person, and we describe it as being a realization of an emptiness which has grown from contemplation.

The next selection is also taken from the Overview (Part Five, f. 3b), and gives an insight into how the Independent group views the function of meditating upon the three degrees of selflessness.

स्रम्याश्रामश्रीयायात्रेश्राम्यायात्रेश्राम्यात्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्रम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्रयात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्रेश्राम्यात्र

र्श्वर्यायार्श्वर्यर र्श्वर्यायार्थे विश्वर्यायार्थे विश्वर्याय्ये विश्वर्यायय्ये विश्वर्याय्ये विश्वर्याय्ये विश्वर्याय्ये विश्वर्ये विश्वर्याय्ये विश्वर्ये विश्वये विश्वर्ये विश्वर्ये विश्वये विश्वर्ये विश्वये विश

"Well then," you may think to yourself, "how do we in our own position describe the process by which one eliminates the various impurities?" It has been taught that:

One can gain the ability to put a total end to the three—that is, to the obstacles of the mental afflictions, to the gross obstacles to omniscience, and to the subtle obstacles to omniscience—if one meditates with that wisdom which grows from meditation and which sees directly the three degrees of the lack of a self-nature; this itself grows from following the practices of study and meditation to come to an understanding of these three.

Given this statement, it is not the case that in our own position we believe—as do those who assert the existence of functional things which exist truly—that one can eliminate impurities that one asserts exist in truth. The citation rather is demonstrating the principal tenet of how our own system describes the process of eliminating the two obstacles; that is, that we eliminate impurities by meditating upon how these same impurities lack any true existence.

We turn next to comments on whether the lower degrees of selflessness are true emptiness; these are taken from "The Cloud of Offerings, which Pleases the Wise, and Illuminates the True Thought of the Treatise known as the 'Ornament of Realizations," being a Combined Word Commentary and Dialectical Analysis of the Fifth Chapter of the Treatise. This work was composed by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748), also an illustrious author of textbooks for Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery (ACIP electronic text S0195-5, f. 32b).

क्र्यास्थायिष्यः श्रीक्षः सूर्यः प्रदेशः सूर्यः सू

यः ह्र्यायाः ग्रीः स्राप्तः याच्याः याच्याः याः सर्वः स्रायः प्राप्तः स्राप्तः स्रायः स्रायः स्रायः स्रायः स्र

Suppose someone comes and makes the following claim:

It must too be the case that the uninterrupted path in the mind of a person at the end of the process realizes, directly, the form of emptiness which is the absence of a separate substance to physical matter and the valid perception which perceives this physical matter,

Because it perceives this fact directly in a single briefest instant of action.

देर बया देश दे. दे स्वाय सुया पदि भी मानुया

[We disagree with your reason.]

But you can't, because it does have the capacity to do so.

Our answer would be that it doesn't necessarily follow.

वर्रेर्-भ्रे'स्थाने। बेया-केर्-श्री-पर-कर्-भ्रेर-प्रसाधीर-पर्व-ध्रीर।

And one could never agree with your position, because we are talking about the uninterrupted path in the higher way.

क्षेत्र-स्वाप्त्

[It doesn't necessarily follow.]

But it does necessarily follow, because that emptiness represented by the absence of a separate substance to physical matter and the valid perception which perceives this physical matter is deceptive reality.

Interpretations of the Consequence Group, and What Je Tsongkapa Himself Believes

The following selection gives a brief but exquisite description of how the concept of emptiness is explained by followers of the Consequence group of the Middle-Way School of Buddhism (the Madhyamika Prasangika). It is taken from the Overview of

the Middle Way (dBu-ma spyi-don) by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), an eminent author of textbooks for Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery (ACIP electronic text number S0021, ff. 125a-130a).

त्रीयान्तराष्ट्रीटायाः स्वास्त्रास्याः स्वास्त्राः स्वास्त्

Here we will analyze the statement [from *Entering the Middle Way*, by Master Chandrakirti (650 AD)] where it says, "...The mind of a craving spirit as well, which sees a stream of water as pus." One may begin with the following question:

Let's consider the objects of the following states of mind: the visual consciousness of a craving spirit where a river of water looks like pus and blood; the visual consciousness of a person with a kind of cataract where a clean white porcelain basin looks like a hair has fallen into it; and that kind of meditation where you visualize skeletons—where you imagine that the entire surface of the earth is covered with the bones of corpses. Are all these objects completely equivalent, as far as being something that exists or doesn't exist?

निष्यत्ता नेदेश्यत्त्रभूत्राचिश्चेत्राचिश्चेत्राचिश्चेत्राचित्रभ्याचित्रभ्

In reply we will first set forth a relevant passage, and then we will explain the passage. Here is the first. The text called *The Abbreviation of the Greater Way* says,

Insofar as craving spirits, animals, Humans, and pleasure beings, each according To their class, have differing perceptions Of a single thing, we say it has no reality.

Asvabhava, the holy layman with lifetime vows, has explained the passage. His words include the following:

When they look at *a single thing*, a stream of water, each one sees what the ripening of his particular karma forces him to see. A *craving spirit* sees the river full of pus and blood and the like.

रे.क्रेर.ज.रेर.ज.क्र्य.ज.क्र्याचात्रकामीच्याची क्रियाचीयकात्र हीर.त.रर.र

An *animal* or such, on the other hand, thinks of this same water as a place to stay, and makes his home there.

Humans look at the same thing and perceive it as water—sweet, clear, and cool. They drink of it, they wash themselves with it, and they swim in it.

Those pleasure beings who are wrapped in deep meditation at the level we call the "realm of limitless space" see the water as empty space, for their ability to conceptualize physical matter has dissolved altogether.

त्रमारुष्याची स्थान स्य

Here secondly is the section where we establish our own position. Now suppose three different types of beings—a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit, each with their own karma—sit down together and look upon a glass filled with water, the thing we define as "wet and flowing." The glass of water is not at this point one thing which is simultaneously three different objects. Neither is it necessary in this situation for there to be three identical valid perceptions. And when the glass full of wet and flowing water occurs, it occurs with three different, distinct parts to it.

[Translator's note: When the phrase "wet and flowing" (the definition of the element of water) is used here, it should be understood as emphasizing the more general concept of a liquid, rather than the water which the human perceives.]

च्र-तिः विश्वास्त्राच्याः विश्वास्त्राः विश्वास्त्

It is not though the case that, from the time it first started, the glass of water came with the three different parts, or that they stay with the glass of water until it eventually ends. What happens is that one of the parts of the glass filled with wet and flowing water provides a material cause, and the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being blood and pus.

Another part of the glass of water again provides a material cause, and the karma of the human provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being water.

Yet another part of the glass of water provides a material cause, and the karma of the pleasure being provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being ambrosia, and so on.

द्वाः तः त्वाः अः वाक्षेत्रः यः यः व्याः यः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्य

At this point, the glass full of wet and flowing water is something with three different parts. Nonetheless, it is not the case that all three different beings see all three parts. The craving spirit is forced by the bad karma he has collected to see the glass of water as pus and blood; and he doesn't see the other two things. One should understand that a similar case holds with the latter two types of beings.

र्भुः नः धेरः प्रदेश्वरः । र्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः । रम्भुः नः धेरः । रम्भुः । रम्भ

What we just described as happening is only with reference to where a glass of something wet and flowing is an object shared by the three different beings, as they look at it together. When the craving spirit himself though picks up the glass in his hand and begins to partake of its contents, the glass of liquid is no longer something that exists with three different parts. Since at this point it is something that the craving spirit is experiencing exclusively, its continuation starts being pus and blood.

How the glass of liquid exists originally all depends on the particular outer world from where it has been taken, for each of the three different beings has a different outer world, depending on the specific karma he himself has collected. If the glass of liquid were sweet, cool water taken from the world of humans—a world created by the specific karma of the human in the group—then that would be its original condition, and so on.

हीर।

होरा

When we say that a craving spirit looks at a stream of water and sees pus and blood, by the way, we are only talking about some kinds of craving spirits, and not all of them. This is because there are many kinds of craving spirits: some with obstacles in the world around them that prevent them from relieving their craving; some with obstacles that are parts of their bodies; and some with obstacles that relate to the food or drink itself.

 यः प्राचित्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्यः स्वान्तः स्वान्

There is, moreover, an example we can use for how, when the three different types of beings with their three karmas look all together at a glass full of something wet and flowing, there start to be three different objects, each confirmed by a valid perception. Suppose there is a ball of red-hot steel; one piece of this ball provides the material cause, and the "mantra of steel" provides a contributing factor. Due to these two, a person who has used the mantra of steel on his hand can touch the ball, but he doesn't undergo any sensation of heat; instead, he feels some other sensation. A person who has not used the mantra on his hand touches the ball and does feel a sensation of heat, and no other kind of sensation.

त्रुर्। हुर्। हुर। हुर्। हुर्। हुर्। हुर्। हुर्। हुर। हुर। हुर्। हुर। हुर

Another example would be the moon in springtime; one part of the feel of its rays on the body provides the material cause, and then the karma of a craving spirit provides a contributing factor. Based on these two, the spirit gets a sensation of heat, which is experienced by the consciousness of the body.

So too with the wintertime sun; one part of the feel of its rays on the body provides the material cause, and then the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor. Based on these two, the spirit gets a sensation cold, which is experienced by the consciousness of the body.

दे.क्षरःश्चे.यःलुबःधे.कु.शब्दःयदाः विश्वःश्चेरश्चरःयदःश्चेर। विश्वःयवदःक्षःवःद्यवेदःकुःश्वदःयदःयदः। विश्वःयश्चरःयदःश्चेर।

It is a fact that they get this kind of sensation, for [Arya Nagarjuna's] *Letter to a Friend* states:

For craving spirits, even the light of the moon In the spring is hot, and even the winter sun cold.

यः त्याः श्री विद्याः विद्य

All of this is caused by the extraordinary circumstances of the particular time and place, for generally speaking it never happens this way: there is nothing at all about the sun that can feel cold, and nothing about the moon that can feel hot. This too is a fact, for there does not exist on the sun any case of that substance we call "covered space."

स्राचार क्रेंट र मूंशाया जा स्वांशाय क्रीं से प्राचार क्रीं र मुंशाया र स्वां र स्वं र स्व

In conclusion now, let us consider again these three kinds of beings, each with their different karma, as they sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. It's not necessarily true that they must all have valid perceptions which are identical. If they did, then the three beings looking at the glass of water would have to think of the water as a place to live, in the way that a creature living in water would. The three beings as well would have to see the water in the same way that microscopic organisms living in the water, little beings imperceptible to normal visual consciousness, see it with their own visual consciousness. Then too the visual consciousness of microscopic organisms living in the depths of the ocean would have to be a valid perception towards the entire extent of the sea. And certain kinds of near-gods too would have to see weapons as glasses of water, and on and on; the problems raised would be many.

यश्रिमाश्ची क्राम्य प्रत्याप्त स्थाप्त स्थाप्

Again consider this same situation. Even though it is not necessarily true that the valid perceptions are identical, it is possible for there to be three valid perceptions here which happen to be identical. This is because, as we have already established logically, there can be a case where by the force of karma three different objects, each one confirmed by a valid perception, start to exist. And since this is possible, then it is equally possible that, by the force of karma, three equivalent valid perceptions of a vessel could start to exist as well.

When the text of the Essence of Eloquence was taught by Geshe Tupten Rinchen, he took great pains to point out that it is not correct—as some Western scholars have stated—that Je Tsongkapa himself adhered to the tenets of the Mind-Only School. The following selection to show that he follows, of course, the beliefs of the Consequence group is taken the concluding pages of our root text [ACIP electronic text S5396, ff. 112a-112b].

श्वाप्तरे र्स्य प्रायाया प्रदेश श्री स्थाप्त स्था स्थाप्त र्से स्थाप्त स्थापत स्यापत स्थापत स्थाप

Now suppose you come and ask the following:

We have a question for you. You have shown us how the systems of the two great innovators make the distinction between those parts of the highest of all spoken words which are figurative, and those which are literal. And there are a great variety of ways in which the different kings of all great thinkers have commented upon the true intent of these two. Tell us now—which of these master commentators do you follow; how is it that you yourself decide on what is literal, and what is it that you believe is the ultimate?

विद्यास्त्रीत्राम्याययः स्वित् स्वात्रास्त्र स्वयः स्वात्रास्त्र स्वयः स्वात्र स्वयः स्वात्र स्वयः स्वात्र स्व विर्वित्र वित्र स्वत्यः स्वेतः स्वात्र स्वयः स्वात्र स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स विर्वित्र विद्यात्र स्वयः स्

We answer with the following lines:

I can't deny that I feel respect from the bottom of my heart

For all the fine words ever taught by the jewels among this world's sages;

The reasoning though of dependence, invariable, for the cycle and what's beyond

Acts to destroy our tendency to see things to be by the features they have.

।রু:ব:অম্ব:র্রমে:ঐবাম:বএব:র্র্র:ব্যাম:ক্রীম। ।র্রু:মীবা:শুর:দ্ব:র্রঅ:মব:ধ্র:বর:র্ক্র।

विशाम् म्यान्यान्यः म्यान्यः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्र । स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्

And when this pure white light of the Moon,* this excellent explanation,

Has opened wide the night-blooming lotus, the eyes of the intellect,

And we finally see that path set before us by Buddhapalita,

Who then would fail to hold as their core Nagarjuna's excellent way?

[*Translator's note: The "Moon" here (chandra in Sanskrit) is an allusion to Master Chandrakirti.]

And so—in the context of the way of the perfections—it is the systems of the two great innovators that have spread widely; systems by which, in the ways we have described above, the meaning of that highest of spoken words is divided into the literal and the figurative, to determine what thusness really is. But it is also the case that those wise men who have commented upon the great works of the way of the secret word, and the eminent practitioners of this way, have set forth the meaning of thusness in keeping with one or the other of these very two systems; there is no third system between the two. You should understand then that this method is the path for determining the meaning of thusness for each and every one of the works of the highest of speech, whether we are talking of the open or the secret teachings.

क्रीय क्षेत्र स्थालेट। यश्चारित्र क्ष्मालेट। यश्चारित्र क्ष्मा चार्यः च्यायाय क्ष्मा चार्यः प्रचार्यः प्रचार्यः प्रचार्यः च्यायः यश्चार्यः च्यायः व्यव्यः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्य

And so imagine a person who tried to find the meaning of thusness without relying on a system taught by one of the great innovators of the two methods. They would be like a blind person without a guide for the blind, racing towards some very dangerous place.

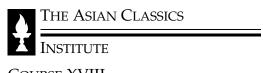
द्देश्यात्रियाः देशः त्रुत्याः श्रीतः यहः त्रियाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्वाः विश्व यहः विश्वाः व

And suppose that a person did want to rely on one of these systems, but had not spent a good deal of time acquanting themselves with their great books. Suppose, in particular, that they were relying only on a few short descriptions to determine the difference between those teachings of the Buddha which were figurative, and those which were literal—without having a proper understanding of the subtle, crucial points of reasoning involved. People like this would be taking refuge in words only; and even if they were to attempt to talk about thusness, it would be only words, without any essence.

Try to see how this is true, and never be satisfied with seeing even some great number of the more obvious crucial points on these questions. Make the effort to acquaint yourself well with both the gross and more subtle keys of reasoning that the two great innovators have given us as eyes to see into the Buddha's teaching. And then let your labors continue to flow, like some great stream, coming to an understanding of the profound points of the far-reaching traditions, and the profound traditions, and the more-profound-than-profound traditions, in the teachings of the Buddha.

योर्थाः विश्वाः विश्वा यम् विश्वाः वि

Take then lastly whatever you have understood and make it the very heart of your own personal spiritual practice: it is for the likes of you, for those of intelligence who hope to see the teachings of the Victorious Ones remain long in our world, that I have set down into words this *Essence of Eloquence*.



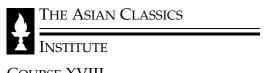
COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class One
1) Give the names of the root text and commentary we are going to use for our study of the perfections of patience, effort, and meditation; also name their authors and give their dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Describe the principal problem of anger that we cannot see directly. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
3) Quote from memory the lines that describe the immediate cause of anger, and the usefulness of this cause. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

5) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever create itself?
6) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever produce something else?
7) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever experience or be aware of any other object?
8) Could our world or the objects and people in it who make us angry ever have been created without a cause?
9) Name the direct cause for our pain when someone hits us with a stick, and then the thing which impelled this direct cause. At which should we be angry?
10) Give the reasoning that Master Shantideva gives to demonstrate that we should cherish the opportunity which we get to practice the Dharma when we meet irritating people. (Tibetan track use two lines from the root text to answer.)

11) Name the single highest method of repaying the kindness of the Buddhas.
12) Give the brief definition of effort stated in Master Shantideva's root text. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
13) Give the definition of innate Buddha nature, which is what guarantees that we will become a Buddha; then explain why it provides us this guarantee. (Tibetan track name and give definition in Tibetan, then explain in English.)
14) Quote the verse that Master Shantideva uses to describe how to become accustomed to great bodhisattva deeds gradually.
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, alternating days, on patience and joyful effort Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Course XVIII

The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Two

1)	What	is	Master	Shantide	va's 1	reasoning	for	saying	that	we	should	be	willin	g to
un	dertak	e o	ur deed	s on behal	f of li	iving being	gs al	l by our	selve	s, ev	en if no	one	e else l	relps
us	?							-						-

2) Relate and explain the metaphor of the razor and the honey. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.).

3) What reasoning does Master Shantideva use to prove that we are capable of watching our minds closely and keeping them away from anger and the like?

4) Name the meditational level or platform you must reach and maintain in order to see emptiness directly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

5) List the five obstacles to a meditative state of mind, by quoting the relevant lines from the Letter to a Friend, written by the realized being Nagarjuna. (Tibetan track in Tibetan track)	
6) Master Shantideva describes the joys of living in forest solitude, and then urges us spend our time there in the woods, in gentle walks and thoughts of helping oth through developing the wish for enlightenment. What method does Master Shantide recommend first for meditating upon this wish? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	ers
7) Relate and explain the metaphor that Master Shantideva uses to counter the object that we could never learn to think of all the different kinds of beings as "me."	ion

8) How does Master Shantideva address the objection that we could never learn to treatourselves and others exactly the same, since their pain does not hurt us, and our pain does not hurt them?
9) What are the two very famous reasons that Master Shantideva gives to show that is very wrong for us to work to get happiness only for ourselves, and remove only outown suffering? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
10) What reason does Master Shantideva give for saying that, eventually, we won't thin of working for others as anything amazing, nor feel any conceit for doing so. (Tibeta track in Tibetan.)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, watching your own meditation, and determining whether or not you are attacked by the fivohstacles mentioned by Arya Nagarjuna.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDOR VVIII

COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Three
1) Explain why good and bad deeds are like an illusion, and yet still function perfectly well.
2) Name the two forms in which a person can possess a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Relate the six-step process described by Maitreya which links the failure to perceive emptiness to the suffering we must go through. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

4) How does Master Shantideva answer the concern that meditating upon emptiness might feel a little scary? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
5) Name and define the two forms of the tendency to grasp things as existing in truth. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
6) At what point does a person on the Mahayana track eliminate each of these two? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
7) Name three wrong ideas that we might have about ourselves that are classified as "learned" tendencies to see things as truly existing. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) a)
b)
c)

8) No Buddhist school agrees that there is a person which is distinct from the physical and mental parts of a person, but the Middle Way says that we are further neither any single one of our parts, nor the whole of the parts. It's easy to see that we are not any one of our parts, such as an arm or a leg, but why is it the case that we are not the sum of all of our various parts?
9) Why does the non-Buddhist opponent in the ninth chapter say that the person must be unchanging?
10) Give three parts of the answer that Master Shantideva say in reply to this position. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
11) What then is the real nature of the "me"? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, reviewing each of the six steps of the process outlined by Lord Maitreya to explain how our suffering begins.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IRSE XVIII

COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Four

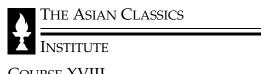
1) At this point in the text, Master Shantideva moves from a major discussion of one kind of emptiness to another. The distinction between the two is the answer to a natural question raised in our minds when we begin to examine the emptiness of any object, especially our own selves. State the question, and describe briefly the two kinds of emptiness. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) When you focus upon the whole, such as the body, why do the parts or "raw data," such as the colors and shapes of the body, seem to exist out there, really, independently, on their own? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) What do we call the process of going down in levels through the parts, and the parts of the parts, and so on, as a method to establish that things are actually empty? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

4) What do we tend to think of as the ultimate "raw data" for each of the two great divisions of a person? (These are the same as the two things which lower schools of Buddhism believe have some existence from their own side). (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
5) Why don't either of these two kinds of raw data exist?
6) What really then provides the raw data of all existence, for every level of mental or physical objects?
7) Are things therefore less real? How can this be confirmed?

8) What is the whole point of looking at the world this way? Why is this the only worldview that works?
9) Why will suffering ultimately be eliminated in every living being? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
10) Give a general description of the object which the Middle Way denies—that is, describe what it is that emptiness is empty of—and give a metaphor for it. (Tibetan track describe and also name in Tibetan.)
11) State the famous lines from the <i>Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life</i> which express the importance of understanding the object which we deny. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, trying to identify the imaginary object that emptiness is empty of. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Course XVIII

The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

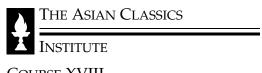
Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Five
1) Give the Sanskrit and English names for the classical Indian treatise which forms the basis for the Buddhist art of reasoning and perceptual theory; list also its author and his approximate date. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Give the two expressions used to describe, respectively, disciples of poor intellectual and spiritual capacity, and disciples of high intellectual and spiritual capacity. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
3) State a negative reason why we should study the Buddhist art of reasoning, and then give a quotation from Lord Buddha himself to back up your statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

4) Give the definition of a reason. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

5) Give the definition of a correct reason. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
6) Give the names of the three relationships that hold with a correct reason, and state them in a simplified manner for the logical statement, "Consider sound; it's a changing thing; because it's a thing which is made."
a)
b)
c)
C)
7) Name, define, and give one example each of the two most common categories into which all existing things are divided. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
9) Why is it often incorrect to translate the grand mitaling (Tibetan, mi utae na. Canalinit.
8) Why is it often incorrect to translate the word <i>mitakpa</i> (<i>Tibetan: mi-rtag-pa; Sanskrit: anitya</i>) as "impermanent"?

9) Name, define, and give one classic example each of the three nominal divisions of "things that are general." (Tibetan track name and give example in Tibetan, but define in English.)
a)
b)
c)
10) Why is the study of "quality and characteristic" vital for those who wish to see emptiness directly?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, trying to identify a mental image or "quality" in your mind that you are actually watching when you think you are observing an outside object. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



COURSE XVIII

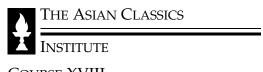
b)

The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Six
1) Give the definition of a negative thing. (Tibetan track in Tibetan, also giving the Tibetan word for "negative thing.")
2) Give the two kinds of negative things, and an example of each. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
3) Name and give one example each of the two types of relationships. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)

4) Name the two types of correct reasons used to prove the absence of something. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
5) What is the ultimate application of such a reason?
6) Name the three general types of incorrect logical statements for particular proofs, and give an example of each. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
h)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the process of how the mind perceives a negative thing; and then practice
bringing to mind the object we deny when we speak of "emptiness"; followed by thinking about how this object doesn't even exist.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:
Date:
Grade:

COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Homework, Class Seven

1) The Tibetan word *lojong* (*blo-sbyong*) has been translated into English as "mental training." State a reference by an eminent Lama to the famous *lojong* in eight verses which gives insight into another way of translating this word. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) In what sense are other living beings more precious than a gem that could give you anything you wished for?

3) Why does the third verse stress stopping mental afflictions at the very moment they begin?

4) If we continue to take the loss in any situation upon ourselves, and continue to give the advantage in any situation to others, what's to stop others from taking advantage of us?

5) What does the first Changkya Rinpoche have to say about <i>how</i> we should take the lose in any situation ourselves?
6) When Gyalwa Yang Gunpa says that "your own mind is the Buddha," what does he actually mean?
7) What does he mean when he says, "Nothing but the Dharma means anything at all Throw the rest out like trash; It all boils down to dying"?
8) What does it really mean when Gyalwa Yang Gunpa says, "The reality of things is beyond the mind; so reside in a state where you hold to nothing"?
9) Who was the first person to openly teach the <i>lojong</i> known as the <i>Seven-Step Practice for Developing a Good Heart?</i> Remember to give his full name, and also his dates (Tibetan track give his name and title of the text in Tibetan.)

10) Why was this practice not taught openly for so many centuries?
11) Geshe Chekawa says that "the brief essentials of the instruction are combined within five powers." Name these five powers, and explain them briefly. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
12) What were the words that Geshe Chekawa blurted out as he lay near death?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, reviewing the five powers and how you can apply them to your day today. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

*	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
Cor	IDCE VVIII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Eight

1) Name the author of the explanation that we will be reading for our study of "Freedom from the Four Attachments," and give his dates. Who was his nephew, and who was his nephew's nephew? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Write the famous verse of "Freedom from the Four Attachments." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) The holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen describes "attachment to this life" as attachment to one's practice of the ethical life, and to one's learning, contemplation, and meditation. Explain the real meaning of attachment to one's practice of the ethical life.

4) In discussing why one should not be attached to the three realms, the holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen mentions the "pain of pain," and describes the sufferings of the three lower realms. Name these three realms, describe where they are, and explain how one takes birth in these realms. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, then describe and explain in English.)
5) What reasoning can we use to decide whether the people and experiences from the earlier part of our life were somehow spiritually significant?
6) What state of mind is described in the <i>Wheel of Knives</i> as "the henchman of the devil"?

7) According to the text, each unpleasant thing or event that ever happens to us is a result of "what goes around comes around": the things we have done to others are returning back to us like a wheel of knives. In the blank next to each of the problems, write the letter of the real cause that the text says brought it about.

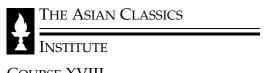
Those who are supposed to help me hurt me instead.
I find myself getting sick a lot.
I have different kinds of mental suffering.
People around me are bossy.
People say unpleasant things to me.
Unpleasant things often happen around me.
I have trouble finding friends and other people to help me.
People act in an intimidating way to me.
I feel depressed a lot.
Whatever I try to do never seems to work out.
No matter what I do, my Lama never seems to be pleased.
People seem to criticize everything I do.
The people around me can't seem to get along with each other.
I have had, or have, some very serious health problems.
I tend to get serious headaches or pains in my body.
I often feel anxiety or worry.
I don't have enough money.
I don't look very good physically.
I have trouble keeping my spiritual

practice regularly and alertly.

- a. I engaged in divisive talk in the past.
- b. I was arrogant towards those less than me in the past.
- c. I upset other people in the past.
- d. In the past, I encouraged other people to do bad deeds.
- e. I failed to keep my mind on goodness in the past.
- f. I misused resouces dedicated to the Dharma
- g. I did harm to the bodies of other peple in the past.
- h. I hindered the work of holy beings in the past.
- i. In the past, I wished bad things on others, and split people into sides.
- j. In the past, I displayed a lack of personal conscience and consideration of what others would think of my actions.
- k. In the past, I said bad things about spiritual people.
- l. In the past, I split up other people who were close to each other.
- m. I failed to think of my world and the people in it as special and holy in the past.
- n. In the past I was insincere and hypocritical in my Dharma practice.
- o. I didn't keep my spiritual promises and pledges in the past.
- p. In the past I did wrong deeds against Angels and the secret teachings.
- q. In the past I was an angry person, and didn't make holy images with the proper care.
- r. In the past I failed to give things to others, and to make offerings to the Triple Gem.
- s. In the past I behaved improperly towards the Dharma.

8) Suppose that we identify the kind of karma from our past that is bringing us the worst problem in our mind or in our life in general. Are we necessarily doing that same kind of karma now? What can we do about it?
9) Suppose we like another person but can't be close to them because of some third person who is always close to them. Discuss the difference between the "how" versus the "why" in this situation, and the apparent solution versus the real solution.
10) Halfway through the <i>lojong</i> or text on developing the good heart entitled <i>Crown of Knives</i> , the author—master Dharma Rakshita—says that he has "finally realized just who my enemy is." Who is this great enemy? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

11) In slaying his newly recognized enemy, master Dharma Rakshita uses the wheel of knives now to cut the foe's own head. Explain just how this is done.
12) The text says that for our whole lives we are constantly mistaking a reflection of the moon in our teacup for the real moon itself. This is supposed to prove that we should do the good deeds we should, and not do the bad things that we shouldn't. What's the
connection?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, examining the three or four most serious problems in your life, and checking mentally the list of their karmic causes from the list found in the Crown of Knives. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Nine

1) Give the title of the primary text we will be reading for our study of the art of interpretation; name its author, and give his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Nowadays some people say that a knowledge of emptiness is not the main point of Buddhism, while others say that emptiness is something known only intuitively, and not from a foundation of determined, organized study. Describe a quotation by Lord Buddha himself that disproves these ideas.

3) Why do we have to learn to distinguish between the literal and figurative; why do we have to learn to interpret what the Buddha said, in order to find out what he really meant?

4) Describe three different levels of the terms "literal" and "figurative."
a)
b)
c)
5) Je Tsongkapa points out that—if what the Buddha said must be divided into what he said that was figurative and what he said that was literal—then the Buddha's own statements about when he was being figurative and when he was being literal cannot necessarily be taken literally. Rather, we must in the end rely on what is logical and makes sense to us. Describe the three logical tests recommended by Lord Buddha, and state the source for them.
6) If many of the beliefs of schools like the Mind-Only are actually wrong, then why is it so important for us to study them carefully?
7) How can the principle of "figurative and literal" be useful to us in our daily lives?

8) In his answer to the bodhisattva in the <i>Commentary on the True Intent of the Sutras</i> , Lord Buddha states that he was referring to three different lacks of things when he said that no existing object at all had any nature of its own. Name these three. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
9) Name the famous three attributes which form the cornerstone of the beliefs of the Mind-Only School, and which relate to the three different lacks of things mentioned in question one. After naming them, describe them briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
10) Give finally an illustration for each of these three lacks of a self-nature, or attributes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

11) Name the three famous turnings of the wheel of the Dharma, the three great convocations, and state (a) when they were primarily taught; (b) where they were primarily taught; (c) for whom they were primarily taught; (d) their basic subject matter; and (e) what, from the point of view of the "outcome of the exchange," their view was on whether things have their own nature or not. (Tibetan track all in Tibetan!)

(1) F11	rst turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
	Name:
	Place:
	Disciples:
	Basic subject matter:
	View:
(2) Se	cond turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
	Name:
	Place:
	Disciples:
	Basic subject matter:
	View:

(3) Third turning of the wheel of the Dharma—
Name:
Place:
Disciples:
Basic subject matter:
View:
12) According to the Mind-Only School, which of these three turnings of the wheel (also called "groups of sutra") were spoken literally, and which are figurative, or something we must interpret further? According to the Middle-Way School, which are to be taken on face value, and which are not? Why so, in each case? a)
b)
13) What, in the context of this reading, is the real criterion that decides whether a person belongs to the "lower way" (Hinayana) or the "higher way" (Mahayana)?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, examining concepts of Buddhism or actions of Lamas and the like with which you have trouble, to decide whether they are to be taken literally or figuratively, and whether they may have some benefit, in the way that the lower schools' versions of selflessness or emptiness do. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Ten

1) When we refer to the first turning of the wheel as something which is either figurative or literal, are we speaking about any teaching that Lord Buddha gave during the initial period of his teaching career? Give an example to explain why or why not. (Tibetan track answer in English and give the example in Tibetan.)

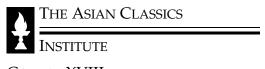
2) Je Tsongkapa takes pains to disprove the idea of some Tibetan thinkers that all three turnings of the wheel were meant literally. These thinkers would even say that Lord Buddha was speaking literally when he said (actually in order to attract some non-Buddhist groups) that things do have some kind of self-nature. What object do they say that Lord Buddha was referring to, and how is this object sometimes misinterpreted? (Tibetan track name the object in Tibetan and explain the misinterpretation in English.)

3) What, according to the Middle-Way School, is "the ultimate" (also called "ultimate truth" or "ultimate reality")? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

4) How does the Middle-Way School describe deceptive reality? (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
5) Now how does the Mind-Only School draw the difference between "ultimate reality" and "deceptive reality"?
6) What does the Mind-Only School mean when they say that the valid perception which is the subject that perceives a physical object, and the physical object which it perceives, are "of the same substance"? (Tibetan track also give the Tibetan for this concept.)
7) Explain where the name of the Mind-Only School comes from.

8) In the Independent group of the Middle-Way School, what does it mean to say that a thing "exist truly"? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
9) When three different types of being look at the same object, they see three different objects. Are each of them having a valid perception, or not?
10) The Mind-Only School has asserted that there are things that can exist from their own side, through some unique identity of their own. The Independent part of the Middle-Way School has asserted that the perception of things depends on their appearing from their own side to a state of mind which, from its side, is unerring. How does the Consequence part of the Middle-Way School assert that things exist? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
11) What does Je Tsongkapa say his own position in this regard is? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

12) When we say that things are only projections, does that mean that we can make anything anything we want it to be?
13) Does the fact that things are only projections mean that leading an ethical way of life is unimportant?
14) Why does the Consequence presentation of the meaning of emptiness have especially important implications for our own search for enlightenment?
15) The <i>Heart Sutra</i> says that the real goal of Buddhism is to "stop the process of aging and death" through "stopping our ignorance." Is this a literal or a figurative statement? If it is literal, then why have we not seen any person who stopped the process of aging and death?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on whether or not you really believe in these lines from the Heart Sutra, and whether or not you are doing everything you can to make them come true in your own life. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class One

1) Describe the principal prol	olem of anger	r that we o	cannot see	directly.	(Tibetan	track
answer in Tibetan.)						

2) Quote from memory the lines that describe the immediate cause of anger, and the usefulness of this cause. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever create itself?

4) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever produce something else?

5) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever experience or be aware of any other object?

6) Could our world or the objects and people in it who make us angry ever have been created without a cause?
7) Give the reasoning that Master Shantideva gives to demonstrate that we should cherish the opportunity which we get to practice the Dharma when we meet irritating people. (Tibetan track use two lines from the root text to answer.)
8) Give the brief definition of effort stated in Master Shantideva's root text. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
9) Give the definition of innate Buddha nature, which is what guarantees that we will become a Buddha; then explain why it provides us this guarantee. (Tibetan track name and give definition in Tibetan, then explain in English.)



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Two

1) What reasoning does Master	Shantideva use to prove	that we are capable of watching
our minds closely and keeping	them away from anger	and the like?

- 2) Name the meditational level or platform you must reach and maintain in order to see emptiness directly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
- 3) Master Shantideva describes the joys of living in forest solitude, and then urges us to spend our time there in the woods, in gentle walks and thoughts of helping others through developing the wish for enlightenment. What method does Master Shantideva recommend first for meditating upon this wish? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
- 4) How does Master Shantideva address the objection that we could never learn to treat ourselves and others exactly the same, since their pain does not hurt us, and our pain does not hurt them?
- 5) What reason does Master Shantideva give for saying that, eventually, we won't think of working for others as anything amazing, nor feel any conceit for doing so. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDCE VVIII

e)

f)

COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Three
1) Explain why good and bad deeds are like an illusion, and yet still function perfectly
well.
2) Relate the six-step process described by Maitreya which links the failure to perceive emptiness to the suffering we must go through. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
1)
b)
c)
d)

4

3) No Buddhist school agrees that there is a person which is distinct from the physical and mental parts of a person, but the Middle Way says that we are further neither any single one of our parts, nor the whole of the parts. It's easy to see that we are not any one of our parts, such as an arm or a leg, but why is it the case that we are not the sum of all of our various parts?

4) What then is the real nature of the "me"? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDGE VIJII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Four

1) What do we call the process of going down in levels through the parts, and the	e parts
of the parts, and so on, as a method to establish that things are actually empty? (T	'ibetan
track in Tibetan.)	

- 2) What do we tend to think of as the ultimate "raw data" for each of the two great divisions of a person? (These are the same as the two things which lower schools of Buddhism believe have some existence from their own side). (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a)
 - b)
- 3) What really then provides the raw data of all existence, for every level of mental or physical objects?

4) Give a general description of the object which the Middle Way denies—that is, describe what it is that emptiness is empty of—and give a metaphor for it. (Tibetan track describe and also name in Tibetan.)

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
Cor	IDGE VIIII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Five

1) State a negative reason why we should study the Buddhist art of reasoning, and then give a quotation from Lord Buddha himself to back up your statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Give the names of the three relationships that hold with a correct reason, and state them in a simplified manner for the logical statement, "Consider sound; it's a changing thing; because it's a thing which is made."

a)

b)

c)

3) Name, define, and give one classic example each of the three nominal divisions of "things that are general." (Tibetan track name and give example in Tibetan, but define in English.)
a)
b)
c)
4) Why is the study of "quality and characteristic" vital for those who wish to see emptiness directly?

THE ASIAN CLASSICS	Ξ
INSTITUTE	•
COURSE XVIII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part	t Three

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Six
1) Give the two kinds of negative things, and an example of each. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
2) Name and give one example each of the two types of relationships. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
3) Name the two types of correct reasons used to prove the absence of something. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)

Î	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
	IDCE VVIII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Seven

1) The Tibetan word *lojong* (*blo-sbyong*) has been translated into English as "mental training." State a reference by an eminent Lama to the famous *lojong* in eight verses which gives insight into another way of translating this word. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) In what sense are other living beings more precious than a gem that could give you anything you wished for?

3) If we continue to take the loss in any situation upon ourselves, and continue to give the advantage in any situation to others, what's to stop others from taking advantage of us?

4) Geshe Chekawa says that "the brief essentials of the instruction are combined within five powers." Name these five powers, and explain them briefly. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and explain in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IRSE XVIII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Eight

1) Write the famous verse of "Freedom from the Four Attachments." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) The holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen describes "attachment to this life" as attachment to one's practice of the ethical life, and to one's learning, contemplation, and meditation. Explain the real meaning of attachment to one's practice of the ethical life.

3) In discussing why one should not be attached to the three realms, the holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen mentions the "pain of pain," and describes the sufferings of the three lower realms. Name these three realms, describe where they are, and explain how one takes birth in these realms. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, then describe and explain in English.)

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDOR VIJII

Name:		
Date:		
Grade:		

Quiz, Class Nine

1) Nowadays some people say that a knowledge of emptiness is not the main point of Buddhism, while others say that emptiness is something known only intuitively, and not from a foundation of determined, organized study. Describe a quotation by Lord Buddha himself that disproves these ideas.

- 2) Describe three different levels of the terms "literal" and "figurative."
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
- 3) Je Tsongkapa points out that—if what the Buddha said must be divided into what he said that was figurative and what he said that was literal—then the Buddha's own statements about when he was being figurative and when he was being literal cannot necessarily be taken literally. Rather, we must in the end rely on what is logical and makes sense to us. Describe the three logical tests recommended by Lord Buddha, and state the source for them.

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS	
X	Institute	
Cor	IDOR VIJII	

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Ten

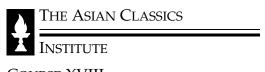
1) When we refer to the first turning of the wheel as something which is either figurative or literal, are we speaking about any teaching that Lord Buddha gave during the initial period of his teaching career? Give an example to explain why or why not. (Tibetan track answer in English and give the example in Tibetan.)

2) What, according to the Middle-Way School, is "the ultimate" (also called "ultimate truth" or "ultimate reality")? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

3) How does the Middle-Way School describe deceptive reality? (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)

4) Explain where the name of the Mind-Only School comes from.

5) The *Heart Sutra* says that the real goal of Buddhism is to "stop the process of aging and death" through "stopping our ignorance." Is this a literal or a figurative statement? If it is literal, then why have we not seen any person who stopped the process of aging and death?



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Final Examination
1) Describe the principal problem of anger that we cannot see directly. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
2) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever create itself?
3) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever produce something else?
4) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever experience or be aware of any other object?
5) Could our world or the objects and people in it who make us angry ever have been created without a cause?

6) Give the brief definition of effort stated in Master Shantideva's root text. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
7) Give the definition of innate Buddha nature, which is what guarantees that we will become a Buddha; then explain why it provides us this guarantee. (Tibetan track name and give definition in Tibetan, then explain in English.)
8) Name the meditational level or platform you must reach and maintain in order to see emptiness directly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
9) Master Shantideva describes the joys of living in forest solitude, and then urges us to spend our time there in the woods, in gentle walks and thoughts of helping others through developing the wish for enlightenment. What method does Master Shantideva recommend first for meditating upon this wish? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
10) How does Master Shantideva address the objection that we could never learn to treat ourselves and others exactly the same, since their pain does not hurt us, and our pain does not hurt them?

11) Relate	e the six-step process described by Maitr s to the suffering we must go through.	reya which links the failure to perceive (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)		
b)		
c)		
1)		
d)		
e)		
f)		

12) No Buddhist school agrees that there is a person which is distinct from the physical and mental parts of a person, but the Middle Way says that we are further neither any single one of our parts, nor the whole of the parts. It's easy to see that we are not any one of our parts, such as an arm or a leg, but why is it the case that we are not the sum of all of our various parts?

13) Give a general description of the object which the Middle Way denies—that is, describe what it is that emptiness is empty of—and give a metaphor for it. (Tibetan track describe and also name in Tibetan.)

14) State a negative reason why we should study the Buddhist art of reasoning, and then give a quotation from Lord Buddha himself to back up your statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

15) Name, define, and give one classic example each of the three nominal divisions of "things that are general." (Tibetan track name and give example in Tibetan, but define in English.) a) b) 16) Why is the study of "quality and characteristic" vital for those who wish to see emptiness directly? 17) The Tibetan word lojong (blo-sbyong) has been translated into English as "mental training." State a reference by an eminent Lama to the famous lojong in eight verses which gives insight into another way of translating this word. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

18) In what sense are other living beings more precious than a gem that could give you anything you wished for? 19) Write the famous verse of "Freedom from the Four Attachments." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) 20) The holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen describes "attachment to this life" as attachment to one's practice of the ethical life, and to one's learning, contemplation, and meditation. Explain the real meaning of attachment to one's practice of the ethical life.

21) Je Tsongkapa points out that—if what the Buddha said must be divided into what he said that was figurative and what he said that was literal—then the Buddha's own statements about when he was being figurative and when he was being literal cannot necessarily be taken literally. Rather, we must in the end rely on what is logical and makes sense to us. Describe the three logical tests recommended by Lord Buddha, and state the source for them.

22) What, according to the Middle-Way School, is "the ultimate" (also called "ultimate truth" or "ultimate reality")? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

23) How does the Middle-Way School describe deceptive reality? (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)

24) Explain	where the n	ame of the l	Mind-Only Sch	ool comes from.	
and death"	through "sto	pping our ig	norance." Is th	hism is to "stop the process of ag nis a literal or a figurative stateme on who stopped the process of ag	nt?

Please PRINcertificate, a	NT your nai and the addr	me clearly, ess to which	exactly as you the certificate	would like it to appear on yould be sent.	our
Please circle	one or specify	ı other:			
Mr.	Ms.	Mrs.	Miss	Venerable	
Name as you	would like it t	to appear on th	he certificate:		
Mailing nam	e, if different:_				
Address					
City			State	Zip code	
Country					



Answer Key, Class One

1) Give the names of the root text and commentary we are going to use for our study of the perfections of patience, effort, and meditation; also name their authors and give their dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

We will use as a root text the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattvacharyavatara) and as a commentary the Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas. The former was written by the Indian Buddhist master Shantideva (c. 700 AD), and the latter by one of the principal disciples of Je Tsongkapa, named Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432).

jangchub sempay chupa la jukpa

gyelse juk-ngok

2) Describe the principal problem of anger that we cannot see directly. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

The principal problem of anger that we cannot see directly is that a single instance of anger focused at a bodhisattva destroys thousands of eons of good karma that we have amassed previously; and we cannot be sure who around is a bodhisattva.

jangchub sempa la mikpay kongtro chik gi ge-tsa tsawa ne jompar jepa

3) Quote from memory the lines that describe the immediate cause of anger, and the usefulness of this cause. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

If there is something You can do about it, Why should you feel upset?

If there is nothing You can do about it, What use is being upset?

|यात्यः हे: वर्डेशः शुः ॲंदः दः दे। |देःत्यः से: द्यादः हे: वियाः ॲदा |यात्यः हे: वर्डेशः शुः सेदः दः दे। |दे:त्यः से: द्यातः ग्रुशः हे: यदा

gelte chusu yu na ni de la migar chishik yu gelte chusu me na ni de la miga je chi pen

4) Relate and explain the example used to demonstrate that patience is a state of mind.

Some people, warriors in battle, become even more ferocious when they see their own blood spilled. Other people, cowards, faint even at the sight of other people's blood being spilled. There is no difference in the blow that caused the wound, or the body that took the wound, only in the states of mind of the respective persons.

5) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever create itself?

No, because by definition it would change by the act of producing an effect.

6) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever produce something else?

No; because it was never produced itself, it cannot produce something else.

7) Could an uncreated, unchanging being ever experience or be aware of any other object?

No, because it would have to be unwaveringly aware of every object, since it never changes.

8) Could our world or the objects and people in it who make us angry ever have been created without a cause?

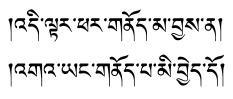
It is completely illogical and impossible for a changing thing not to have been created by a cause.

9) Name the direct cause for our pain when someone hits us with a stick, and then the thing which impelled this direct cause. At which should we be angry?

The direct cause for our pain is the stick or whatever; the thing that impels it is the anger of the person who swings it; so we should be angry not at the person or the stick, but at his or her anger, an emotion which we also share.

10) Give the reasoning that Master Shantideva gives to demonstrate that we should cherish the opportunity which we get to practice the Dharma when we meet irritating people. (Tibetan track use two lines from the root text to answer.)

Those who give us a chance to practice patience are relatively much more rare than poor people, since if we do not respond with anger then we cannot meet them in the future.



ditar parnu majena gayang nupa mije do

11) Name the single highest method of repaying the kindness of the Buddhas.

Doing good to living beings is the single highest method.

12) Give the brief definition of effort stated in Master Shantideva's root text. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

"What is effort? It is joy in doing good."

tsun gang gela trowa-o

13) Give the definition of innate Buddha nature, which is what guarantees that we will become a Buddha; then explain why it provides us this guarantee. (Tibetan track name and give definition in Tibetan, then explain in English.)

The definition of innate Buddha nature is "that thing which is emptiness, and which will become the essence body of a Buddha." The fact that our minds have emptiness, and are blank by nature, is what makes it possible for extraordinary good karma to cause us to see ourselves as omniscienct in the future.



chuying gang shik, ngowo nyikur gyur rung

ररःचलेदःयादशःरैयाशःग्रीःशर्वदःकेरा

rangshin nerik kyi tsennyi

14) Quote the verse that Master Shantideva uses to describe how to become accustomed to great bodhisattva deeds gradually.

The Guide has sent us at the beginning To do our acts of giving With vegetables and the like. When we've become accustomed to that Then later on we'll gradually be able To give away even our flesh.

वित्रायाः श्रीम्याः श्रीम्याययदः। वित्रेषः प्रशास्त्रीयाः स्मार्थः प्रमार्थः प्रमार्य

tsuma lasok jinpa la-ang drenpe tokmar jorwar dze dela gomne chine ni rimgyi ranggi shayang tong



Answer Key, Class Two

1) What is Master Shantideva's reasoning for saying that we should be willing to undertake our deeds on behalf of living beings all by ourselves, even if no one else helps us?

He says that, since the great majority of living beings have no idea at all what they should do even to help themselves, for they are at the complete mercy of their mental afflictions, it is no surprise that they might be unwilling to help us in deeds meant to aid all other beings. Therefore we should be ready at all times to undertake our virtuous deeds gladly by ourselves, without any help from anyone else at all.

2) Relate and explain the metaphor of the razor and the honey. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.).

The honey consists of all the attractive sense objects of this realm; the razor is the fact that they cannot satisfy us, no matter how much we consume them, and ultimately they lead us to negative deeds that cause more of the circle of suffering.

pu-driy sor chakpay drang-tsi shin dupa nam ne ngompa me

3) What reasoning does Master Shantideva use to prove that we are capable of watching our minds closely and keeping them away from anger and the like?

Suppose a person gave us a bowl of oil and told us to walk across a room with it, and then followed us with a sword at our neck, and told us he would slice our throats if we spilled even a single drop. We would never spill the drop. This proves that, if we set our minds to it, we are capable of extraordinary concentration in avoiding mental afflictions, if we really want to.

4) Name the meditational level or platform you must reach and maintain in order to see emptiness directly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The level is known as "No lack of time" (*michokme*); it is a preliminary stage (*nyerdok*) within the first concentration level (*samten dangpo*), a kind of meditation which would normally lead to a form-realm birth. It's complete name in Tibetan therefore is *samten dangpoy nyerdok michokme*.

भ्राःस्थित्राश्चार्या

न्त्रः पश्चित्रश्

รamten dangpo

यश्रमान्द्र-१८ रेवि हेर यश्रम् यश्री सुर्याश्री ।

samten dangpoy nyerdok michokme

- 5) List the five obstacles to a meditative state of mind, by quoting the relevant lines from the *Letter to a Friend*, written by the realized being Nagarjuna. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - ...the five obstacles to meditation: Restless desire and missing a person or thing; Feelings of malice; drowsiness and dullness; Attraction to sense objects; and unresolved doubts.

किंत्-त्र-वर्ग्यः न्यः वर्षेत्-क्षेत्रक्षः स्वायः प्रदा्षः विष्टे व्यायः वर्षेत् व्यायः वर्षेत् वर्षेत्रः विष्टे वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्येतः वर्येतः वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्षेत्रः वर्येतः वर्येतः

gu dang gyu dang nusem mukpa dang nyi dang du la dun dang te-tsom te drippa ngapo... 6) Master Shantideva describes the joys of living in forest solitude, and then urges us to spend our time there in the woods, in gentle walks and thoughts of helping others through developing the wish for enlightenment. What method does Master Shantideva recommend first for meditating upon this wish? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

He recommends first the practice of learning to treat ourselves and others exactly the same.

यर्या.योवर.भ्रम्भःग

dakshen nyampa

7) Relate and explain the metaphor that Master Shantideva uses to counter the objection that we could never learn to think of all the different kinds of beings as "me."

He gives the metaphor of the different parts of the body, such as the hands and legs. Even though they are many different parts, we still conceive of them as one body belonging to one person, and something that we should care for as we care for our body. Just so we should work to assure the happinesses and remove the sufferings of each and every type of being, since we can learn to think of them as "me."

8) How does Master Shantideva address the objection that we could never learn to treat ourselves and others exactly the same, since their pain does not hurt us, and our pain does not hurt them?

He notes that the fact that we find our own pain unbearable is simply a result of the habit of conceptualizing ourselves as we do. He says that, even though their pains do not touch us directly, we can learn to feel that the pains of all beings are unbearable if we learn to conceptualize all of them as ourselves.

9) What are the two very famous reasons that Master Shantideva gives to show that it is very wrong for us to work to get happiness only for ourselves, and remove only our own suffering? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The reasons are that we are no different: we are all completely the same in wanting happiness, and completely the same in wanting to avoid suffering. Given that we are completely the same, there is no logic to working to achieve only my own happiness and to avoid only my own suffering.

स्वानस्यास्य वित्रावित्र वित्र स्वान्त्र स्वा

dak dang shen nyika dewa du du tsungpa dang, dukngel mindupar tsungpa

10) What reason does Master Shantideva give for saying that, eventually, we won't think of working for others as anything amazing, nor feel any conceit for doing so. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

When we come to see others as ourselves, then we won't find it amazing or find any reason for conceit when we care for them: a person does not congratulate himself for feeding himself his own supper.

रटावी'वश'वेंश'दश'यद'यारे'वासे'क्वा

rang gi se su ne len la rewa migyap



Answer Key, Class Three

1) Explain why good and bad deeds are like an illusion, and yet still function perfectly well.

They work just as well as we thought they did before we found out they were illusory. They are like an illusion because the person doing them, the deed itself, and the object of the deed all exist only in our projections. They function perfectly well though to produce the bodies of a Buddha.

2) Name the two forms in which a person can possess a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

They can be manifest, or else they can exist as a potential, waiting to happen.



bakla nyelwa

- 3) Relate the six-step process described by Maitreya which links the failure to perceive emptiness to the suffering we must go through. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) One possesses the mental potential for the two forms of grasping to self-existence, from one's former life.



dakdzin nyi kyi bakchak yu

b) These ripen and cause you to have the two kinds of grasping to selfexistence.

c) These cause you to focus on nice things and ugly things as if they existed from their own side.

d) This causes ignorant liking and ignorant disliking to start.

e) These cause you to do bad deeds and collect karma.

f) Karma forces you to wander around in the circle of suffering.

4) How does Master Shantideva answer the concern that meditating upon emptiness might feel a little scary? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

He points out that the tendency to see things as self-existent is the cause of all the suffering in the world, and so if we are going to be frightened, we should be frightened at it. The wisdom which realizes emptiness, on the other hand, is the cause of ending all the pain in the world, and thus all the fear in the world—and so we *must* meditate upon it.

परेब पर प्रहेंब प्र सूचा पर्या क्रिंद होता र्क्षेट केंद्र हेंचाय प्र सूचा पर्या केंद्र होता denpar dzinpa dukngel kyeje

tong-nyi tokpa dukngel shi-je

- 5) Name and define the two forms of the tendency to grasp things as existing in truth. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The "learned" form of the tendency to grasp things as existing in truth; a tendency to believe that things have their own nature which depends primarily upon the mind being affected by specific philosophical beliefs.

यार्डे में र ग्रुव सम्बन्धा

tsowor drupte lo gyurwa la tu gupay dendzin, dendzin kun-tak

b) The "innate" form of the tendency to believe that things have their own nature which has existed in our minds for beginningless time, and which is possessed by all normal living beings, both those whose minds have been or have not been affected by specific philosophical beliefs.

6) At what point does a person on the Mahayana track eliminate each of these two? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The learned form is eliminated during the path of seeing (tong-lam); that is, although one still sees things as self-existent after coming down from the direct perception of emptiness, one no longer believes that they are—one knows that one is not seeing things correctly. During the eighth bodhisattva level (sa gyepa), one eliminates the manifest form of the innate form.

- 7) Name three wrong ideas that we might have about ourselves that are classified as "learned" tendencies to see things as truly existing. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The tendency to see the person and his parts as being like a master and his servants; this would correspond to the idea of a "soul" or a "me" which is totally distinct from the parts of the person.

gangsak dang pungpo jewo dang kolpo shindu dzinpa

b) The tendency to hold that our ultimate reality lies in objectively real, partless atoms; this would correspond to the materialist view of modern science, or explaining the fine points of perception as being chemically based.

c) The tendency to hold that our ultimate reality lies in moments of consciousness which are objectively real and partless; this would correspond to our sense of a self beyond our parts.

8) No Buddhist school agrees that there is a person which is distinct from the physical and mental parts of a person, but the Middle Way says that we are further neither any single one of our parts, nor the whole of the parts. It's easy to see that we are not any one of our parts, such as an arm or a leg, but why is it the case that we are not the sum of all of our various parts?

The total sum of all the parts of a person is not the person until the image of the whole has been imposed upon these parts by the projections forced upon us by our past karma.

9) Why does the non-Buddhist opponent in the ninth chapter say that the person must be unchanging?

They say that, if the person is something that begins and ends by the moment, then the person who committed the karma is gone by the moment after the deed. As such, there would be no one to experience the consequence of the karma.

- 10) Give three parts of the answer that Master Shantideva say in reply to this position. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) He says that both the non-Buddhists and the Buddhists agree that the person who committed the deed is not the same as the person who experiences its karmic consequences, so the argument is meaningless.

le jepay du dang drebu nyongway du kyi gangsak dze tade

b) He points out that the only other choice is that the cause (the deed) and the result (the karmic consequence) would have to exist at the same time, which is impossible.

gyuy du su drebu nyong misi

c) He says that it is perfectly appropriate to refer to the continuous stream of the one who performs the karma and the one who experiences its consequences as one person.

gyun chik la le jepapo dang drebu chupapo ten rung

11) What then is the real nature of the "me"? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

It is an image or a concept imposed upon a collection of parts.

cha she kyi tsok pa la tenne ta-nye tak tsam



Answer Key, Class Four

1) At this point in the text, Master Shantideva moves from a major discussion of one kind of emptiness to another. The distinction between the two is the answer to a natural question raised in our minds when we begin to examine the emptiness of any object, especially our own selves. State the question, and describe briefly the two kinds of emptiness. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

When we understand that we are only a concept imposed on a collection of parts by force of our past karma, we begin to wonder whether the "raw data" itself is also a concept imposed on its own parts (gangsak gi dakshi yang takyu yinnam): that is, we begin to draw the distinction between the emptiness of us (gangsak gi dakme) and the emptiness of our parts (chu kyi dakme).

यादः चर्याः यो : यद्याः सेद्रा कें श्रः ग्रीः यद्याः सेद्रा gangsak gi dakme chu kyi dakme

2) When you focus upon the whole, such as the body, why do the parts or "raw data," such as the colors and shapes of the body, seem to exist out there, really, independently, on their own? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Because at this level we are only perceiving these parts with a conventional or deceptive perception, without examining their real nature.

भारम्याबास्याद्युन्। प्रमः श्राङ्ग्रन्। प्रदेशक्ष्रन्। प्रदेशक्ष्रम्। प्रदेशक्ष्रम्। प्रदेशक्ष्रम्। प्रदेशक्ष

3) What do we call the process of going down in levels through the parts, and the parts of the parts, and so on, as a method to establish that things are actually empty? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

When we look for (self-existent) "raw data" that is the object that we projected on to, we don't find anything, (and thereby establish, in yet another way, the truth of emptiness).

ta-nye takpay takdun tselway tse-na ma-nye

- 4) What do we tend to think of as the ultimate "raw data" for each of the two great divisions of a person? (These are the same as the two things which lower schools of Buddhism believe have some existence from their own side). (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The atoms that, at any given moment, make up what we call our physical bodies.

suk kyi tsokpay dul tra-rab

b) The stream of present moments of awareness that, over a lifetime, make up what we call our minds.

shepay kechikmay gyun

5) Why don't either of these two kinds of raw data exist?

What we imagine as the most basic building blocks of all physical matter—atoms—are only a projection onto smaller parts, each side of the atom, and so on, endlessly. What we imagine as the most basic unit of awareness—the present moment—is only a projection onto its start, its duration, and its end, and so on, endlessly.

6) What really then provides the raw data of all existence, for every level of mental or physical objects?

Projections forced upon us by our past karma, at every level.

7) Are things therefore less real? How can this be confirmed?

Not at all. We can confirm this through our direct experience of pain or pleasure; for example, by standing in front of a fast-moving taxi cab.

8) What is the whole point of looking at the world this way? Why is this the only worldview that works?

We can do good deeds, plant good karmic seeds, and create a Buddha paradise, angel body and perfect mind and compassion: reach the end of suffering births, aging, illness, and death, as promised by Lord Buddha.

9) Why will suffering ultimately be eliminated in every living being? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Because its root is a misperception of the true nature of things; being a misperception, it is totally inferior to and powerless compared to correct view, its ultimately powerful antidote.

dukngel gyi gyur gyurpay, ngupuy neluk la chinchi loktu shugpay dendzin menpa de la nyenpo topden yupay chir 10) Give a general description of the object which the Middle Way denies—that is, describe what it is that emptiness is empty of—and give a metaphor for it. (Tibetan track describe and also name in Tibetan.)

The object denied by Middle Way (gakja) is a self-existent thing: a thing which could exist without being a group of parts that we are forced by our past karma to conceptualize in a certain way (tsogpay tengdu tokpay taktzam mayinpa). We grasp to this object continually, but it does not exist, never did exist, and could not exist: it is like a full-sized, two-headed, purple elephant in our room.

Sakja

केंग्रायाये होट र्हेग्याय वाप्ताया विषय वार्या

tsokpay tengdu tokpe taktsam mayinpa

11) State the famous lines from the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* which express the importance of understanding the object which we deny. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

One would never be able to Grasp how something was Devoid of being a thing Without encountering that Thing it was which one Imagined it to be.

| प्रमुषाकायरे प्रदेश का सामितायर।
| प्रे प्रे प्रे प्रे का स्मित्र का सित्र का सित्



Answer Key, Class Five

1) Give the Sanskrit and English names for the classical Indian treatise which forms the basis for the Buddhist art of reasoning and perceptual theory; list also its author and his approximate date. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika, Tsema Namdrel) of Master Dharmakirti (about 650 AD).

र्क्ष-इस-दर्मीवा

শ্ব্রিব:ব্র্রার্ক্রমান্ত্রী:ব্রাবাম:বা

tsema namdrel

Lopon chukyi drakpa

- 2) Give the two expressions used to describe, respectively, disciples of poor intellectual and spiritual capacity, and disciples of high intellectual and spiritual capacity. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Disciples of poor intellectual and spiritual capacity are called "Those who follow because of their faith"

イロエ・表の・イイ・ゼル・主き、イロエ・大の

wangtul depay jedrang

b) Disciples of high intellectual and spiritual capacity are called "Those who follow because of their reasoning"

न्वरः र्रेवः रेग्राशः यदेः हेशः वर्षरः।

wangnun rikpay jedrang

3) State a negative reason why we should study the Buddhist art of reasoning, and then give a quotation from Lord Buddha himself to back up your statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

We should study the Buddhist art of reasoning because, with this knowledge, we will be able to avoid the grave karmic mistake of judging others on their appearances. As Lord Buddha has said,

Only I, or somone like me, is able to judge another person. No other person should ever judge another, for they will surely fall.

nga'am dang drawe gangsak gi tsu zung gi, gangsak gyi gangsak gyi tsu misung te, nyampar gyur tare

4) Give the definition of a reason. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The definition of a reason is: "Anything put forth as a reason."

tak su kupa, tak kyi tsennyi

5) Give the definition of a correct reason. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The definition of a correct reason is "A reason where the three relationships hold."

tsulsum yinpa, tak yangdak gi tsennyi

- 6) Give the names of the three relationships that hold with a correct reason, and state them in a simplified manner for the logical statement, "Consider sound; it's a changing thing; because it's a thing which is made."
 - a) The relationship between the reason and the subject. In this proof it could be simply stated as, "Sound is a thing which is made."

chok chu, dra jepa

b) The positive necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven. In this proof it could be simply stated as "If something is a thing which is made, it must be a changing thing."

je kyap, je na mitakpe kyap

c) The negative necessity between the reason and the quality to be proven. In this proof it could be simply stated as, "If something is not a changing thing, it cannot be a thing which is made."

dok kyap, tak na ma jepe kyap

- 7) Name, define, and give one example each of the two most common categories into which all existing things are divided. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Unchanging things, each of which are defined as "one object which is both a thing and which is not such that it only lasts for a moment"; classical examples would be empty space or emptiness.

takpa, chu dang kechikma mayin payshi tunpa

namka, tongpa nyi

b) Changing things, each of which are defined as "anything that lasts only for a moment"; classical examples would be a pillar or a water pitcher.

8) Why is it often incorrect to translate the word *mitakpa* (*Tibetan: mi-rtag-pa; Sanskrit: anitya*) as "impermanent"?

The English word "impermanent," in its current usage, denotes something which is going to end, and not last forever; whereas "permanent" denotes something that will not end or break. The point of the Tibetan and Sanskrit words however is to denote something which changes from instant to instant: something fleeting or transitory. In fact, the definition of *mitakpa* is "something that only lasts for a moment."

Conversely, things which are *takpa* (the opposite of *mitakpa*) are not necessarily things that go on forever. The emptiness of a cup, for example, goes out of existence when the cup breaks, and came into existence when the cup was made, since it is simply the fact that the cup has no nature of its own. We *do not* though say that emptiness starts or stops, since this implies variability, and the point of things which are *mitakpa* is that they never change—their quality of being is perfectly constant and consistent: nothing is ever more or less than completely and purely empty of any nature of its own, for example.

We should note finally though that, in some of its usages, the word *mitakpa* <u>is</u> properly translated as impermanent, such as in the common lam-rim expression *chiwa mitakpa*: impermanence in the form of death.

- 9) Name, define, and give one classic example each of the three nominal divisions of "things that are general." (Tibetan track name and give example in Tibetan, but define in English.)
 - a) A "general as far as types," otherwise known as a "quality." Defined as "that existing thing which subsumes the multiple things which are of its type." Classical example: "knowable things."



b) A "general as far as objects," otherwise known as an "actual mental image." The one for a water pitcher is defined as "that element which is imputed to be the water pitcher, but which is not: that thing which appears to be the water pitcher to the conceptual state of mind which is perceiving a water pitcher, but which is however not the water pitcher." Classical example: "The appearance, to the second instant of a conceptual state of mind which is perceiving a water pitcher, of the opposite of all that is not the water pitcher of the second instant."



त्रुषः त्राच्याः स्त्रूष्णः सः स्त्रूष्णः सः स्त्रुष्णः सः स्त्र

bumdzin tokpa kechikma nyipa la bumpa kechik nyipa mayinpa le lokpar nangwa de de yinpay chir

c) A "general as far as a collection of parts." Defined as "a gross physical object which is composed of its multiple parts." Classic example: a water pitcher.



10) Why is the study of "quality and characteristic" vital for those who wish to see emptiness directly?

The study of a "general as far as types" and a "general as far as objects" allows us to understand that, when we perceive something, we do so actually by perceiving a mental object and mistaking it for the actual object. This mental object is forced upon us by our past karma. An actual object that existed independent of this process doesn't exist, and its absence is what emptiness is. By realizing directly how we perceive objects through mental images, we realize what the ultimate meaning of "dependent origination" is. This realization occurs during the final hours before seeing emptiness directly, at the "supreme object" stage of the part of preparation.



Answer Key, Class Six

1) Give the definition of a negative thing. (Tibetan track in Tibetan, also giving the Tibetan word for "negative thing.")

The definition of a negative thing is: "A thing which must be perceived by the state of mind which perceives it directly through a process of eliminating, directly, that which it denies."

rng ngu su tokpay lu rang gi gakja ngu su che ne tok gupay chu

2) Give the two kinds of negative things, and an example of each. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Things that are negative in the sense of not being something (mayin gak), and things that are negative in the sense of being the absence of something (me gak). An example of the first is the fact that sound is changing (implying that it is <u>not</u> unchanging). Examples of the second are space and emptiness.



- 3) Name and give one example each of the two types of relationships. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) A relationship where to be one thing is to automatically be the other. An example would be a Chevy and cars, or else a water pitcher and the exclusion of all that is not a water pitcher.

b) A relationship where one thing came from another. An example would be a working thing in the moment after it, and the original working thing.

रे'वुर'की'वर्षेवा'वा

- 4) Name the two types of correct reasons used to prove the absence of something. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Correct reasons for the absence of something involving a thing which is imperceptible to the particular opponent.

minangwa mamikpay tak yangdak

b) Correct reasons for the absence of something involving a thing which is perceptible to the particular opponent.

nangrung mamikpay tak yangdak

5) What is the ultimate application of such a reason?

To prove to ourselves that, just because we may not perceive a particular good quality in another person, it does not prove that they lack this good quality.

- 6) Name the three general types of incorrect logical statements for particular proofs, and give an example of each. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Contradictory reasons for a particular proof.

Example:

Consider sound. It is not a changing thing, Because it is a made thing.

b) Indefinite reasons for a particular proof.

Example:

Consider sound. It is something you can hear, Because it is a changing thing.

c) Inaccurate reasons for a particular proof.

Example (one of seven):

Consider sound. It is a changing thing, Because it is sound.

मुं केंग उन	र्भःह्याः ङ्गे।	म् प्येत यदे धुर
dra chuchen	mitak te	dra yinpay chir



Answer Key, Class Seven

1) The Tibetan word *lojong* (*blo-sbyong*) has been translated into English as "mental training." State a reference by an eminent Lama to the famous *lojong* in eight verses which gives insight into another way of translating this word. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The first Changkya Rinpoche, Ngawang Lobsang Chunden, was a former life of Pabongka Rinpoche who lived 1642-1714, and who served as the Lama of the Emperor of China. He refers to the *lojong* (*blo-sbyong*) in eight verses as "advices in developing (*sbyong*) the mind (*sems* or *blo*) of enlightenment," or "the good heart."

sempa chenpo langri tangpa dorje sengge dzepay jangchub semjong gi dampa tsikgye mar drakpa

2) In what sense are other living beings more precious than a gem that could give you anything you wished for?

We are generally incapable even of imagining the ultimate goal, so if we possessed a gem that gave us anything we wished for, we would not even be able to frame the wish properly.

3) Why does the third verse stress stopping mental afflictions at the very moment they begin?

Because of the fact that even a few instants of negative mental karma are enough to produce the perception of an entire lower-realm life, we must avoid even these.

4) If we continue to take the loss in any situation upon ourselves, and continue to give the advantage in any situation to others, what's to stop others from taking advantage of us?

First of all, our career is to be a bodhisattva; we are pledged to serve others as their servants, and to assure that all their wishes are fulfilled, even at our own expense. Secondly, any real suffering or want that we incur because we have given away what we have to others can only, in karmic terms, have been created by previous incidents in which we failed to give to others what we had. This does not however mean that we shouldn't keep others from harming ourselves or anyone else, because this will hurt them in the future.

5) What does the first Changkya Rinpoche have to say about *how* we should take the loss in any situation ourselves?

He says to make sure that we do it without regret, and with the highest joy.

6) When Gyalwa Yang Gunpa says that "your own mind is the Buddha," what does he actually mean?

The mind, in the sense of one's wisdom, has the capacity to take one to Buddhahood. The emptiness of our minds is our Buddha nature, our capacity to become enlightened: because the mind does not exist from its own side, we can one day be forced by our good karma to see it as the omniscient mind of a Buddha.

7) What does he mean when he says, "Nothing but the Dharma means anything at all; Throw the rest out like trash; It all boils down to dying..."?

Keeping in mind the fact that we must die, thinking that we will die today, enables us to keep our priorities straight, and divide between what is important to do and what is not: between what is Dharma and what is not.

8) What does it really mean when Gyalwa Yang Gunpa says, "The reality of things is beyond the mind; so reside in a state where you hold to nothing"?

He means that a normal state of mind perceiving apparent reality cannot perceive at the same time ultimate reality; and he urges us to stay in a state where we no longer hold anything to exist independent of our own projections, forced upon us by our past karma.

9) Who was the first person to openly teach the *lojong* known *Seven-Step Practice for Developing a Good Heart*? Remember to give his full name, and also his dates. (Tibetan track give his name and title of the text in Tibetan.)

It was the Kadampa geshe Chekawa (1101-1175).

kadampa geshe chekawa, yeshe dorje

His name is also sometimes spelled:

वकर्षिया अकर्षिया

chekawa chekepa

The title in Tibetan is:

र्त्वे क्षेत्र देव चत्व या

lojong dun dunma

10) Why was this practice not taught openly for so many centuries?

Because people were not ready to accept the idea of exchanging their concern for fulfilling their own needs with a concern for fulfilling the needs of others, and might disrespect this idea if it was taught to them, thus collecting serious negative karma.

11) Geshe Chekawa says that "the brief essentials of the instruction are combined within five powers." Name these five powers, and explain them briefly. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and explain in English.)

The five powers:

র্ভূবগ্রন্ড।

top nga

a) resolutions for the future: when you wake up each day, do so with the decision that you will not waste this day, or this year, or this life, but rather you will devote your time to destroying the enemy of cherishing yourself

penpa

b) accustoming yourself: in all your activities of the day—whether you are walking somewhere or standing or sitting or sleeping—think of ways to increase and accustom yourself to the Wish for enlightenment

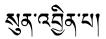


c) pure white seeds: engage in practices such as amassing great good karma and purifying yourself of negative karma, in order to increase the power of your Wish for enlightenment



karpo sabun

d) destruction: learn to bash the habit of cherishing yourself quickly on the head whenever it might arise



sunjinpa

e) prayer: pray, as you lay down to sleep at night, that all your goodness of the day might be dedicated to increasing the two forms of the Wish for enlightenment within your own mind



munlam

12) What were the words that Geshe Chekawa blurted out as he lay near death?

Obviously carrying out his own advice and performing the practice of transferring his consciousness (powa) in the tradition of the greater way, he yelled out: "I was praying that I could pass on to the lowest hell, for the sake of helping every living being! It's not working! I can't go! All I can see before me now is the paradise of enlightenment!"

nga semchen tamche kyi dondu narme du drowar munpar je kyang, min-drowar duk, dakshing gi nangwa shar jung



COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Answer Key, Class Eight

1) Name the author of the explanation that we will be reading for our study of "Freedom from the Four Attachments," and give his dates. Who was his nephew, and who was his nephew's nephew? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The author of this explanation is Jetsun Drakpa Gyeltsen, who lived (1147-1216). His nephew was the Sakya Pandita, Kunga Gyeltsen (1182-1251), and the Sakya Pandita's nephew was Drogun Chugyal Pakpa (1235-1280), who brought Buddhism to the Mongolians.

ই নর্ব ন্ম্মামান্ম নাক্রিনা মর্ম্ব

jetsun drakpa gyeltsen

शःश्चुःपट्टेः ५ ग्रा्तः द्यादः श्चुत्यः शक्ता

sakya pandita kunga gyeltsen

वर्ते. देश्य. कुरा क्षायायायाया

drogun chugyal pakpa

2) Write the famous verse of "Freedom from the Four Attachments." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

A person who is still attached to this life is no Dharma practitioner.

A person who is still attached to the three worlds has no renunciation.

A person who is still attached to getting what they want is no bodhisattva.

A person who still grasps to things has no worldview.

विद्वारा मुद्दार के क्षा या क्षेत्र।

tsen di la shen na chupa min, kam sum la shen na ngenjung min, dak dun la shen na jangsem min, dzinpa jung na tawa min,

3) The holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen describes "attachment to this life" as attachment to one's practice of the ethical life, and to one's learning, contemplation, and meditation. Explain the real meaning of attachment to one's practice of the ethical life.

It means to practice one's ethics out of attachment to one's instincts; to what feels good; to what one's parents or school teachers or religious instructors early in life said, without examining it; to what one's culture has ingrained one to think; to what one's peers say; to what is legal or not; rather than out of a well-reasoned understanding of emptiness and karma.

4) In discussing why one should not be attached to the three realms, the holy lama Drakpa Gyeltsen mentions the "pain of pain," and describes the sufferings of the three lower realms. Name these three realms, describe where they are, and explain how one takes birth in these realms. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, then describe and explain in English.)

The three lower realms are the realms of animals, tormented spirits, and hell-beings. Ultimately these are located wherever the mind is located and is forced by one's own past karma to perceive them. One becomes a being in the lower realms by perceiving the world as one of these beings; to perceive the objects in one's world in the way that a dog perceives them is what it is to be a dog.

5) What reasoning can we use to decide whether the people and experiences from the earlier part of our life were somehow spiritually significant?

You can call this idea spiritual revisionism. From their own side, the events and people from the earlier part of our life have no nature of being spiritually significant or not. As we become more pure though, we begin to perceive them in a different way, as very special spiritually; which although not independently true, is nonetheless completely valid, as valid as the perception that they are just ordinary.

6) What state of mind is described in the Wheel of Knives as "the henchman of the devil"?

Grasping for yourself; which in one sense means working only for our own happiness, and in another sense means seeing ourselves as self-existent, as not being a product of our past karma, not being a project forced on us by what we have thought, spoken, or done in the past.

- 7) According to the text, each unpleasant thing or event that ever happens to us is a result of "what goes around comes around": the things we have done to others are returning back to us like a wheel of knives. In the blank next to each of the problems, write the letter of the real cause that the text says brought it about.
- <u>e</u> Those who are supposed to help me hurt me instead.
- g I find myself getting sick a lot.
- <u>c</u> I have different kinds of mental suffering.
- **b** People around me are bossy.
- a People say unpleasant things to me.
- m Unpleasant things often happen around me.
- 1 I have trouble finding friends and other people to help me.
- k People act in an intimidating way to me.
- d I feel depressed a lot.
- h Whatever I try to do never seems to work out.
- <u>n</u> No matter what I do, my Lama never seems to be pleased.
- i People seem to criticize everything I do.
- <u>i</u> The people around me can't seem to get along with each other.
- <u>f</u> I have had, or have, some very serious health problems.
- o I tend to get serious headaches or pains in my body.
- <u>p</u> I often feel anxiety or worry.
- r I don't have enough money.
- q I don't look very good physically.
- s I have trouble keeping my spiritual practice regularly and alertly.

- a) I engaged in divisive talk in the past.
- b) I was arrogant towards those less than me in the past.
- c) I upset other people in the past.
- d) In the past, I encouraged other people to do bad deeds.
- e) I failed to keep my mind on goodness in the past.
- f) I misused resouces dedicated to the Dharma
- g) I did harm to the bodies of other peple in the past.
- h) I hindered the work of holy beings in the past.
- i) In the past, I wished bad things on others, and split people into sides.
- j) In the past, I displayed a lack of personal conscience and consideration of what others would think of my actions.
- k) In the past, I said bad things about spiritual people.
- l) In the past, I split up other people who were close to each other.
- m) I failed to think of my world and the people in it as special and holy in the past.
- n) In the past I was insincere and hypocritical in my Dharma practice.
- o) I didn't keep my spiritual promises and pledges in the past.
- p) In the past I did wrong deeds against Angels and the secret teachings.
- q) In the past I was an angry person, and didn't make holy images with the proper care.
- r) In the past I failed to give things to others, and to make offerings to the Triple Gem.
- s) In the past I behaved improperly towards the Dharma.

8) Suppose that we identify the kind of karma from our past that is bringing us the worst problem in our mind or in our life in general. Are we necessarily doing that same kind of karma now? What can we do about it?

If for example we live in a place where there are lots of unpleasant smells and pollution, this is because we committed sexual misconduct in the past. We may or may not still have a problem with this kind of behavior now, because of the time lapse between a deed and its consequence. Nonetheless, one way to quickly stop most of the effect of this karma is to be *extremely careful* about doing even the smallest form of the same deed in our current daily life.

9) Suppose we like another person but can't be close to them because of some third person who is always close to them. Discuss the difference between the "how" versus the "why" in this situation, and the apparent solution versus the real solution.

The "how" in this situation is that the other person doesn't physically give us a chance to be near the person we want to be near to. But the reason why this is happening in the first place is that we in the past didn't let someone else get near someone they wanted to be close to. The apparent solution to the problem is to try to get rid of the other person somehow, which will always "backfire" or cause the wheel of knives to turn back on us. The real solution is to make very sure that we have no negative feelings toward the person, and that we be very careful to see that other people can be near the people they want to be near.

10) Halfway through the *lojong* or text on developing the good heart entitled *Crown of Knives*, the author—master Dharma Rakshita—says that he has "finally realized just who my enemy is." Who is this great enemy? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

He is both the tendency of self-cherishing and its immediate cause: the habit of grasping to oneself as being self-existent, or having some nature of your own independent of your projections forced upon you by your past karma.

रर गुडेश दहें दा

यद्याःवहेंद्रा

rang chen dzin

dakdzin

11) In slaying his newly recognized enemy, master Dharma Rakshita uses the wheel of knives now to cut the foe's own head. Explain just how this is done.

The wheel of knives is the law of karma, the fact that what we do comes back to us. During our lives in samsara or the vicious circle of suffering, we react to negative things with negative actions, which again bring negative things to us, to be reacted to negatively, and thus we perpetuate pain. But the same principle can be used in reverse; we use method (bodhisattva activities such as giving and patience) and wisdom (an understanding of emptiness to accompany these activities) to collect, instead of karma, the two "collections" of merit and wisdom, which create the body and mind of an enlightened being.

12) The text says that for our whole lives we are constantly mistaking a reflection of the moon in our teacup for the real moon itself. This is supposed to prove that we should do the good deeds we should, and not do the bad things that we shouldn't. What's the connection?

The fact that certain circumstances have come together, like a little smooth patch of water in our teacup and the shining of the moon, and that this has created the appearance of the moon in the cup, is applicable to all other objects, which are created by the coming together of my own projections and the raw data on which they appear.



COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Answer Key, Class Nine

1) Give the title of the primary text we will be reading for our study of the art of interpretation; name its author, and give his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Our study will be based on the Essence of Eloquence, on the Art of Interpretation, written by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

drange lekshe nyingpo

je tsongkapa

2) Nowadays some people say that a knowledge of emptiness is not the main point of Buddhism, while others say that emptiness is something known only intuitively, and not from a foundation of determined, organized study. Describe a quotation by Lord Buddha himself that disproves these ideas.

Je Tsongkapa himself gives a quotation from the Sutra Requested by the Realized Being Rashtrapala which says that "beings must wander here" in suffering life "because they have no knowledge of the ways of emptiness," and that "those with compassion" (meaning the Buddhas and others) "use skillful means and millions of different reasonings to bring them into it."

3) Why do we have to learn to distinguish between the literal and figurative; why do we have to learn to interpret what the Buddha said, in order to find out what he really meant?

This is primarily to learn the true meaning of emptiness, which was described in the three different turnings of the wheel of the Dharma in apparently contradictory terms by Lord Buddha himself.

- 4) Describe three different levels of the terms "literal" and "figurative."
 - a) On the level of expression: do the words a person speaks and their intended meaning match each other (literal), or not (figurative)?
 - b) On the level of reality: do the way which an object appears to be and the way the object is match each other (literal), or not (figurative)?
 - c) On the level of understanding: do we understand the two realities with an accurate state of perception (tsad-ma or pramana) that sees what they are (literal), or do we understand them with only an approximate understanding (yid-dpyod) that only has a rough understanding of what they are (figurative)?
- 5) Je Tsongkapa points out that—if what the Buddha said must be divided into what he said that was figurative and what he said that was literal—then the Buddha's own statements about when he was being figurative and when he was being literal cannot necessarily be taken literally. Rather, we must in the end rely on what is logical and makes sense to us. Describe the three logical tests recommended by Lord Buddha, and state the source for them.

Lord Buddha advises us to accept his words only after we've finished a careful examination of them, testing them like gold—in the fire, by cutting, and by using a touchstone. These three tests refer, respectively, to checking whether the particular statement or belief in question contradicts our own direct, accurate experience; our own deductive, accurate perceptions; or the words of a being whom we have established correctly as being infallible.

6) If many of the beliefs of schools like the Mind-Only are actually wrong, then why is it so important for us to study them carefully?

Lord Buddha taught the various schools of ancient India for the very reason that their beliefs were helpful in bringing people of various capacities and personalities further along the Buddhist path. Many beliefs of the Mind-Only school, although technically incorrect, nonetheless function to help get us thinking clearly about emptiness, and the idea of the world and its inhabitants being a projection of our minds.

7) How can the principle of "figurative and literal" be useful to us in our daily lives?

We can come to a better understanding that—if the Buddha himself spoke figuratively when it was helpful to students to do so—then we must be very careful in judging the people around us, who could well be special beings who are trying to bring us and others further along in our thinking.

- 8) In his answer to the bodhisattva in the *Commentary on the True Intent of the Sutras,* Lord Buddha states that he was referring to three different lacks of things when he said that no existing object at all had any nature of its own. Name these three. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) A lack of any definitive nature

tsennyi ngowo nyi mepa

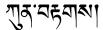
b) A lack of any nature of growing

kyewa ngowo nyi mepa

c) A lack of any nature of being ultimate

dundampa ngowo nyi mepa

- 9) Name the famous three attributes which form the cornerstone of the beliefs of the Mind-Only School, and which relate to the three different lacks of things mentioned in question one. After naming them, describe them briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Constructs. The creations of words or mental images through which we perceive the world; these creations can correspond to existing or to non-existing things.



kuntak

b) Dependent things. Changing things, which come from causes and conditions.

याल्य:र्यरः।

shenwang

c) Totality, meaning emptiness. The lack of self-existence (a particular non-existing form of constructs) that applies to all objects, especially to dependent things.



yongdrup

- 10) Give finally an illustration for each of these three lacks of a self-nature, or attributes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Constructs are like a flower that grows in mid-air. (Not that it doesn't exist by the way, only that it is only imaginary or an object in the mind.)



kuntak namkay metok dang dra

b) Dependent things are like a magic show; it doesn't appear to us that a pot and our perception of the pot are "of the same substance" in the sense of growing from the same karmic seed, but they are, so there is the sense of an illusion.

c) Totality is like empty space, a simple lack of physical matter, in the sense of being the simple lack of a non-existent self-nature.

yongdrup namka dang dra

- 11) Name the three famous turnings of the wheel of the Dharma, the three great convocations, and state (a) when they were primarily taught; (b) where they were primarily taught; (c) for whom they were primarily taught; (d) their basic subject matter; and (e) what, from the point of view of the "outcome of the exchange," their view was on whether things have their own nature or not. (Tibetan track all in Tibetan!)
 - (1) First turning of the wheel of the Dharma—

Name: The Turning of the Wheel on the Four Truths

denshiy chunkor

Place: Sarnath, near Varanasi

स्र-र-रू-श्रे

waranasi

Disciples: Those of the lower way

nyentu tekpa

Basic subject matter: The four realized truths

pakpay denpa shi

View: Every existing thing exists by definition

chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi druppa

(2) Second turning of the wheel of the Dharma—

Name: The Turning of the Wheel on How Nothing Exists by Definition

tsennyi mepay chunkor

Place: Vulture's Peak, in Rajagirha

jagu pungpoy ri

Disciples: Those of the greater way

ब्रेया केता

tekchen

Basic subject matter: Emptiness

tongpa nyi

View: No existing thing exists by definition

chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi ma druppa

(3) Third turning of the wheel of the Dharma—

Name: The Turning of the Wheel on Fine Distinctions

lekchey chunkor

Place: Vaishali

yangpachen

Disciples: Those of all ways

tekpa tamche

Basic subject matter: The three attributes

tsennyi sum

View: Some things exist by definition, and some do not, and we must make fine distinctions between them

chu nam la ranggi tsennyi kyi drup madrup lekpar che

- 12) According to the Mind-Only School, which of these three turnings of the wheel (also called "groups of sutra") were spoken literally, and which are figurative, or something we must interpret further? According to the Middle-Way School, which are to be taken on face value, and which are not? Why so, in each case?
 - a) Mind-Only School: The first two are figurative, and the last one literal, because it is neither true that all things exist by definition, nor that nothing exists by definition; some are one and some are the other, and the only literal teaching is the one (the third turning of the wheel) where Lord Buddha made these distinctions.
 - b) Middle-Way School: The first and the last are not to be taken on face value, but the middle one is, because it is true that nothing exists by definition (as stated in the middle one), and not true that everything exists by definition (as stated in the first) or that some things do and some things do not exist by definition (as stated in the last). But remember that, in this school, "literal" means any teaching in which Lord Buddha referred clearly to emptiness; and "figurative" means any teaching in which he did not.
- 13) What, in the context of this reading, is the real criterion that decides whether a person belongs to the "lower way" (Hinayana) or the "higher way" (Mahayana)?

The question is whether or not their views on emptiness belong to the lower two ancient schools of India (the Abhidharma or Higher-Knowledge School and the Sutrist or logic and perceptual-theory school) or the higher two schools (Mind-Only and Middle-Way).



COURSE XVIII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Answer Key, Class Ten

1) When we refer to the first turning of the wheel as something which is either figurative or literal, are we speaking about any teaching that Lord Buddha gave during the initial period of his teaching career? Give an example to explain why or why not. (Tibetan track answer in English and give the example in Tibetan.)

We are not talking about any teaching that Lord Buddha gave during the initial period of his teaching career, because there are teachings that he gave during this time that we do not have to examine as to their true meaning. An example would be his advice to the Group of Five at Varanasi urging them to "be sure to wear your lower robes in a neat circle."

nga dela shamtab lumpor gowar jao, shey

2) Je Tsongkapa takes pains to disprove the idea of some Tibetan thinkers that all three turnings of the wheel were meant literally. These thinkers would even say that Lord Buddha was speaking literally when he said (actually in order to attract some non-Buddhist groups) that things do have some kind of self-nature. What object do they say that Lord Buddha was referring to, and how is this object sometimes misinterpreted? (Tibetan track name the object in Tibetan and explain the misinterpretation in English.)

These thinkers believe that Lord Buddha was referring to the "essence of the Ones who have Gone That Way," or the Buddha nature that each being possesses. This is actually primarily the emptiness of our minds, which provides the potential for us to see our minds one day as enlightened. This nature or potential is frequently misinterpreted as referring to some Buddha within us that somehow already exists, and which we must simply reveal. From here it is easy to go on to the error of believing that we do have some self-existent self-nature.



deshin shekpay nyingpo

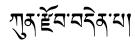
3) What, according to the Middle-Way School, is "the ultimate" (also called "ultimate truth" or "ultimate reality")? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

They say that "the ultimate" or "ultimate truth" refers to emptiness, which is described as the fact that no existing object has a self-nature.

chu tamche kyi ngowonyi mepa ni dundam denpa yin

4) How does the Middle-Way School describe deceptive reality? (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)

They say that deceptive reality is that reality which deceives a certain state of mind (which is itself called "the deceived"). This reality is called "deceptive" because it seems to be one way (self-existent) but is really something else (a projection forced on us by our karma).



kundzob denpa



kundzob

5) Now how does the Mind-Only School draw the difference between "ultimate reality" and "deceptive reality"?

They say that anything which exists by definition (meaning dependent things and totality) is an example of ultimate reality. They say that anything that doesn't exist by definition (meaning constructs) is an example of deceptive reality.

6) What does the Mind-Only School mean when they say that the valid perception which is the subject that perceives a physical object, and the physical object which it perceives, are "of the same substance"? (Tibetan track also give the Tibetan for this concept.)

They do *not* mean that the physical object is made of the same stuff as the mind; rather, they mean that the subject and the object have grown from a single karmic seed.

suk dang sukdzin gyi tsema dzeshen gyi tongpa

7) Explain where the name of the Mind-Only School comes from.

As Je Tsongkapa explains this point in his *Illumination of the True Thought*. He first quotes the *Sutra of the Tenth Level*, which says that "these three realms of existence are mind only." He goes on to explain that the real meaning of "mind only" here is that "the mind is the main thing" that creates the world, and not something physical, or some creator god. He says that the expression "mind only" is therefore only an abbreviation for the expression "mind alone is the main thing." The way that the mind creates the world is by causing us to collect karma; the point is not that we just make up the world with our mind.

8) In the Independent group of the Middle-Way School, what does it mean to say that a thing "exists truly"? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

In this school, an object exists truly when it exists from its own side through some unique identity of its own, rather than simply being established as existing by having appeared to an unaffected state of mind. Objects like this don't exist, and this is the ultimate meaning of "emptiness."

lo nume la nangway wang gi shakpa mayinpar yul rang gi tunmong ma yinpay du luk kyi ngu ne druppa 9) When three different types of being look at the same object, they see three different objects. Are each of them having a valid perception, or not?

They are all having a valid perception, given their karmic circumstances.

10) The Mind-Only School has asserted that there are things that can exist from their own side, through some unique identity of their own. The Independent part of the Middle-Way School has asserted that the perception of things depends on their appearing from their own side to a state of mind which, from its side, is unerring. How does the Consequence part of the Middle-Way School assert that things exist? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

They say that things exist only as projections, from our side.



tokpe par taktsam

11) What does Je Tsongkapa say his own position in this regard is? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

At the end of his text on the art of interpretation, he openly declares that he follows the teaching of the Consequence group of the Middle-Way School: "Who on earth who understood these things would fail to take the system of the realized being Nagarjuna as their own?"



12) When we say that things are only projections, does that mean that we can make anything anything we want it to be?

No it does not, because we only have projections as they are forced upon us by our karma.

13) Does the fact that things are only projections mean that leading an ethical way of life is unimportant?

No, it becomes more important, because our projections are forced on us by our past deeds, good or bad. Someone who really understands emptiness immediately understands that it is absolutely essential to lead an ethical life.

14) Why does the Consequence presentation of the meaning of emptiness have especially important implications for our own search for enlightenment?

Given that things are creations of our projections forced on us by our past karma, then we can—by leading an extraordinarily virtuous way of life—actually put an end to the projections of aging and death, become a tantric angel, and enter a tantric paradise in this very life.

15) The *Heart Sutra* says that the real goal of Buddhism is to "stop the process of aging and death" through "stopping our ignorance." Is this a literal or a figurative statement? If it is literal, then why have we not seen any person who stopped the process of aging and death?

It is literal, and we have not seen these people because we are like the human who sees the cup of liquid as water: we do not yet have sufficient good karma to see someone else achieving this goal.



Course XVIII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Three

Tibetan Language Study Guide

Class One

चिर-क्व-श्रेस्य-र्नयदे-श्चेर्-य-व-व्ह्वा-या

jangchub sempay chupa la jukpa

मुवाःसंसावह्याःर्यासा

gyelse juk-ngok

वह्मश्रायर विद्या

jangchub sempa la mikpay kongtro chik gi ge-tsa tsawa ne jompar jepa

|यात्यः है: यर्डे अः शुः र्थे दः दः है।
|देः त्यः अः द्यादः रुः वियाः र्थे द।
|यात्यः है: यर्डे अः शुः ओदः दः दे।
|देः त्यः ओः दयादः दुः अः शुः सद।

gelte chusu yu na ni de la migar chishik yu gelte chusu me na ni de la miga je chi pen

|तर्रे:सूर:धर:मॉर्नेर:अ:मुर्श्य |तर्याद:धर:मॉर्नेर:धःभ्रे:मुर्र् |ditar parnu majena gayang nupa mije do

पर्से द ग्राट प्रशिष्ट क्रिं पर्दे। tsun gang gela trowa-o

र्क्स-न्दीरसामार निमा |र्रे.म्.मेर-प्रमुत्र-न्द्र-।

रट'प्रविद'पाद्रश'रेपाश'ग्री'सर्जद'हेर्। rangshin nerik kyi tsennyi

वित्रात्मार्थ्यायाः श्रीत्रायाः व्याप्तितः । वित्रेत्रायाः श्रीत्रायाः श्रीतः यत्रः सहि। वित्रेत्रायाः श्रीत्रायाः श्रीत्रायाः सहि। वित्रेत्रायां स्त्रायाः स्त्रीत्रायाः वित्रायाः स्त्रीत्रायाः स्त्रीत्रायाः स्त्रीत्रायाः स्त्रीत्रायाः स्त्री

tsuma lasok jinpa la-ang drenpe tokmar jorwar dze dela gomne chine ni rimgyi ranggi shayang tong Class Two

सुं चीते : स्रं र कवा र यते : सूर : स्रे : प्रवेदा

pu-driy sor chakpay drang-tsi shin dupa nam ne ngompa me

> भे स्थित्राश्चर्या michokme

न्त्र-पर्श्वारा nyerdok

รamten dangpo

รamten dangpoy nyerdok michokme

।र्केन्-न्दः वर्केन्-न्दः योर्वेन्-श्रेश्वश्चः स्था ।योश्वन-न्दः वर्वेन्-व्यः वर्त्व-न्दः योर्केशः स्था ।स्थिन-यः स्थापेः

gu dang gyu dang nusem mukpa dang nyi dang du la dun dang te-tsom te drippa ngapo...

यर्या याल्य सन्धाः या

dakshen nyampa

स्वानस्याक्ष्याम्भेषायाः यद्गान्यस्याम् स्वानस्याक्षयाः स्वानस्यानस्यानस्या

dak dang shen nyika dewa du du tsungpa dang, dukngel mindupar tsungpa

रट.यी.चर्थ.च्रा.वर्ष.जय.जा.च.य.घ्रा.ची.य

rang gi se su ne len la rewa migyap

Class Three

มรัส:ภูx:ฉๅ ngun gyurwa

บบเลเลงกาย bakla nyelwa

นรุญาฉยัง เปลา หมู่ bakchak yu

प्रदेश प्रमुश्

रटार्ट्स'न्स'न्याचुच'पदे'प्पेट्'द्र्ट्र'च'र्ट्स'प्येट्'सेट्'ट्र्स्व'सेद'पेट्'ह्रीस्य rang-ngu ne druppay yi-ongwa dang yi-mi-ong du

पर्देर्'कण्यार्'द्र हे' सूर सुरा

प्रशासम्बद्धाः le sak

র্মিম'ন্ম'ন্মিম্

korwar kor

चर्नेत्रः पर व्हेंत्रः पर्याः सूचाः चस्यः स्ट्रीरः हित्। सूट हित्रः हें जारुषः यः सूचाः चस्यः हिः हित्। denpar dzinpa dukngel kyeje tong-nyi tokpa dukngel shi-je

यार्डे.स्ट्र-प्रीय:श्रम्थाः यह्रयः,गीय:यह्याकाः यह्रयः,गीय:यह्याकाः

tsowor drupte lo gyurwa la tu gupay dendzin, dendzin kun-tak

यक्षिश्याताः स्त्राह्यास्य स्त्राह्यास्य स्त्राह्यास्य स्त्राह्य स्त्र स्त्राह्य स्त्र स्त्र स्त्राह्य स्त्र स्त्र

tokma mepa ne jesu shukpa, drupte lo gyur ma-gyur nyi-ga la yupay dendzin, dendzin hlenkye

মর্ল্রেম্য tong-lam

งารฐราง sa gyepa

वादः वाताः प्रदः स्ट्रां हें चें प्रदः विवादि वाताः वा

र्यास्त्रक केरि: प्रविद्या

विषायाञ्चर छैया क स्थेर र तहें दाया shepa kechik chame du dzinpa

यश्चित्रपदेः तुषान्दर द्रव्यक्षः तुः र्श्चेदः चदेः तुषाग्चीः जादः अगः । le jepay du dang drebu nyongway du kyi gangsak dze tade

gyuy du su drebu nyong misi

मुद्राम्डिमात्यायशामुद्रायार्थाद्राद्राप्त्रात्रात्रुद्ध्रीत्रायार्थात्रसूद्राप्त्रात्र् gyun chik la le jepapo dang drebu chupapo ten rung

कः विश्वात्री केंग्रायायाया यहेत्र त्रावाह्य द्वारा यहेत्। cha she kyi tsok pa la tenne ta-nye tak tsam

Class Four

यार चर्चा मी यार्वाश पादि प्यर प्रम्याश प्रेंर प्येंद स्था।
gangsak gi dakshi yang takyu yinnam?

यादः चयाः यो प्यद्याः स्रेत्।
gangsak gi dakme

र्केशःग्रीः प्रद्याः भेद्रा chu kyi dakme

अ'नम्जाब'स'न्ध्रन्'सर'श्रः श्रून्'पत्रे'र्कन्'स्रवाज्ञा matak machepar ta-nyepay tseme drup

ราฐาราธุภาพานลิ บรุภาพารัฐาวช์ณ บลิ ซังสามาฐิรา ta-nye takpay takdun tselway tse-na ma-nye

> যাৰুবাষাশ্ৰী ঠিবাষাধনী হুঝাধান বা suk kyi tsokpay dul tra-rab

विषायदे स्नूर उँचा अदे सुन्। shepay kechikmay gyun

सूना'नसूय'मुं'मुर'मुर'यदे। नर्रेश'र्यदे'म्र्यस्यस्य प्रिन्थ'स्येत्र'स्य स्थित्। चनेत्र'वहेत्र'नुस्य प्राने'त्य'मित्र'र्या स्येत्र'स्य स्थान्य स्थित्।

dukngel gyi gyur gyurpay, ngupuy neluk la chinchi loktu shugpay dendzin menpa de la nyenpo topden yupay chir

รุกุก gakja

र्केयाबा पर होट : दुः हेर्गा प्रवास यह याबा खंदा वा स्वास स्वता स्वास स

| प्रमुषाश्चायिः पूर्वेशः याः आस्ताः धरा | प्रें प्रे

र्कर्-स्रान्ध्यात्र्योत्। tsema namdrel

ลัการนัสาธิมาฏิ ฐากุมานา Lopon chukyi drakpa

प्रतरमुत्यः प्रतः है शः प्रज्ञरः।

wangtul depay jedrang

र्यटः र्रेन् रेजानायते हैनायत्टा wangnun rikpay jedrang

द्वस्य: द्वर् क्षे क्षस्य: व्याक्षेत्रक्षे व्याः व्याक्षेत्रक्षेत्

nga'am dang drawe gangsak gi tsu zung gi, gangsak gyi gangsak gyi tsu misung te, nyampar gyur tare

> म्बाबासुः वर्गेर्धाः म्बाबाग्रीः सर्वस्तिः स्त्रीर्। tak su kupa, tak kyi tsennyi

र्द्धयामशुर्याध्येत्रा ह्याश्राध्यान्त्रामी सर्वेत्र हिन्। tsulsum yinpa, tak yangdak gi tsennyi

> र्मुग्रामः केंग। भुःग्रमः धाः chok chu, dra jepa

ie kyap, je na mitakpe kyap

र्चेत्राचित्र। देत्राच्याच्याच्याच्या dok kyap, tak na ma jepe kyap

ह्याया कॅरान्ट क्रिन्छ्या साम्या प्रति पानि सम्बन्धा स्वाप्त क्रिन्स्य स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

त्राया र्रेट प्राप्ति । namka, tongpa nyi

र्भे:ह्या:या श्रूट्:डेया:या mitakpa, kechikma

गाना चुर्यासा

kawa, bumpa

रैपाश है। rik chi

> AN'51 sheja

着歌』 dun chi

त्रमः त्रह्म स्त्राचा स्त्रम् । द्रिया या स्त

bumdzin tokpa kechikma nyipa la bumpa kechik nyipa mayinpa le lokpar nangwa de de yinpay chir

क्र्यायःश्ची

tsok chi

বুঅ'শা

bumpa

Class Six

रट.रेट्र्झ.श्र.ह्योश.तपु.श्र्ॅ्झ.रट.यो.रेयोयो.ये.रेट्र्झ.श्री.यश्च.प्रश्च्रीश.

rng ngu su tokpay lu rang gi gakja ngu su che ne tok gupay chu

ম'ঊর'ন্ম্ম mayin gak

মী'দ্যা'ঘা dra mitakpa

ह्येदः द्याय me gak

त्रसःस्वरः namka

र्शेट य है 5 tongnyi

ব্দ্রবাধী বিশ্বর্থ বা dakchik gi drelwa

Jan'al

pnmbah qokba

रे'तुर'मी'वज्ञेवा'म। dejung gi drelwa

न्देश रेवि सु त्यामा अ सु नु द ना ngupoy chilok su jungwa

TEN TI

भ्रेन्द्रान्यः प्रश्नेष्याश्वाद्यः मृज्ञाश्वाद्यः प्रमा minangwa mamikpay tak yangdak

शूट र र र र त्रीयाका धरे र म्याका धर र प्रा nangrung mamikpay tak yangdak

रे भूप ग्री त्याय परे याह्र स्याश

क्षुक्तिंश उत्रा भे ह्या या भारते हो तुरु या भे दारी ही रा

dra chuchen

mitakpa mayin te jepa yinpay chir

दे:ब्रुच:ग्रुं:स:देश:धदे:याह्रद:ळॅगशा dedrup kyi ma-ngepay tentsik

मुं केंश उदा अनुदानु धेन भे। भे मा भवे से मा

dra chuchen

nyenja yin te mitakpay chir

रे मूर्या मुस्याय विषय dedrup kyi madrupay tentsik

श्रुः केंश्राउदा श्रीः ह्याः श्रीः श्रीः श्रीः श्रीः

dra chuchen

mitak te

dra yinpay chir

Class Seven

বী'বাব্মঝ'ঘ'র্ক্সবা'ব্রস্কুব্'ঝম'বাবাঝ'ঘা

sempa chenpo langri tangpa dorje sengge dzepay jangchub semjong gi dampa tsikgye mar drakpa

यगाय याद्रसम् प्राप्त विकास स्वाप्त विकार हो।

kadampa geshe chekawa, yeshe dorje

משלושיאו אשלושיאו

chekawa chekepa

र्त्वे क्षेट देव पर्व सा

lojong dun dunma

र्ह्रेयश्र.र्ज.।

top nga

ব্ধর্মা

penpa

ग्रिंशशाया

gompa

५७१२:यें रू:येंद्रा

karpo sabun

श्रेष.उत्तेष.या

sunjinpa

श्चेंत्रःयया

munlam

दशःश्रेश्रशः उतः वश्रशः उतः ग्रीः देवः तुः श्रदः श्रेतः प्रदेशः ग्रुदः । श्रेष्वर्षे प्रतः वत् ग्रा । द्रमाः विदः कीः श्रूदः पः विदः ग्रुदः ।

nga semchen tamche kyi dondu narme du drowar munpar je kyang, min-drowar duk, dakshing gi nangwa shar jung

Class Eight

jetsun drakpa gyeltsen

राञ्चा पङ्के प्राप्त प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्रस्ति। sakya pandita kunga gyeltsen

drogun chugyal pakpa

tsen di la shen na chupa min, kam sum la shen na ngenjung min, dak dun la shen na jangsem min, dzinpa jung na tawa min,



Class Nine

je tsongkapa

tsennyi ngowo nyi mepa

kyewa ngowo nyi mepa

र्देब-द्रबाय-दे-चे-केद-बोद-या

dundampa ngowo nyi mepa

kuntak

shenwang

ल्ट्राः युवा

yongdrup

ग्राचन्त्रम्बार्याच्याच्यायदे से में मान्दर वड्डा

kuntak namkay metok dang dra

নাপুর'র্মহ'রর্ shenwang gyuma dang dra

ऑन्राज्यान त्रमायतः द्राः त्रा

पदेब'पहिदे'र्केश'प्राचिम् denshiy chunkor

> H'X'E'N waranasi

भूतः चेत्राः चेत्राः या nyentu tekpa

दयम्भ'यदे'चर्ने स्प'म्लो pakpay denpa shi

र्क्ष दुस्रक रूट की सर्द्ध सेट्र में का व्यापन chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi druppa

> มส์สฺ หิรุ เมิรุ เนลิ : สัม เลเนีร เ tsennyi mepay chunkor

> > गुःक्रेंन्स्टार्धवेःहै। jagu pungpoy ri

त्रेया केत्। tekchen

र्बेट प्राप्ति । tongpa nyi

र्केशः इस्रशः र र 'यो 'सर्कद 'है र 'ग्रीश स्र 'या पा chunam ranggi tsennyi kyi ma druppa

योग्रासुरे: क्रेंश राप्रेम्।
lekchey chunkor

ध्यद्रशःयः उत्। yangpachen

প্রবা'শেষমাঝ'ন্তব্য tekpa tamche

มส์ส.ชิร.ขามูม tsennyi sum

र्केश इस्रश्चाय प्रत्यां स्रक्षं क्षेत्र मुन्य स्थाया स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्थाय

Class Ten

मृः श्रे त्यः व्या व्या त्रु या विष्ण

nga dela shamtab lumpor gowar jao, shey

रे.चलेब.चानेचार्यायतः श्रीट ची

deshin shekpay nyingpo

केंबान्नस्याउदागुःदें चें केंदासेदाया दे देवादसायदेवाया धीवा

chu tamche kyi ngowonyi mepa ni dundam denpa yin

गुर-हेरानदेराया

kundzob denpa

गीय:ह्या

kundzob

याचियात्रात्ररायाचियात्रात्रह्रव्याचीः स्ट्रिश्याह्रव्यायात्रव्याचीत्राः स्ट्रेर्राया

suk dang sukdzin gyi tsema dzeshen gyi tongpa

म्ना स्थान स्थान

lo nume la nangway wang gi shakpa mayinpar yul rang gi tunmong ma yinpay du luk kyi ngu ne druppa

र्हेजा'यश'यर'यहजाश'र्ड्या tokpe par taktsam

|तुःसूराःतुग्रायादारागुर्डें पॅरःसेःवहेत्रःसु। ludrup luksang tsowor mindzin su



Please cut along the dotted line to make an insert for the binder spine

GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM: PART 3

THIS COURSE USES A 2 INCH BINDER

18

18

THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 3

COURSE

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 11-15

